1907

A

NEW UNIVERSAL

RENCH GRAMMAR;

BEING

AN ACCURATE SYSTEM

OF

FRENCH ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX,

ON

A METHODICAL PLAN.

BY NICOLAS HAMEL,

ALUATE IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAEN, AND RECTOR OF
THE TOWN OF L'AIGLE IN NORMANDY.

A NEW EDITION:

CAREFULLY CORRECTED AND GREATLY IMPROVED.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR

ONGMAN, HURST, REES, ORME, BROWN, AND GREEN,

PATERNOSTER-ROW;

AND G. AND W. B. WHITTAKER, AVE-MARIA-LANE.

1824.

MAHARAJA SERFOJI'S SARASWATI MA... TANJORE

P122:3
ARA

Printed by A. and R. Spottiswoode,
Printers-Street, London.

Sub ponte nobis
swim ~~twice~~ under
the bridge twice

Ne mater, suam
Knit O mother, I will swim

PREFACE.

Bos cucurrit plenum
contra meum magnu
The Ox ran full butt again
my great toe.

IT is universally allowed that the only sure, and at the same time the shortest, method to attain the perfection of a language, is to study its principles after the most strict and exact rules of Grammar.

Conformably to this truth, generally acknowledged and confirmed by daily experience, I have composed this work on sound principles and exact definitions; and in order to promote as much as possible the learning of this useful tongue, I have made a parallel of the French and English languages, which at the same time will confirm the English Student in the principles of his native tongue, greatly facilitate the understanding of the French rules, and point out the different genius of each language with accuracy and precision.

The first part of this Grammar, which has for its object Pronunciation and Orthography, treats of the sound of letters, vowels and consonants. The different sorts of accents the proper manner of using them, and their effects upon vowels, are put in the clearest light; the use of the apostrophe and capital letters; the different sorts of punctuation and abbreviations; are treated in a method simple and concise, but at the same time so comprehensive, that I know not any thing which could be added on the same subject.

The idea that it would be an encouragement to a pupil, if he could easily treasure in his mind a great collection of words, prompted me to compare the analogy between the two languages; and after a mature consideration I have devised four fundamental rules, whereby the scholar may, in a few lessons, and without much trouble, acquire several thousand French words (page 24.)

The rules by which we distinguish the gender of nouns are simple and comprehensive; the masculine substantives, which cannot be reduced under any rule of termininations, are set in alphabetical order: thus, in a short time, that important point may be perfectly attained (in which most Grammarians are very defective and which many do not even attempt to explain.

The formation of the plural of nouns, and of the feminine of adjectives, is placed in a new light (the first page 41 and 42; and the second page 45 and 46).

On the verb I have been very extensive and methodical:

having explained its nature and different species, I have fully conjugated a verb of each regular and irregular conjugations; to this explanation I have added page (120 and 122) a new method grounded upon principles by which all regular and irregular verbs may be learnt with uncommon facility.

Having explained the different parts of speech, in the manner which seemed the most natural, simple, and methodical, I proceed to the syntax, in which I treat of the union, concord, and disposition of words, in the same order as I had previously adopted in treating of their nature, declension, and conjugation.

This part, as the most essential and difficult, I have explained at large in a series of clear, short, and accurate rules for the most part illustrated by instructive examples from good authors. The principles depend successively on each other, and the knowledge of the preceding leads usually to the understanding of that which follows. The rules which I have given for the construction of the language are set in numerical order, and so disposed, that they may be found as easily as a word in a dictionary; an advantage peculiar to this Grammar.

The most difficult points of the language, such as the construction of pronouns, the different modes of negation and interrogation, the distinction of tenses, the use of the subjunctive mood, the government of verbs, &c. are particularly and fully explained.

The Grammar concludes with an alphabetical series of the French verbs most in use, denoting, at once, of what conjugation they are, and the case they govern, by which two great difficulties in the French language will be removed.

My first object was to render this work fit for the use of schools, and so to adapt it to the capacities of the youngest learners, that in beginning to learn French, they may begin it grammatically. For this purpose I have used my utmost endeavours to unite simplicity of method with clearness and precision; and having, in some measure, succeeded in this point, I may assert, from experience, that most of the rules and principles of this Grammar may, with the help of a good master, be understood and learnt by a child of six or seven years of age. Of this those will be easily convinced who will attend to the natural order which exists in the different parts, to the precision of the rules, to the clearness of the style, and in a word, to the work taken altogether, which, according to the opinion of several learned Gentlemen, is executed on a plan, new, simple, and much improved.

*** The present edition of this Grammar has undergone a thorough revision: such corrections have been made, and such observations and explanations added as appeared necessary to the improvement and the utility of the work.

MAHARAJA SERFOGI'S SARASWATI MAHAL TANJORE

190

A

TABLE OF THE CONTENTS.

	Page
THE true definition of Grammar, ...	1
Division of this work, ...	*ib.*

PART I. *Of Pronunciation and Orthography.*

CHAP, 1. Of pronunciation, ...	2
Of the French alphabet, ...	*ib.*
Of the French accents, ...	3
Of vowels, ...	6
Of diphthongs, ...	*ib.*
Of consonants, ...	8
Observations upon some consonants, . . .	10
Remarks on the pronunciation of some words,	14
CHAP. 2. Of orthography, ...	15
Of the apostrophe, ...	17
Of the hyphen and cedilla, ...	*ib.*
Of the parentheses, quotations, and abbreviations,	18
Of punctuation, ...	19
Of capital letters, ...	20
An alphabetical series of kingdoms, provinces, and	

Page

towns, which have a different denomination in French and in English, ... 21

A method to learn the French denomination for the proper names of persons taken from the Latin and Greek, ... 23

A method to learn easily a great collection of French words, ... 24

PART II. *Different Parts of Speech.*

CHAP. 1. Of the French articles, . . . 27

CHAP. 2. Of substantives, ... *ib.*

Of the nature and kinds of substantives, . . *ib.*

Of the declension of nouns, ... 28

How to distinguish when a noun is masculine or feminine, ... 31

Of substantives masculine in one signification, and feminine in another, ... 38

Rules to form the plural of nouns, . . . 41

How compound words form their plural, . 42

Of substantives which have no plural, . . 43

Of substantives which have no singular, . . 44

CHAP. 3. Of adjectives, ... *ib.*

How to form the feminine of adjectives, . . 45

Of the plural of adjectives, ... 47

Of comparatives and superlatives, . . . *ib.*

Of cardinal numbers, ... 48

Of ordinal numbers, ... 52

CHAP. 4. Of personal pronouns, ... 54

Of possessive pronouns, ... 56

Of demonstrative pronouns, ... 59

Page
Of relative pronouns, . . . 61
Of interrogative pronouns, . . *ib.*
Of indeterminate pronouns, . . 62
CHAP. 5. Of verbs and their species, . 64
Of moods, tenses, numbers, and persons of verbs, 66
Conjugation of the auxiliary *avoir*, . . 67
Conjugation the auxiliary *être*, . . 69
Verbs conjugated with *to have* in English, and with *être* in French, ... 71
Of regular conjugations, . . . 73
Conjugation of reflected verbs, . . 94
Observations on the reflected verbs, . . 96
Verbs reflected in French, . . . 97
Several methods of conjugating a verb, . 98
Conjugation of the irregular verbs, . . 100
Conjugation of the impersonal verbs, . 119
A new method to learn easily all verbs, regular and irregular, ... 120
Of adverbs, ... 124
Different sorts of adverbs, . . . 125
Of prepositions, ... 126
Of conjunctions, ... 130
Of interjections, ... 132

PART III. *Of Syntax.*

CHAP. 1. Use of the French articles, . 134
Articles used in French and in English, . 135
Articles used in French, and not in English, 136
Articles used in English, and not in French, 139
No article used either in French or in English, 140

	Page
CHAP. 2. Syntax of substantives, .	144
CHAP. 3. Syntax of adjectives, .	146
Of the concord and position of adjectives, .	*ib.*
Of the government of adjectives, . .	149
Of the adjectives of dimension, . .	151
Of comparatives and superlatives, . .	152
CHAP. 4. Of personal and impersonal pronouns,	156
When they are conjunctive or disjunctive, .	*ib.*
Of the impersonal pronouns, *it, they, them,* .	159
Of the right placing of pronouns, . .	163
When the personal pronouns are to be repeated,	166
Distinction between *lui, elle,* and *soi,* .	167
CHAP. 5. Of possessive pronouns, .	169
CHAP. 6. Of demonstrative pronouns .	174
CHAP. 7. Of relative pronouns, . .	178
CHAP. 8. Of interrogative pronouns, .	181
CHAP. 9. Different sorts of interrogations,	183
CHAP. 10. Different sorts of *que,* .	186
CHAP. 11. Of indeterminate pronouns, .	189
Of *tout* and its various constructions, .	194
Of the different sorts of *quelque,* . .	196
CHAP. 12. Several modes of negation, . .	202
Distinction between *pas* and *point,* . .	205
Negative expressions in French and not in English,	206
Syntax of verbs, ...	208
CHAP. 13. Of the government of verbs, .	*ib.*
CHAP. 14. Of the infinitive mood, .	214
Of the infinitive present, . . .	215
Of the gerund, ...	222
Of the participle, . . . ,	224

	Page
Concord of verbs with their nominative case, .	226
CHAP. 15. Of the indicative mood, . .	229
CHAP. 16. Of the use of the subjunctive, .	234
Words which govern always the subjunctive, .	*ib.*
Words which govern sometimes the indicative, and sometimes the subjunctive, . . .	238
Which tense of the subjunctive must be used, .	241
CHAP. 17. Of the irregular verbs, . .	242
CHAP. 18. Of the impersonal verbs, . .	245
CHAP. 19. Syntax of adverbs, ...	249
CHAP. 20. Syntax of prepositions, . .	250
CHAP. 21. Of the French idioms, . .	253
Idiomatical expressions of *to have* and *to be*, .	254
Idiomatical significations of several verbs, .	257
A series of the most curious French Idioms, .	260
CHAP. 22. The French Proverbs most in use,	261
CHAP. 23. Which parts of speech agree together,	266
The right arrangement of the words of a sentence,	267
Which words must be repeated, . . .	270
Which words may be elegantly repeated, . .	271
CHAP. 24. Distinction in French between many words which are expressed in the same manner in English, ...	274
An alphabetical series of the French verbs most in use, ...	281
Dialogue sur l'Histoire de France, . .	328
Dialogue sur l'Histoire d'Angleterre, . .	331

TANJORE MAHARAJA SERFOGI'S SARASWATI MAHAL. *

A

NEW GRAMMAR

OF THE

FRENCH LANGUAGE.

GRAMMAR is *the art of reading, speaking, and writing correctly;* or, according to the definition of a celebrated author, Grammar is the art of reducing into rules the manner of speaking of a nation.

A Grammar ought to treat of the sounds and characters of a language; of the nature of the words of which it is composed; and of the union and arrangement which is to be made of them in speech.

As I propose to consider these objects in their different points of view, this work is naturally divided into three parts. The first has for its object Pronunciation and Orthography. The second explains the nature or etymology of the different parts of speech, the declension of Nouns and Pronouns, and the conjugation of Verbs. The third contains a series of clear, short, and accurate rules for the construction or syntax of the language, and is completed by a collection of the most curious French idioms and proverbs.

PART I.

OF PRONUNCIATION AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

CHAPTER I.

PRONUNCIATION.*

PRONUNCIATION is the right expression of the sounds and articulations of the words of a language.

Words are composed of syllables, and syllables of letters; the letters of the French tongue are the following, sounded nearly according to the letters in English placed below each.

FRENCH ALPHABET.

A,	B,	C,	D,	E,	F,	G,	H,	I,	J,	K,	L,	M,
aw,	bay,	say,	day,	a,	eff,	gey,	aush,	e,	jee,	kaw,	el,	emme,

N,	O,	P,	Q,	R,	S,	T,	U,	V,	X,	Y,	Z,	&.
enne,	o,	pay,	qu,	er,	s,	tay,	u,	vay,	ex,	egrec,	zed,	&.

These five, *a, e, i, o, u,* are called vowels, because they form alone a distinct sound; we will speak of *y* hereafter.

The others are called consonants, because they cannot be sounded with a vowel.

* As the English cannot of themselves learn the French pronunciation (because the true sounds cannot be conveyed by rules), and as they easily obtain this very essential point with the help of a good master, a long treatise would be useless; therefore I will only give the rules, and make the observations, which to this day have been found the most clear, simple, and useful, and which I have selected from the authors most generally esteemed.

The vowels and consonants can be joined together as follows:

ba,	be,	bi,	bo,	bu, ...	ab,	eb,	ib,	ob,	ub,
ca,	ce,	ci,	co,	cu, ...	ac,	ec,	ic,	oc,	uc,
ça,	—	—	ço,	çu, ...					
da,	de,	di,	do,	du, ...	ad,	ed,	id,	od,	ud,
fa,	fe,	fi,	fo,	fu, ...	af,	ef,	if,	of,	uf,
ga,	ge,	gi,	go,	gu, ...	ag,	eg,	ig,	og,	ug,
ha,	he,	hi,	ho,	hu, ...	ah,	eh,	ih,	oh,	uh,
ja,	je,	ji,	jo,	ju, ...					
ka,	ke,	ki,	ko,	ku, ...	ak,	ek,	ik,	ok,	uk,
la,	le,	li,	lo,	lu, ...	al,	el,	il,	ol,	ul,
ma,	me,	mi,	mo,	mu, ...	am,	em,	im,	om,	um,
na,	ne,	ni,	no,	nu, ...	an,	en,	in,	on,	un,
pa,	pe,	pi,	po,	pu, ...	ap,	ep,	ip,	op,	up,
qua,	que,	qui,	quo,	qu, ...					
ra,	re,	ri,	ro,	ru, ...	ar,	er,	ir,	or,	ur,
sa,	se,	si,	so,	su, ...	as,	es,	is,	os,	us,
ta,	te,	ti,	to,	tu, ...	at,	et,	it,	ot,	ut,
va,	ve,	vi,	vo,	vu, ...	av,	ev,	iv,	ov,	uv,
xa,	xe,	xi,	xo,	xu, ...	ax,	ex,	ix,	ox,	ux,
za,	ze,	zi,	zo,	zu, ...	az,	ez,	iz,	oz,	uz.

OF THE FRENCH ACCENTS.*

There are three different accents in French, called *acute*, *grave*, and *circumflex*.

The *acute* accent (´) gives to the vowel under it an acute sound, much resembling that of *a* in the English alphabet, as in the words *vérité*, truth, *probité*, probity, *prémédité*, premeditated.

The *grave* accent (\`) gives to the vowel under it a broad and open sound, as in the words *accès*, access, *progrès*, progress, *succès*, success.

The *circumflex* accent (ˆ) gives a long sound to the vowel

* I treat here of accents, because they give to the vowels several sounds which cannot be easily distinguished without some notion of them.

under it, as in the words *âme*, soul, *tête*, head, *gîte*, lodging, *dôme*, cupola, *flûte*, flute.

THE ACUTE ACCENT IS USED,

1. Over the *é* final, in a substantive which ends in *té* in French, and in *ty* in English; such are, *impiété*, impiety, *charité*, charity, *humanité*, humanity, &c.

2. Over the first *é*, when there are two joined at the end of a noun, as in the words *armée*, army, *pensée*, thought, *année*, year, *trophée*, trophy, *mausolée*, mausoleum.

3. Over *é* followed by another vowel, which does not belong to the same syllable, as in the words *réel*, real, *créateur*, creator, *réunion*, reunion, *préoccuppé*, prepossessed, &c.

4. Over the *é* final in the participles of all verbs of the first conjugation, that is, which end in *er* in the infinitive mood, such are *parlé*, *chanté*, *acheté*, *aimé*, *donné*, from *parler*, to speak, *chanter*, to sing, *acheter*, to buy, *aimer*, to love, *donner*, to give.

5. Over the *é* final of the first person singular of the indicative present in all verbs of the first conjugation, when they are used interrogatively, but not in other cases; thus we write *je donne*, I give, *je porte*, I carry, *je préfère*, I prefer, &c. without accent, and *donné-je*, *porté-je*, *préféré-je*, with an accent.

THE GRAVE ACCENT IS USED,

1. Over the open *è*, followed by the final *s*, as in the words *auprès*, near, *exprès*, express, *progrès*, progress, &c.; but practice alone can teach when *e* is open or not.

2. Over *à* preposition, to distinguish it from the third person of the verb *avoir*, *il a*, he has. Example: *il y a moins de gloire à vaincre un ennemi qu'à lui pardonner, quand on l'a vaincu.* There is less glory in conquering an enemy, than in pardoning him after he has been conquered.

3. Over *là* adverb, to distinguish it from *la* article or pronoun. Example, *où* la *vertu finit*, là *le vice commence*, where virtue ends, there vice begins.

4. Over *dès* preposition or conjunction, to distinguish it

from *des* article. Example; dès *que j'aurai de l'argent, j'acheterai* des *livres;* as soon as I have money, I will buy books.

5. Over *où* adverb, to distinguish it from *ou* conjunction; as, où *êtes-vous?* where are you? *vous* ou *moi nous irons,* you or I shall go there.

THE CIRCUMFLEX ACCENT IS USED,

1. Over the penultimate or last vowel but one of all verbs, in the first and second persons plural of the preterite of the indicative. Example: *nous parlâmes,* we spoke, *vous parlâtes,* you spoke, *nous agîmes,* we acted, *vous agîtes,* you acted, *nous reçûmes,* we received, *vous reçûtes,* you received.

2. Over the last vowel of the third person singular of the preterite of the subjunctive, but not of the preterite of the indicative: thus, *il agit,* he acted, *il fit,* he did, *il vendit,* he sold, *il reçut,* he received; without accent in the preterite of the indicative; and *il agît,* he might act, *il fît,* he might do, *il vendît,* he might sell, *il reçût,* he might receive, with a circumflex accent in the preterite of the subjunctive.

3. Over the syllables which are long, and were formerly written with an *s*; such are *honnête,* honest, *tempête,* storm, *impôt,* tax, *gîte,* lodging.

4. Over *dû,* participle of *devoir,* to owe, to distinguish it from *du,* of the, article. Over *crû,* participle of *croître,* to grow, to distinguish it from *cru,* participle of *croire,* to believe. Over *sûr,* sure, adjective, to distinguish it from *sur,* upon, preposition: as, *je suis sûr que le livre est sur la table,* I am sure that the book is upon the table.

5. Over *î* when followed by *t* in the verbs which have their infinitive in *oître* or *aître;* as, *croître,* to grow, *paroître,* to appear, *disparoître,* to disappear, *connoître,* to know, *naître,* to be born, &c.

The other circumstances in which these accents must be used in French, cannot be explained by any general rules.

OF VOWELS.

When the vowels have an accent, they have a sound either acute, open, or long, according as the accent is acute, grave, or circumflex.

When they have no accent, they generally keep their natural sound, that is, the sound we have given them in the alphabet, except *e*, which is often mute at the end of a word of several syliables, such as *modestie*, modesty, *justice*, justice, *il étudie*, he studies, &c. and also in the future and conditional of many verbs; thus, *je serai*, I shall be, *je serois*, I should be, *je prierai*, I shall pray, *je prierois*, I should pray, are pronounced pretty nearly as if they were written *je srai, je srois, je prirai, je prirois.*

Y has the sound of *i* simple between two consonants; thus the word *mystère*, mystery, *asyle*, asylum, are pronounced as if they were written *mistère, asile.*

When *y* is between two vowels, it has usually the sound of *ii*: thus *essayer*, to try, *employer*, to employ, are pronounced as if they were written, *essaiier, emploiier.*

OF DIPHTHONGS.

A Diphthong is the meeting of two or more vowels in the same syllable, which convey to the ear a double sound, as, *Dieu*, God, *miel*, honey, in which we distinctly hear the sound of *i*, and the sound of *eu*, and *e* grave; but being pronounced rapidly, they form only one syllable.

Diphthongs ought not to be confounded with a coalition of two or more vowels, which produce only one single sound, as *vous*, you, *deux*, two, &c. they are called compound vowels. The following are sounded in French as follows:

1. *AO* is sounded like *a* in the words *paon, paone*, peacock or peahen; and like *o* in the words *aoriste*, an aorist, and *taon*, a dun-fly. *Août*, August, is sounded like *oo* in *book.*

2. *EAI* and *AI* are sounded like an *é* acute in the prete-

rite of all verbs of the first conjugation; thus, *je parlai*, I spoke, *je mangeai*, I did eat, *je donnai*, I gave, *je changeai*, I changed, are pronounced as if they were written, *je parlé, je mangé, je donné, je changé.*

3. *AI, EAI, AIE,* in the middle or at the end of nouns, are sounded pretty much like an *è* with a grave accent; such are the words *maison*, house, *démangeaison*, itching, *haie*, hedge, *plaie*, wound.

4. *OI* and *EOI* have the sound of an *è* grave in the imperfect and conditional of verbs; thus *j'aimois*, I was loving, *j'aimerois*, I would love, *je dansois*, I was dancing, *je danserois*, I would dance, are pronounced nearly as if they were written *j'aimès, j'aimerès, je dansès, je dansérès*; *oi* has the same sound in all the tenses and persons of verbs in *oître*, which have more than two syllables in the infinitive mood. They are sounded in one emission of voice, but distinctly pronouncing the two sounds *o* and *è* grave in the words ending in *oi, oie, oir, oire:* such are the words *moi*, I, *emploi*, employ, *voie*, way, *vouloir*, to be willing, *oratoire*, oratory.

5. *IE* is sounded like an *i*, and *ue* like an *u*, in the different tenses and persons of the verbs which end in *ier* and *uer*, in the infinitive present: thus, *je prie*, I pray, *je prierai*, I shall pray, *je prierois*, I should pray, are pronounced, *je pri, je prirai, je prirois;* and *je remue*, I move, *je remuerai*, I shall move, *il remueroit*, he should move, are pronounced as if they were written *je remu, je remurai, il remuroit.*

6. *AU* and *EAU* at the end of a word, have the sound of *ô* long; thus, *couteau*, knife, *chapeau*, hat, are pronounced *coutô, chapô.*

7. *GEA, GEO, GEURE,* without an accent over *e*, are always sounded *ja, jo, jure;* thus, *George, il changea*, he changed, *nous jugeons*, we judge, *gageure*, wager, are pronounced as if they were written, *Jorge, chanja, jujons, gajure.*

OF CONSONANTS.

RULE I.

When the following consonants, *cc, ff, ll, mm, nn, pp, rr ss, tt,* meet together, we most frequently pronounce but one: thus, *accabler*, to overwhelm, *offenser*, to offend, *aller*, to go, *commettre*, to commit, *opposer*, to oppose, *arroser*, to water, *attirer*, to attract, are pronounced as if they were written, *acabler, ofenser, aler, cometre, oposer, aroser, atirer.*

ÇC when followed by *e* or *i*, and *dd* are both sounded, as in the words, *accès, accident, addition, reddition.*

LL, mm, and *rr* are both sounded, when they are preceded by an *i* at the beginning of a word; such are *illégitime*, illegal, *immobile*, immoveable, *irrésistible*, irresistible.

RULE II.

When either of these four consonants, *d, s, t, x,* is the final of a word, and the next begins with a vowel or *h* mute without a *comma* between them, it is usually sounded on the next word as follows:

D is sounded as a *t;* thus, *grand ami*, great friend, *quand il viendra*, when he will come, *il attend à la porte*, he is waiting at the door, are pronounced *gran tami, quan til viendra, il atten tà la porte.*

S is sounded as a *z*, thus, *dès à présent*, from this moment, *j'avois été*, I have been, are pronounced *dè zà présent, j'avoi zété.*

T is sounded on the next vowel, thus, *un savant homme*, a man of learning, *Je suis tout à vous*, I am quite your's, *s'il vient à la ville*, if he come to town, are pronounced *un savan thomme, je suis tou tà vous, s'il vien tà la ville.*

X is sounded like a *z*, thus *six amis*, six friends, *heureux événement*, happy event, are pronounced *si zamis, heureu zévénement.*

N in the words *en*, of it, *on*, they, when they precede a verb, in *bien*, well, *rien*, nothing, followed by an adjective or a participle, in adjectives, ending in *n*, placed before a substantive, and in the preposition *en*, in, is sounded on the next word, when it begins with a vowel; thus, *on apprend en étudiant avec méthode*, people learn, when studying methodically, *mon bon ami, vous n'avez rien appris*, my good friend, you have learned nothing; are pronounced as if they were written, *on napprend en nétudiant avec méthode, mon bon nami, vous n'avez rien nappris.*

When the letter *n* is the final of a substantive, it is not sounded on the next word, though it begins with a vowel; thus the following, *une intention excellente*, an excellent intention, *un pain exquis*, excellent bread, *un vin agréable*, an agreeable wine, are pronounced in two distinct words.

RULE III

These consonants *b, c, d, f, g, p, t*, are not sounded at the end of a word, when the next begins with a consonant, in *plomb*, lead, *accroc*, rent, *banc*, a bench, *broc*, a large jug, *clerc*, clerk, *cric*, a crane, to lift burthens, *croc*, a hook, *estomac*, stomach, *flanc*, flank, *jonc*, rush, *marc*, eight ounces, *tabac*, snuff, *il vainc*, he conquers, *nœud*, knot, *nid*, nest, *gond*, hinge, *muid*, a hogshead, *cerf*, a stag, *éteuf*, a tennis ball, *coing*, quince, *étang*, pond, *faubourg*, suburb, *hareng*, herring, *poing*, fist, *seing*, signature, *camp*, camp, *champ*, field, *drap*, cloth, *galop*, gallop, *loup*, wolf, *sirop*, syrup, and *et*, and.

However, these six, *b, c, d, m, r, s*, are strongly sounded at the end of the names of heathen gods, and of proper names of persons, taken from ancient history, thus, *Job, Jacob, Isaac, David, Sem, César, Darius, Jupiter, Vénus, Marius*, are pronounced *Jobe, Jacobe, Isaaque*, &c.

Observations upon some Consonants. *

C

C has the sound of an *s* before *e* and *i*, thus, *ceci*, this, *cela*, that, are sounded *sesi*, *sela*. *C* has the sound of an *s* before *a*, *o*, and *u*, when it has a cedilla under it, and of a *k*, when not; thus, *façade*, front, *françois*, french, *reçu*, received, are pronounced *fassade*, *fransois*, *ressu* ; and *cabinet*, closet, *cochon*, pig, *cuisinier*, cook, are pronounced *kabinet*, *kochon*, *kuisinier*.

C has the sound of a *k* before *l*, *r*, or *t* : thus, *clair*, clear, *crayon*, pencil, *actuel*, actual, are pronounced *klair*, *krayon*, *aktuel*.

C has the sound of *g*, in *second*, and its derivatives; it is not sounded before *e* and *i*, when preceded by an *s* which belongs to the same syllable, thus, *science*, science, *scène*, scene, &c. are pronounced *sience*, *sène*.

Ch are generally sounded in French as *sh* are in English.

Ch followed by *a*, *o*, *u*, are sounded *ka*, *ko*, *ku*, in the words taken from the Greek or Hebrew: thus, *Achab*, *Chanaan*, *eucharistie*, are pronounced, *Akab*, *Kanaan*, *eukaristie*.

F

F is pronounced like *v* in *neuf*, nine, when it is placed before a substantive or an adjective beginning with a vowel or *h* mute: thus, *neuf hommes*, nine men, *neuf enfans*, nine children, are pronounced *neu vhommes*, *neu venfans*.

G

G is sounded like *j* before *e* and *i*; thus, *genou*, knee, *gibier*, game, *mangeant*, eating, are pronounced *jenou*, *jibier*, *manjant*.

* The letters not mentioned hereafter, are sounded as in the alphabet, except in the cases expressed in the three preceding rules.

G has a strong and harsh sound when it is followed by *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, *r*, as in the words, *gâteau*, cake, *gosier*, gullet, *aigu*, acute, *glorieux*, glorious, *grandir*, to grow tall, &c.

Gn has a liquid sound resembling the last syllable of the English word *onion*. As this sound is attended with some difficulty, it must be heard from the master.

H

H is mute in the following words, their derivatives, and proper names, except, *la Hollande*, *la Hongrie*, and a few others: it is aspirated in others.

habile,	*able.*	hétèrogêne,	*heterogenous.*
habit,	*a dress.*	heure,	*hour.*
habiter,	*to inhabit.*	heureux,	*happy.*
habitude,	*habit.*	hexagône,	*hexagon.*
haleine,	*breath.*	hexametre,	*hexameter.*
hameçon,	*a fish-hook,*	hier,	*yesterday.*
harmonie,	*harmony.*	hiéroglyphe,	*hieroglyphic.*
hebdomadaire,	*weekly.*	hirondelle,	*swallow.*
héberger,	*to harbour.*	histoire,	*history.*
hébêté,	*block-head.*	histrion,	*buffoon.*
hécatombe,	*hecatomb.*	hiver,	*winter.*
hégire,	*hegira.*	holocauste,	*burnt-offering.*
héliotrope,	*sun-flower.*	homélie,	*a homily.*
hémisphère,	*hemisphere.*	homicide,	*homicide.*
hémistiche,	*hemistich.*	hommage,	*homage.*
hémorragie,	*hemorrhage.*	homme,	*man.*
herbage,	*pasturage.*	homogène,	*homogeneous.*
herbe,	*grass.*	honnête,	*honest.*
hériter,	*to inherit.*	honneur,	*honour.*
hérésie,	*heresy.*	hôpital,	*hospital.*
hemétique,	*alchymy.*	horizon,	*horizon.*
hermine,	*ermine.*	horloge,	*clock.*
hermite,	*a hermit.*	horoscope,	*horoscope.*
héroïne,	*a heroine.*	horreur,	*horror.*
héroïque,	*heroic.*	horrible,	*horrid.*
héroïsme,	*heroism.*	hospice,	*hospital.*
hésiter,	*to hesitate.*	hospitalier,	*hospitable.*
hétérodoxe,	*heterodox.*	hostie,	*victim.*

hostilité,	*hostility.*	humidité,	*dampness.*
hôte,	*landlord.*	humilité,	*humility*
hôtel,	*hotel.*	hyacinthe,	*hyacinth*
hôtellerie,	*inn.*	hydre,	*hydra.*
hôtesse,	*landlady.*	hydromel,	*mead.*
huile,	*oil.*	hydropisie,	*dropsy.*
huissier,	*usher.*	hymen,	*hymen.*
huître,	*oyster.*	hymne,	*hymn.*
humain,	*human.*	hyperbole,	*hyperbole.*
humble,	*humble.*	hypocrisie,	*hypocrisy.*
humecter,	*to moisten.*	hypothèque,	*mortgage.*
humeur,	*humour.*	hypothèse,	*hypothesis.*

There are some more words in which *h* is mute, but they are so seldom used, that I have thought proper to omit them.

L

L preceded by *i*, when doubled or final, is ordinarily liquid, and is sounded as in the English words, *brilliant, valiant.* That sound being rather difficult, must be heard from the master.

M

M is sounded as an *n*, when it is followed by *b*, or *p*, thus, *ambition*, ambition, *comparer*, to compare, are pronounced *anbition, conparer.*

P

P is not sounded at all in *baptême*, baptism, *baptiser*, to baptize, *baptistaire*, certificate of baptism, *compte*, account, and its derivatives; in *corps*, body, *exempt*, exempt, *exempter*, to exempt, *prompt*, quick, and its derivatives; in *sculpter*, to carve, and its derivatives; in *sept*, seven, *septième*, seventh, *septièmement*, seventhly, *temps*, time, and in the persons of the verb *rompre*, to break, and its derivatives, in which it is followed by *s* or *t*, as *je romps*, I break, *il corrompt*, he corrupts.

PH are always sounded as an *f*, thus, *philippe, philosophie*, are pronounced *filippe, filosofie.*

Q

QU have commonly the sound of a *k*, thus *quatre*, four, *qualité*, quality, *marque*, mark, are pronounced *katre, kalité, mark.*

S

S has generally the sound of a z between two vowels, and after the syllable *tran;* thus, *oser*, to dare, *raisonner*, to reason, *transition*, transition, are pronounced *ozer, raizonner, tranzition*, &c.

In other circumstances, *s* has the hissing sound assigned to it in the alphabet, and particularly when it is double, or begins a word, as, *assiduité, superstition*, &c.

T

TI not preceded by *x*, or *s*, are sounded as *si*, 1. in all words ending in *tion;* 2. in adjectives, ending in *tial, tiel, tient, tieux*, and their derivatives; 3. in the names of persons or people, ending in *tien:* 4. in all the tenses of the verbs *balbutier*, to stammer, and *initier*, to initiate; 5. in the following words ending in *tie; facétie*, pleasantry, *impéritie*, ignorance, *ineptie*, folly, *inertie*, idleness, *minutie*, trifle, *primatie*, primacy, *prophétie*, prophecy, and *suprématie*, supremacy.

X

X is sounded, 1. like *ks*, in the midde of words, and in words beginning with *ex*, followed by a consonant, as *maxime*, maxim, *extase*, extasy; 2. like *gz*, in words beginning with *ex*, followed by a vowel, as *exemple*, example, *exiger*, to exact; 3. like *k* in all words beginning with *exc* followed by *e* or *i*, as *excellent*, excellent, *exciter*, to excite.

Remarks on the Pronunciation of some words.

1. The final *oient*, which is in the third person of the plural in the imperfect and conditional tenses of all verbs, is sounded like *ois* of the first person of the same tense, only a little longer: thus, *j'étois* and *ils étoient*, *je pensois*, and *ils pensoient*, are pronounced nearly alike.

2. The final *ent*, in the third person of the plural in the present and preterite of the indicative and subjunctive moods, thus, *je parle*, and *ils parlent*, *je parlasse* and *ils parlassent*, are pronounced alike.

3. There are several substantives or adjectives which are spelt absolutely like the third person plural of some verbs. They are not to be mistaken, as in the substantives and adjectives the final *ent* is pronounced like *ant*, and in the verbs it is entirely mute. Such are the following.

SUBST. OR ADJECT.		VERBS.	
adhérent,	*adherent,*	ils adhèrent,	*they adhere,*
affluent,	*flowing.*	ils affluent,	*they resort.*
content,	*content.*	ils content,	*they relate.*
différent,	*different.*	ils diffèrent,	*they differ.*
parent,	*relation.*	ils parent,	*they adorn.*
président,	*president,*	ils président,	*they preside.*
violent,	*violent*	ils violent,	*they violate.*

4. Some other words spelt alike, differ by the pronunciation, on account of the accent, or of *oi*, being pronounced in some like *oè*, and in some others like *ai*. Such are

il bat,	*he beats.*	un François,	*a Frenchman.*
un bât,	*a pack saddle.*	François,	*Francis.*
il boite,	*he limps.*	jeune,	*young.*
une boîte,	*a box.*	jeûne,	*fast.*
il chasse,	*he hunts.*	matin,	*morning.*
une châsse,	*a shrine.*	mâtin,	*mastiff-dog.*
un foret,	*a gimlet.*	paroisse,	*parish.*
une forêt,	*a forest.*	il paroisse,	*he may appear.*
pécher,	*to sin.*	tache,	*a spot.*
pêcher,	*to fish.*	tâche,	*task.*
un pécheur,	*a sinner,*	tacher,	*to spot.*
un pêcheur,	*a fisherman.*	tâcher,	*to endeavour*

Remarks on the Pronunciation of Poetry.

In poetry and in orations delivered in public, the finals of words are sounded much more strongly than in common conversation; and we may here establish it as a nearly general rule, that all the final consonants are sounded on the next word, when it begins with a vowel or *h* mute.

The following diphthongs *ia, ie, io, ian, ion,* are generally sounded with one emission of voice in prose, and with two in poetry: thus, for instance, *diadême, passion,* make two syllables in prose, and three in poetry.

In reading poetry we commonly pause a little in the middle of a long verse; and again at the end of every line, though there should be neither stop, nor comma, provided the sense does not suffer by it.

CHAPTER II.

OF ORTHOGRAPHY.

ORTHOGRAPHY is the art of using proper letters and figures in writing the words of a language.

In this chapter I will speak, 1. of the proper spelling of words; 2. of the apostrophe; 3. of the hyphen, and cedilla; 4. of the parenthesis, quotations, diæresis, and abbreviations; 5. of punctuation; and 6. of the use of capital letters.

I. Of the proper Spelling of French Words.

Orthography in the French language consists in the proper spelling; 1. of substantives in the plural number; 2, of adjectives in the plural and feminine; 3. of verbs in their different tenses and persons. These objects are fully explained in the second part of this grammar. The plurals of substantives and adjectives are found in chapter the 2d, section the 4th; the feminine of adjectives is described in chapter

the 3d, section the 1st; and in the conjugation of verbs will be found the different terminations of their tenses and persons.

I will here only make some observations which are conformable to the practice of good authors.

1. A simple or radical word has usually for its final that consonant which begins the next syllable of the word derived from it; thus, *plomb*, lead, has *b* for its final, *blanc*, white, *c*, *camp*, camp, *p*, &c. because the second syllable of *plomber*, to lead, begins with *b*, of *blancheur*, whiteness, with *c*, and of *camper*, to encamp, with *p*.

2. We usually write *am*, *em*, *im*, *om*, *um*, and pronounce *an*, *en*, *in*, *on*, *un*, in the words in which *m* is followed by *b*, *p*, or another *m*, such are *chambre*, room, *emporter*, to take away, *emmener*, to carry away, &c.

3. We write *dont* with a *t*, when it is a relative pronoun, and with a *c* when it is a conclusive conjunction: as, *les avantages* dont *nous jouissons viennent de Dieu; nous devons* donc *lui en rendre des actions de grâce.* The advantages *which* we enjoy come from God, we ought *then* to thank him for them.

4. The word *quand* has a *d* for its final, when it signifies *when*, as *quand* viendrez-vous? *when* will you come? and a *t* when it signifies *as for*. Example: *quant* à moi, je le blâme: *as for* me, I blame him.

5. We double the consonants in most words derived from the *Latin*, when they are double in that language; thus, *approuver*, to approve, is spelt with *pp*, and *offrir*, to offer, with *ff*, because they come from the Latin verbs *approbare*, *offerre*, in which these consonants are double.

6. The consonants *l*, *m*, *n*, *t*, are often doubled after *a* and *e*, when the syllable is to be sounded short or open, whether the words are derived from the Latin or not. Thus we write with a double consonant, *salle*, *chandelle*, *femme*, *canne*, *colonne*, *patte*, *assiette*, &c.

7. *P* is often double when it comes after *a* or *o* as *apprendre*, to learn, *opprimer*, to oppress, &c.

II. Of the Apostrophe.

The apostrophe is a kind of comma, formed thus (') which is put between two letters, to denote the elision of one vowel before another.

A and *e* suffer elision in the monosyllables *le, la, je, me, te, se, de, ce, ne, que,* when the word following begins with a vowel or *h* mute: thus we write *l'oiseau,* bird, *l'amitié,* friendship, *l'homme,* man, *j'ai,* I have, &c. instead of *le oiseau, la amitié, le homme, je ai.*

They do not suffer elision before *oui,* yes, *huit,* eight, *huitième,* eighth, *onze,* eleven, *onzième,* eleventh, nor after a verb in the imperative mood: thus we write *il n'y a que oui ou non;* there is nothing but yes or no: *de onze, il n'en resta que huit,* out of eleven, eight only remained; *dites-le à mon père,* tell it to my father; and not *il n'y a qu'oui ou non;* nor *d'onze, il n'en resta qu'huit; dites l'à mon père.*

I suffers elision in the conjunction *si,* if, before the personal pronouns *il,* he, or *ils,* they, but not before *elle, she,* nor any substantive whatever: thus we write *s'il vient,* if he comes, with an apostrophe; and *si elle vient,* if she comes, without elision.

A vowel never suffers elision in a word of more than one syllable, unless it be a conjunction composed of *que,* as *quoiqu'il dise,* though he says, *la vertu est aimable,* virtue is amiable; not *la vert' est aimable.*

III. Of the Hyphen and Cedilla.

The *Hyphen,* (in French *le trait d'union,*) is a line across thus, (-), which is used:

1. After a verb followed by the pronouns, *je, moi, tu, toi, nous, vous, il, ils, elle, elles, le, la, les, lui, leur, y, en, ce, on:* as *parle-je,* do I speak, *viens-tu,* dost thou come, *dis-moi,* tell me, *voyez-les,* see them, &c.

2. Between several words so joined, that they make but one; as *avant-coureur,* forerunner, *arc-en-ciel,* rainbow, *cure-dent,* toothpick.

3. Between the particles *ci*, or *là*, and the word which precedes them: as *celui-ci*, this, *celui-là*, that, *cet homme-ci*, this man, *cette femme-là*, that woman.

N. B. When a verb interrogatively used ends with a vowel, we put a *t* with two *hyphens*, between it and the pronoun *il*, *elle*, or *on;* thus, *A-t il?* Has he? *Parle-t-elle?* Does she speak? *Viendra-t-on?* Will they come, &c.

4. The *hyphen* is used at the end of a line, when there is no room to write the whole word. The syllables of a word are then divided, but not the letters of the same syllable: thus, for instance, if you cannot write the word *moment* in the same line, you may end it with *mo-*, and begin the other with *ment;* but you cannot end one line with *mom*, and begin the other with *ent*.

The *Cedilla* is a little comma, thus (,) which is put under *ça, ço, çu*, when they must be sounded *sa, so, su;* thus, *menaçant*, threatening, *conçu*, conceived, *leçon*, lesson, with a cedilla, are pronounced as if they were written *menassa, consu, lesson*.

When *c* has the sound of an *s*, in the present of the infinitive, it has the same sound in all the tenses and persons of the same verb, and therefore must have a *cedilla*, when it is followed by *a, o*, or *u*.

IV. Of Parentheses, Quotations, Diæreses, and Abbreviations.

1. A *Parenthesis* is made thus ( ), and is used to enclose an occasional sentence, interposed in the middle of the principal one. The use of *parentheses* must not be too frequent.

2. A *Quotation* is a double inverted comma (") put at the beginning, and at the end, or at the beginning of each line of a passage extracted from another author. Example: *L' avarice est un vice infâme; voici ce qu'en dit Bourdaloue:* " *l' avarice corrompt tout, elle renverse tout, elle domine* " *les hommes, elle en fait des esclaves, & les abrutit.*"

3. The *Diæresis*, (in French *le tréma*) is two *dots*, thus, (¨), put over the vowels *ë, ï*, or *ü*, when they are not of the same syllable as the vowel preceding; such are *Noël*, Christmas, *haï*, hated, *Saül*.

4. The *Abbreviations* the most used in French are *Mr* or *M.* for *Monsieur*. *Mde.* for *Madame*. *Mlle.* for *Mademoiselle*. *MM.* for *Messieurs*. *S. M.* for *Sa Majesté*. *S. M. Imp.* for *Sa Majesté Impériale*. *S. M. T. C.* for *Sa Majesté Très-Chrétienne*. *S. M. Cath.* for *Sa Majesté Catholique*. *S. M. Brit.* for *Sa Majesté Britannique*. *S. A. R.* for *Son Altesse Royale*. *S. A. E.* for *Son Altesse Electorale*. *J. C.* for *Jésus-Christ*. *CP.* for *Constantinople*. *MS.* for *Manuscript*. *Sept.* or *7bre.* for *Septembre*. *Oct.* or *8bre.* for *Octobre*. *Nov. or 9bre.* for *Novembre*. *Dec.* or *10bre.* for *Décembre*.

V. Of Punctuation.

Punctuation is used in writing and printing, to denote the place where the reader should stop to take breath, or to distinguish more easily the different parts of a sentence.

The *stops* are of six sorts, of which the names and figures are as follow:

(,) une virgule .... *a comma.*
(;) un point et une virgule ...... *a semicolon.*
(:) deux points .... *a colon.*
(.) un point .... *a full stop.*
(?) un point d'interrogation ...... *a note of interrogation.*
(!) un point d'admiration .... *a note of admiration.*

These *stops* are necessary to avoid obscurity, to prevent misconstructions, and for the better understanding of what we read or write.

A *Comma* is used, 1. in an enumeration, to distinguish the things enumerated, as: *Les parties du discours sont, le substantif, l'adjectif, le pronom, le verbe, l'adverbe,* &c. the parts of speech are, the substantive, the adjective, the pronoun, the verb, the adverb, &c. 2. to distinguish the different parts of a sentence, and to give the reader a proper time for breathing, as, *Il est bien difficile, quelque philosophie qu'on ait, de souffrir long-temps sans se plaindre.* It is very difficult, whatever philosophy we may have, to suffer long without complaining.

We do not use a *comma* between the different parts of a short sentence, which can be sounded at one breath, as, *dites-moi si je me suis trompé,* tell me if I am mistaken.

A *Semicolon* is used to distinguish the two parts of a sentence of a pretty good length when the first has a complete sense of itself, as, *on est coupable quand on garde son argent sans vouloir s'en servir au besoin; c'est là ce qu'on appelle avarice,* men are guilty when they keep their money, without being willing to apply it to the supply of their wants; this is what is called avarice.

The *Colon* is used after a sentence which might stand alone, because it makes a complete sense of itself, but which is, however, followed by another, which explains or extends it, as, *il ne faut point se moquer des malheureux: peut-on se flatter de ne l'être jamais soi-même?* people ought not to laugh at the unfortunate: can they flatter themselves that they shall never be so themselves?

A *Full Stop* is used when the sentence is complete, as, *la charité est la première des vertus Chrétiennes,* charity is the first of christian virtues.

A *Note of Interrogation* is used at the end of a sentence which expresses a question, as *Mr. votre père est-il à la maison?* is your father at home?

A *Note of Admiration* is put at the end of a sentence which expresses admiration or surprise, as, *que vous êtes heureux!* how happy you are!

N. B. In reading a book, you must stop a little at every comma, a little longer at a semicolon, more at a colon than at a semicolon, and more at a full stop than at a colon.

VI. Of Capital Letters.

Capital or great letters are used,

1. At the beginning of every sentence in prose: they are besides used at the beginning of every verse in poetry. Examples:

Prose.	La vertu est aimable.	Le vice est odieux.
	Virtue is amiable.	*Vice is odious.*

Poetry. { Choississez des amis de qui la piété,
Vous soit un sûr garant de leur fidélité.

2. All Christian and proper names of persons, kingdoms, provinces, towns, places, rivers, ships, mountains, and also the names of heathen gods and goddesses, are written with a capital letter; as *Mars, Vénus, Cicéron, César, Londres, la Tamise, les Alpes, la France, l'Angleterre, la Bourgogne*, &c.

AN ALPHABETICAL SERIES

OF THE

Kingdoms, Republics, Provinces, and principal Towns, which have a different Denomination in French and in English.

The Letter *E* denotes an Empire, *K* a Kingdom, *P* a Province, *T* a Town, and *R* a Republic.

English.	*French.*	*English.*	*French.*
Africa,	*Afrique.*	Cairo, T.	*Caire.*
America,	*Amérique.*	Calabria, P.	*Calabre.*
Antioch, T.	*Antioche.*	Canterbury, T.	*Cantorbery.*
Antwerp, T.	*Anvers.*	Cappadocia, P.	*Cappadoce.*
Apulia, P.	*la Pouille.*	Calcedonia, T.	*Calcédoine.*
Athens, T.	*Athènes.*	Cologn, T.	*Cologne.*
Attica, P.	*Attique.*	Copenhagen, T.	*Copenhague.*
Austria, P.	*Autriche.*	Corinth, T.	*Corinthe.*
Babylon, T.	*Babylone.*	Cornwall, P.	*Cornouaille.*
Basil, T.	*Bâle.*	Corsica,	*Corse.*
Bavaria, P.	*Bavière.*	Corunna, T.	*Corogne.*
Bern, T.	*Berne.*	Cracow, T.	*Cracovie.*
Bohemia, K.	*Bohême.*	Cyprus,	*Cypre.*
Bologna, T.	*Bologne.*	Damascus, T.	*Damas.*
Brasil, P.	*Brésil.*	Dauphiny, P.	*Dauphiné.*
Bremen, T.	*Brême.*	Denmark, K.	*Danemark.*
Brittany, P.	*Bretagne.*	Dover, T.	*Douvres.*
Britain, K.	*Bretagne.*	Dunkirk, T.	*Dunkerque.*
Brussels, T.	*Bruxelles.*	Edinburgh, T.	*Edimbourg.*
Burgundy, P.	*Bourgogne.*	Egypt, K.	*Egypte.*

English.	*French.*	*English.*	*French.*
England, K.	*Angleterre.*	Morocco, E.	*Maroc.*
Ephesus, T.	*Ephèse.*	Muscovy, E.	*Moscovie.*
Epidaurus, T.	*Epidaure.*	Nantz, T.	*Nantes.*
Epirus, K.	*Epire.*	Nimeguen, T.	*Nimègue.*
Flanders, P.	*Flandres.*	Nineveh, T.	*Ninive.*
Frankfort, T.	*Francfort.*	Normandy, P.	*Normandie.*
Gascony, P.	*Gascogne.*	Norway, K.	*Norvége.*
Geneva, R.	*Genève.*	Odenburg, T.	*Odembourg*
Genoa, R.	*Gènes.*	Ostend, T.	*Ostende.*
Germany, E.	*Allemagne.*	Otranto, T.	*Otrante.*
Ghent, T.	*Gand.*	Padua, T.	*Padoue.*
Greece,	*Grèce.*	Palermo, T.	*Palerme.*
Guelderland, P.	*Gueldres.*	Persia, K.	*Perse.*
Hague, T.	*La Haie.*	Pharsalia, T.	*Pharsale.*
Hanover, P.	*Hanovre.*	Picardy, P.	*Picardie.*
Holland, R.	*Hollande.*	Poland, K.	*Pologne.*
Hungary, K.	*Hongrie.*	Prussia, K.	*Prusse.*
Japan, E.	*Japon.*	Ratisbon, T.	*Ratisbonne.*
Iceland,	*Islande.*	Saguntum, T.	*Sagonte.*
Ireland, K.	*Irlande.*	Sardinia, K.	*Sardaigne.*
Italy,	*Italie.*	Sardis, T.	*Sardes.*
Lacedæmon, T.	*Lacédémone.*	Savoy,	*Savoie.*
Lancaster, T.	*Lancastre.*	Saxony, P.	*Saxe.*
Leghorn, T.	*Livourne.*	Scotland, K.	*Ecosse.*
Leyden, T.	*Leyde.*	Sicily, K.	*Sicile.*
Lisbon, T.	*Lisbonne.*	Sluys, T.	*L'Ecluse.*
Lisle, T.	*Lille.*	Spain, K.	*Espagne.*
Lombardy, P.	*Lombardie.*	Sparta, T.	*Sparte.*
London, T.	*Londres.*	Suabia, P.	*Souabe.*
Lorrain, P.	*Lorraine.*	Sweden, K.	*Suède.*
Lucca, R.	*Luques.*	Tarsus, T.	*Tarse.*
Lyons, T.	*Lyon.*	Thebaid, P.	*Thébaïde.*
Mantua, T.	*Mantoue.*	Thessaly P.	*Thessalie.*
Mecca, T.	*La Mèque,*	Toledo, T.	*Tolède.*
Mechlin, T.	*Malines.*	Triers, T.	*Trêves.*
Mentz, T.	*Mayence.*	Troy, T.	*Troie.*
Mexico, P.	*Mexique.*	Turkey, E.	*Turquie.*
Miletus, T.	*Milet.*	Tuscany,	*Toscane*
Minorca,	*Minorque.*	Valencia, T.	*Valence.*
Mogul, E.	*Mogol,*	Venice, R.	*Vênise.*

English.	French.	English.	French.
Vicenza, T.	*Vicence.*	Warsaw, T.	*Varsovie.*
Wales, P.	*Galles.*	York, T.	*Yorck.*

OBSERVATIONS.

1. All other names of kingdoms, provinces, and towns, ending in *a* in English, become French by changing *a* into *e* mute. Examples:

English: Asia, Arabia, Cesarea, Carolina, &c.
French: *Asie, Arabie, Césarée, Caroline.* &c.

2. The other names of towns ending in *burg*, become French by changing *burg* into *bourg*, thus:

English: Ausburg, Friburg, Hamburg, Brandeburg, &c.
French: *Ausbourg, Fribourg, Hambourg, Brandebourg,* &c.

3. Most of the other names not here specified, are the same in both languages.

A METHOD

To learn the French Denomination of Heathen Gods, and of Names taken from the Greek or Latin: and in what they differ from the English.

1. The proper names of men ending in English in *a*, are the same in both languages: thus we say,

English: Agrippa, Dolabella, Nerva, Caligula, &c.
French: *Agrippa, Dolabella, Nerva, Caligula,* &c.

2. The proper names of women and goddesses ending in *a*, become French by changing the final *a* into *e* mute. Examples:

English: Julia, Cleopatra, Octavia, Agrippina, Diana, &c.
French: *Julie, Cléopatre, Octavie, Agrippine, Diane,* &c.

3. The greatest number of proper names ending in English in *as*, become French by changing *as* into *e* mute. Examples:

English: Mecenas, Eneas, Pythagoras, &c.
French: *Mécène Enée Pythagore,* &c.

4. The proper names ending in English in *es*, become French by changing that final into *e* mute. Examples;

English: Demosthenes, Ulysses, Socrates. &c.
French: *Démosthène*, *Ulysse*, *Socrate*, &c.

5. The proper names ending in *o* in English, become French by changing *o* into *on*. Examples:

English: Dido, Cicero, Cato, Plato, Scipio, &c.
French: *Didon*, *Cicéron*, *Caton*, *Platon*, *Scipion*, &c.

6 The proper names ending in English in *us* or *ius*, are the same in French when they are of two syllables only. Examples:

English: Brutus, Cyrus, Crœsus, Venus, &c.
French: *Brutus*, *Cyrus*, *Crœsus*, *Vénus*, &c.

7. Most proper names ending in *us*, *eus*, or *ius*, become French by changing that final into *e* mute, when they are composed of three or more syllables. Examples:

English: Camillus, Orpheus, Esculapius, &c.
French: *Camille*, *Orphée*, *Esculape*, &c.

8. Most proper names ending in English in *is* or *al*, are the same in both languages. Examples:

English: Sesostris, Juvenal, Annibal, Asdrubal, &c.
French: *Sésostris*, *Juvénal*, *Annibal*, *Asdrubal*, &c.

9. Most proper names ending in English, in *ander*, become French by changing *ander* into *andre*: as

English: Alexander, Leander, Lysander, &c.
French: *Alexandre*, *Léandre*, *Lysandre*, &c.

A METHOD

For learning with ease, several Thousand French Words.

RULE I.

Most nouns, substantive and adjective, which end in English with any of the seven following syllables, *ble*, *ce*, *de*, *ge*, *ne*, *ion*, and *ent*, are the same in French as in English. Thus we say in both languages, but without accents in English.

1. *ble,* Fable, visible, incapable, noble, sensible, &c.
2. *ce,* Province, distance, vice, évidence, force, &c.
3. *de,* Servitude, habitude, prélude, &c.
4. *ge,* Charge, passage, siége, fébrifuge, &c.
5. *ne,* Machine, scène, famine, doctrine, &c.
6. *ion,* Nation, opinion, union, éducation, religion, &c.
7. *ent,* Prudent, diligent, patient, content, &c.

RULE II.

Most English words ending in any of the seven following syllables *ary, ory, cy, ty, ous, our,* and *or,* become French by changing the final, thus:

1. ary,	into *aire,*	as	military,	*militaire,* &c.
2. ory,	•• *oire,*	as	glory,	*gloire,* &c.
3. cy,	•• *ce,*	as	clemency,	*clémence,* &c.
4. ty,	•• *té,*	as	humanity,	*humanité,* &c.
5. ous,	•• *eux,*	as	dangerous,	*dangereux,* &c.
6. our,	•• *eur,*	as	favour,	*faveur,* &c.
7. or,	•• *eur,*	as	doctor,	*docteur,* &c.

RULE III.

Most English verbs ending in *ise, use, ute,* become French by adding an *r* to the final, thus: to

1. ise,	add *r,*	as baptise, realise,	*baptiser,*	*réaliser,* &c.
2. use,	•• *r,*	as abuse, excuse,	*abuser,*	*excuser,* &c.
3. ute,	•• *r,*	as dispute, refute,	*disputer,*	*réfuter,* &c.

RULE IV.

Most English verbs ending in *ate, fy,* or *ish,* become French by changing the final as follows:

		English.	French.
1. ate,	into *er,*	as accelerate, abrogate,	*accélérer,abroger,*&c.
2. fy,	•• *fier,*	as justify, liquefy,	*justifier, liquéfier,*&c.
3. ish,	•• *ir,*	as abolish, accomplish,	*abolir, accomplir,*&c.

Note 1. Most nouns which end in *y,* except those men-

tioned in Rule 2, become French by changing that final in to *ie*, and have the plural alike in both languages, thus:

	Singular.	Plural.
English:	folly, tragedy, fury;	follies, tragedies, furies.
French:	*folie, tragédie, furie*;	*folies, tragédies, furies.*

Note 2. The verbs ending in *bute* and *tute*, are excepted from Rule 3, and become French by changing *ute* into *uer*, as: to attribute, *attribuer*, to substitute, *substituer*.

Note 3. There are some exceptions to these four rules, particularly to the words ending in *ty*; but they are very few, and a great advantage will certainly be derived from learning these finals by heart.

MAHARAJA SERFOGI'S SARASWAT

PART II.

OF THE NINE PARTS OF SPEECH.

THERE are in French, as in other languages, nine parts of speech, called *article, substantive, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction,* and *interjection*: the first five are declinable, and the four others indeclinable.

CHAPTER I.

Of the Article.

The article is a little word, placed before a substantive, to specify the extent of the signification in which it is taken. There are in French three sorts of articles, viz.

1. definite:	*le,*	m.	*la,*	f.	*les,* pl.	*the.*
2. indefinite:	*un,*	m.	*une,*	f.	no pl.	*a* or *an.*
3. partitive:	*du,*	m.	*de la,*	f.	*des,* pl.	*some* or *any.*

CHAPTER II.

Of Substantives.

This chapter is divided into four sections: *the first* explains the nature and the different kinds of substantives; *the second* speaks of their cases and declension; *the third* treats of their gender, and shews how to distinguish the masculine from the feminine; *the fourth* has for object the plural of nouns, and its formation from the singular number

SECTION THE FIRST.

Of the Nature and Kinds of Substantives.

A Substantive is a word which expresses the name of a person, or a thing, material, spiritual, or ideal; such as

homme, man; *femme*, woman; *cheval*, horse; *maison*, house; *vertu*, virtue, &c.

There are three sorts of substantives, viz. *proper*, *common*, and *collective*.

The substantive proper expresses some individual person or thing which cannot be divided into species; such are, *Pierre*, Peter; *Londres*, London; *Caton*, Cato; *Paris*, Paris, &c.

The substantive common comprehends all objects of the same kind; such are, *royaume*, kingdom; *rivière*, river; *soldat*, soldier.

The substantive collective is a word which presents to the mind several persons or things. The nouns collective are *general* or *partitive*.

A noun collective general represents the whole object; such are, *la nation*, the nation; *l'armée*, the army; *la flotte*, the fleet; *le parlement*, the parliament.

A noun collective partitive represents only a part of the whole object; such are, *un grand nombre*, a great number; *une foule*, a crowd; *la plupart*, the most part.

N.B. See the use of substantives, Rule 21, and following, in the syntax.

SECTION THE SECOND.

Of the Declension of Nouns.

As the French nouns do not change their termination in the same number, many grammarians pretend, that there are no cases in our tongue; but I think it is more simple and natural to give the same names, in all languages, to the same relation of things; and the rather because many of those who learn French, learn at the same time Latin or Greek: therefore I admit of six cases, called, *nominative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, *vocative*, and *ablative*. However, as there can never be any mistake about the *vocative*, for brevity sake, we will decline our nouns with five cases only.

N. denotes the nominative, *G.* the genitive, *D.* the dative, *Ac.* the accusative, *Ab.* the ablative.

DECLENSION

OF NOUNS WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

1. *A Noun Masculine.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. Ac.	le roi, *the king.*	les rois, *the kings.*
G. Ab.	du roi, *of* or *from the king.*	des rois, *of* or *from the.*
D.	au roi, *to the king.*	aux rois, *to the kings.*

2. *A Noun Feminine.*

N. Ac.	la reine, *the queen.*	les reines, *the queens.*
G. Ab.	de la reine, *of* or *from the.*	des reines, *of* or *from the.*
D	à la reine, *to the queen.*	aux reines, *to the queens.*

3. *A Noun beginning with a Vowel.*

N. Ac.	l'ami, *the friend.*	les amis, *the friends.*
G. Ab.	de l'ami, *of* or *from the.*	des amis, *of* or *from the.*
D	à l'ami, *to the friend.*	aux amis, *to the friends.*

4. *A Noun beginning with an* h *mute.*

N. Ac.	l'homme, *the man.*	les hommes, *the men.*
G. Ab.	de l'homme, *of* or *from the.*	des hommes, *of* or *from.*
D.	à l'homme, *to the man.*	aux hommes, *to the men.*

5. *A Noun preceded by* tout.

SINGULAR.

N. Ac.	tout le monde, *every body.*
G. Ab.	de tout le monde, *of* or *from every body.*
D	à tout le monde, *to every body.*

PLURAL.

N. Ac.	tous les enfans, *all the children.*
G. Ab.	de tous les enfans, *of* or *from all the children.*
D.	à tous les enfans, *to all the children.*

DECLENSION

OF NOUNS WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.
N. Ac.	un jardin, *a garden.*	une maison, *a house.*
G. Ab.	d'un jardin, *of* or *from a.*	d'une maison, *of* or *from.*
D.	à un jardin, *to a garden.*	à une maison, *to a house.*

DECLENSION

OF NOUNS WITH THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

	SINGULAR, MASC.	PLURAL, MASC.
N. Ac.	du pain, *some bread.*	des poissons, *fishes.*
D.	à du pain, *to some bread.*	à des poissons, *to fishes.*

	SINGULAR, FEM.	PLURAL, FEM.
N. Ac.	de la viande, *some meat*	des oranges, *oranges.*
D.	à de la viande, *to some meat.*	à des oranges, *to oranges*

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

N. Ac.	Londres, *London.*	Paris, *Paris.*
G. Ab.	de Londres, *of* or *from.*	de Paris, *of* or *from.*
D.	à Londres, *to London.*	à Paris, *to Paris.*

N. Ac.	Pierre, *Peter.*	Annibal, *Annibal.*
G. Ab.	de Pierre, *of* or *from Peter.*	d'Annibal, *of* or *from.*
D.	à Pierre, *to Peter.*	à Annibal, *to Annibal.*

Observe, 1. *Du* and *des*, which are in the genitive, are used by a contraction for *de le, de les;* and *au, aux,* for *à le, à les,* which contraction does not take place, when a noun is preceded by *tout*, as above.

Observe, 2. That all the nouns which begin with a vowel or *h* mute, take *l'* in the nominative or accusative, *de l'* in the genitive, and *à l'* in the dative, whether they be masculine, or feminine, in order to avoid the hard sound which would result from the meeting of two vowels; thus, we say, *l'âme,* the soul, instead of *la âme, l'ambition,* the ambition, instead of *la ambition,* &c.

SECTION THE THIRD.

How to distinguish when a Noun is masculine or feminine.

The distinction of genders in substantives originates in the distinction of sexes, by imitation the masculine or feminine gender have been given to all substantives though they have no reference to any sex: thus, for instance, *pain*, bread, *couteau*, knife, *jardin*, garden, &c. are masculine, and *cuiller*, a spoon, *fourchette*, a fork, *table*, a table, &c. are feminine.

A GENERAL RULE.

The nouns which have reference to males are of the masculine gender, and those which have reference to females are feminine. Thus, *un homme*, a man; *un cheval*, a horse; are masculine: and *une femme*, a woman; *une jument*, a mare; are feminine.

The gender of other nouns is known by their termination, as follows:

N. B. *Fishes, reptiles, and insects, both male and female, are known in French by one gender only, which is generally distinguished by their final, as are the inanimate objects, of which hereafter; many birds and wild beasts are also of one gender only.*

MASCULINE TERMINATIONS.

RULE I.

Nouns which end in a consonant, are of the masculine gender, when they have any other final than *x*, *eur*, and *ion*, to which must be added *son*, preceded by a vowel, of which we shall speak hereafter.

This rule, which comprehends many thousand words, has no other exceptions than the thirty-one following words:

la boisson,	*drinking*,	de la chair,	*flesh*.
une brebis,	*a sheep*,	une chanson,	*a song*.

une clef,	*a key,*	la maman,	*mamma.*
la cour,	*the court.*	la mer,	*the sea.*
une cuiller,	*a spoon.*	la mort,	*death.*
la cuisson,	*baking.*	la moisson,	*harvest.*
une dent,	*a tooth.*	la mousson,	*the monsoon.*
une dot,	*a portion.*	la nef,	*the body of the church.*
la façon,	*making.*	la nuit,	*the night.*
la faim,	*hunger.*	la part,	*the part.*
la fin,	*the end.*	la rançon,	*the ransom.*
une fois,	*once.*	la soif,	*thirst.*
une forêt,	*a forest.*	une souris,	*a mouse.*
la hart,	*halter.*	une tour,	*a tower.*
une leçon,	*a lesson,*	une vis,	*a screw.*
la main,	*the hand.*		

RULE II.

All trees, and also all adjectives and verbs substantively used, are masculine, whatever be their termination; such are, for trees, *un houx*, an holy-oak; *un chêne*, an oak; *un hêtre*, a beech: for adjectives, *un impie*, an impious man, *un sot*, a fool, *un brave*, a brave man; and for verbs, *le boire*, the drinking, *le manger*, the eating, &c.

RULE III.

The names of days, months, seasons, shrubs, towns, colours, metals, mountains, and winds, are masculine, except, *l'automne*, the autumn, of both genders, *les Alpes*, *les Pyrénées*, *les Cordillières*.

RULE IV.

Nouns which end in the vowels *a*, *i*, *o*, *u*, are masculine; and also those which end in *é* accented, and not preceded by a *t*: as *un opéra*, an opera; *un oubli*, oblivion; *un chapeau*, a hat; *le thé*, tea; *un pré*, a meadow.

These four, *la foi*, faith; *la fourmi*, the ant; *la loi*, the law; *la merci*, mercy; are excepted from the final *i*.

These five; *de belle eau*, fine water; *de la glu*, bird-lime; *la peau*, the skin; *une tribu*, a tribe; *la vertu*, virtue; are

excepted from the final *u*. The finals *a*, *o*, *é*, have no exceptions.

RULE V.

Nouns ending in any of the following terminations, *age*, *ége*, *uge*, *oire*, *acle*, *aume*, *éme*, *isme*, and *ôme*, are masculine; as *un paysage*, a landscape; *un piége*, a snare; *le déluge*, the flood, &c.

La gloire, glory; *une écritoire*, an inkstand; *l'histoire*, the history; *une racloire*, a strickle; *la mochoire*, the jaw; *la nageoire*, the fin; *une passoire*, a colander; *la victoire*, victory; are excepted from the final *oire*.

The word *créme*, cream, is excepted from the final *éme*.

The words *page*, page, *rage*, rage, *cage*, cage, *image*, image, are excepted from the final *age*.

FEMININE TERMINATIONS.

RULE I.

All nouns which end in *x*, *eur*, *ion*, and also in *son*, when *s* is preceded by a vowel, are feminine; as *la paix*, peace; *la chaleur*, heat; *la nation*, the nation; *la maison*, the house.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Le choix*, choice, *un crucifix*, a crucifix, *le flux*, the flux, *le reflux*, the reflux, *le prix*, the price.
2. *Le bonheur*, happiness, *le cœur*, the heart, *le déshonneur*, dishonour, *l'équateur*, the equator, *l'honneur*, honour, *le labeur*, labour, *le malheur*, misfortune, *les pleurs*, tears.
3. *Le bastion*, the bastion, *un champion*, a champion, *un croupion*, a rump, *un lampion*, a lamp, *un million*, a million, *un scorpion*, a scorpion, *le septentrion*, the north.
4. *Le blazon*, heraldry, *un gazon*, a green turf, *l'horizon*, the horizon, *un oison*, a gosling, *un peson*, a steelyard, *le poison*, the poison, *un tison*, a brand.

RULE II.

All nouns which end in *té, tié, ée, ie, ue, ace, ade, ude, ance, ence, anse, ense, ière, üre, lle, mme, nne, rre, sse, tte,* are feminine. Examples: *la charité,* charity, *la pensée,* thought, *la vie,* life, *la vue,* sight, *la glace,* ice, &c.

Exceptions to these finals.

Un arrêté, a resolution, *un athée,* an atheist, *un augure,* an augury, *du beurre,* butter, *un carrosse,* a coach, *un chèvre-feuille,* a honeysuckle, *un cimetière,* a churchyard, *un codicille,* a codicil, *un colosse,* a colossus, *un comité,* a committee, *un comté,* a county, *le côté,* the side, *le derrière,* the back, *le foi,* the liver, *un espace,* a space, *le génie,* genius, *un grade,* a degree, *un incendie,* a conflagration, *un intervalle,* an interval, *un libelle,* a libel, *un mausolée,* a mausoleum, *le mercure,* mercury, *un murmure,* a murmur, *un parterre,* a flower-garden, *un parjure,* perjury, *un parapluie,* an umbrella, *un pâté,* a pie, *le prélude,* the prelude, *le silence,* silence, *le tonnerre,* thunder, *le traité,* treaty, *un trophée,* a trophy.

RULE III.

All nouns ending in *e* mute, are feminine, when they have any other final than those mentioned in rule the fifth of the masculine terminations. Examples: *la colère,* anger, *la face,* the face, *la racine,* the root, *la bouche,* the mouth, *la jambe,* the leg, &c.

EXCEPTIONS.

A		albâtre,	*alabaster.*
		ambre,	*amber.*
Abîme,	*abyss.*	ange,	*angel.*
acte,	*act.*	angle,	*angle.*
adverbe,	*an adverb.*	antidote,	*antidote.*
adultère,	*adultery.*	antre,	*a cave.*
aigle,	*eagle.*	arbitre,	*umpire.*

arbre, *a tree.*
arbuste, *shrub.*
artifice, *artifice.*
asthme, *asthma.*
astre, *star.*
asile, *sanctuary.*
auspice, *auspice.*
axe, *axis.*

B

Bénéfice, *a living.*
blâme, *blame.*
bitume, *bitumen.*
branle, *motion.*
bronze, *cast copper.*
buste, *bust.*

C

Câble, *cable.*
cadavre, *a corpse.*
cadre, *frame.*
calibre, *size.*
calice, *chalice.*
calme, *calm.*
camphre, *camphire.*
cantique, *spiritual song.*
caprice, *whim.*
caractère, *character.*
casque, *a helmet.*
catalogue, *a catalogue.*
cauterre, *a cautery.*
centre, *centre.*
cercle, *circle.*
chanvre, *hemp.*
chapitre, *a chapter.*
chiffre, *a cypher.*
cidre, *cyder.*
cierge, *wax taper.*
cigne, *a swan.*
cilice, *hair-cloth.*
cylindre, *cylinder.*
cimeterre, *cimeter.*
clistère, *a clyster.*
cloître, *cloister.*
code, *code.*
coffre, *a trunk.*
colloque, *a conference.*
commerce, *trade.*
concile, *council.*
concombre, *cucumber.*
cône, *a cone.*
congre, *a conger.*
compte, *an account.*
conte, *tale.*
contraste, *contrast.*
coude, *elbow.*
couvercle, *lid.*
crépuscule, *twilight.*
crêpe, *a crape.*
crible, *sieve.*
crime, *crime.*
cube, *cube.*
cuivre, *copper.*
culte, *worship.*

D

Décompte, *discounting.*
dédale, *maze.*
délire, *delirium,*
démérite, *demerit.*
désastre, *disaster.*
désordre, *disorder.*
diable, *devil.*
dialogue, *dialogue.*
diamètre, *diameter*
dilemme, *dilemma.*
diocèse, *diocese.*
divorce, *divorce.*

dogme, *dogma.*
domaine, *domain.*
domicile, *abode.*
doute, *doubt.*

E

Ebène, *ebony.*
échange, *exchange.*
édifice, *edifice,*
éloge, *praise.*
émétique, *emetic.*
empire, *empire.*
emplâtre, *plaister.*
épisode, *episode.*
équilibre, *equilibrium.*
équinoxe, *equinox.*
esclandre, *a bustle.*
escompte, *discount.*
évangile, *gospel.*
exercice, *exercise.*
exode, *exodus.*

F

Faîte, *top.*
faste, *ostentation.*
fiacre, *hackney coach.*
flegme, *phlegm.*
fleuve, *river.*
frontispice, *frontispiece.*

G

Genièvre, *juniper.*
genre, *gender.*
germe, *bud.*
geste, *gesture.*
glaive, *a sword.*
globe, *a globe.*
globule, *globule.*
gouffre, *whirlpool.*

H

Havre, *haven.*
homicide, *a murder.*
hôte, *landlord.*

I

Jeûne, *fast.*
insecte, *insect.*
interrègne, *interregnum.*
isthme, *isthmus.*

L

Labyrinthe, *labyrinth.*
légume, *pulse.*
lierre, *ivy.*
lièvre, *hare.*
linge, *linen.*
lucre, *profit.*
lustre, *lustre.*
luxe, *luxury.*

M

Mâle, *male.*
maléfice, *witchcraft.*
manifeste, *manifesto.*
marbre, *marble.*
martyre, *martyrdom.*
masque, *a mask.*
massacre, *a slaughter.*
membre, *member.*
mélange, *mixture.*
mensonge, *a lie.*
mérite, *merit.*
merle, *a blackbird.*
météore, *meteor.*
meuble, *furniture.*

meurtre,	*murder.*
ministère,	*ministry.*
mobile,	*motion.*
modèle,	*model.*
monarque,	*monarch.*
monde,	*the world.*
monastère,	*monastery.*
monopole,	*monopoly.*
monstre,	*monster.*
mystère,	*mystery.*

N

Navire,	*ship.*
négoce,	*trade.*
nombre,	*number.*

O

Ongle,	*nail.*
opprobre,	*reproach.*
ordre,	*order.*
organe,	*an organ.*
orge,	*barley.*

P

Pacte,	*a bargain.*
paradoxe,	*a paradox.*
parricide,	*parricide.*
participe,	*participle.*
patrimoine,	*patrimony.*
peigne,	*a comb.*
pêne,	*a bolt.*
peuple,	*people.*
phénomène,	*phenomeno*
plâtre,	*plaister.*
poivre,	*pepper.*
pôle,	*pole.*
portique,	*portico.*
pouce,	*thumb.*
précepte,	*precept.*
précipice,	*precipice.*
préjudice,	*prejudice.*
prestige,	*an imposture.*
prétexte,	*a pretence.*
principe,	*a principle.*
prodige,	*prodigy.*
proverbe,	*proverb.*
pupître,	*a desk.*

R

Régime,	*a diet.*
règne,	*reign.*
remède,	*remedy.*
reptile,	*a reptile.*
reproche,	*reproach.*
reste,	*rest.*
rêve,	*a dream.*
rhume,	*a rheum.*
risque,	*a risk*

S.

Sable,	*sand.*
sabre,	*broad-sword.*
sacrifice,	*sacrifice.*
sacerdoce,	*priest-hood.*
salpêtre,	*salt-petre.*
scandale,	*scandal.*
sceptre,	*a sceptre.*
schisme,	*a schism.*
scrupule,	*a scruple.*
seigle,	*rye.*
service,	*service.*
sexe,	*a sex.*
siècle,	*an age.*
signe,	*a sign.*
songe,	*dream.*

souffle,	*breath.*	trouble,	*trouble.*
soufre,	*sulphur.*	tube,	*tube.*
spectre,	*a ghost.*	tumulte,	*tumult.*
style,	*a style.*		
subside,	*subsidy.*		**V**
sucre,	*sugar.*		
supplice,	*a torment.*	Vacarme,	*uproar.*
symbole,	*a symbol.*	ventre,	*belly.*
synode,	*a synod.*	verbe,	*verb.*
synonyme,	*a synonima.*	verre,	*glass.*
		vestibule,	*entry.*
	T	vice,	*vice.*
		vinaigre,	*vinegar.*
Télescope,	*telescope.*	volume,	*volume.*
terme,	*a term.*	ulcère,	*ulcer.*
texte,	*a text.*		
théâtre,	*theatre.*		**Z**
triangle,	*triangle.*		
trône,	*a throne.*	Zéle,	*zeal.*
tropique,	*tropic.*	zéphyre,	*zephir.*

N. B. There are some more, but they are so little used, that I have not thought proper to insert them.

SUBSTANTIVES

Masculine in one Signification, and Feminine in another.

un aune,	*an alder.*
une aune,	*an ell.*
un barbe,	*a Barbary horse.*
une barbe,	*a beard.*
un basque,	*a Basque.*
une basque,	*a skirt.*
un coche,	*a travelling coach.*
une coche,	*a sow.*
un couple,	*a couple, (a husband and his wife.)*
une couple,	*a couple, (of things.)*

un enseigne,	*an ensign.*
une enseigne,	*a sign.*
un exemple,	*a pattern.*
une exemple,	*a copy.*
un garde,	*a keeper.*
une garde,	*a guard.*
le greffe,	*registry.*
la greffe,	*the graft.*
un guide,	*a guide.*
une guide,	*a guidance.*
un iris,	*a rainbow.*
une iris,	*an iris, (precious stone.)*
un livre,	*a book.*
une livre,	*a pound.*
un manche,	*a handle.*
une manche,	*a sleeve.*
un mémoire,	*a memorandum.*
une mémoire,	*a memory.*
un mode,	*a modality.*
une mode,	*a fashion.*
un môle,	*a mole.*
une môle,	*a moon-calf.*
un moule,	*a mould.*
une moule,	*a muscle.*
un mousse,	*a ship-boy.*
la mousse,	*the moss.*
un œuvre,	*a work, (of music.)*
une œuvre,	*a work.*
un page,	*a page, (to a king.)*
une page,	*a page, (of a book.)*
un paillasse,	*a clown.*
une paillasse,	*a straw-bed.*
un parallèle,	*a comparison.*
une parallèle,	*a parallel-line.*

le pendule,	*the pendulum.*
une pendule,	*a clock.*
le période,	*pitch.*
une période,	*a period.*
le plane,	*the plane-tree.*
la plane,	*the plane.*
le platine *,	*platina, (a metal.)*
la platine,	*platen.*
le ponte,	*punter.*
la ponte,	*the laying of eggs.*
un pique,	*a mattock.*
une pique,	*a pike.*
un poêle,	*a stove.*
une poêle,	*a frying pan.*
un poste,	*an employment.*
la poste,	*the post-office.*
le pourpre,	*purples, (a sort of illness.)*
la pourpre,	*the purple.*
un quadrille,	*quadril, (game.)*
une quadrille,	*a troop of horses.*
un Satyre,	*a Satyr.*
une satyre,	*a satire.*
le solde,	*the balance of an accompt.*
la solde,	*pay.*
un somme,	*a sleep.*
une somme,	*a sum.*
un tour,	*a trick.*
une tour,	*a tower.*
un triomphe,	*a triumph.*
une triomphe,	*a trump at cards.*
un trompette,	*a trumpeter.*
une trompette,	*a trumpet.*

* Masculine, according to the last edition of the Dictionary of the French Academy, and the actual use.

une vas,	*a vase.*
la vase,	*the mud.*
un voile,	*a veil.*
une voile,	*a sail.*
personne, M.	*when pronoun.*
personne, F.	*when substantive.*

Other substantives belong exclusively to the masculine or feminine gender.

SECTION THE FOURTH.

Of the Number of Substantives.

The number of nouns denotes the distinction between one and several objects.

There are two numbers, called singular and plural. A noun is in the singular, when it denotes but one person or thing, as *un homme*, a man; *une maison*, a house: a noun is in the plural, when it denotes several persons or things, as *des hommes*, men; *des maisons*, houses.

HOW TO FORM THE PLURAL OF NOUNS.

A general Rule.

The plural of nouns is formed by adding an *s* to the singular. Example:

Singular.		Plural.	
un homme,	*a man.*	des hommes,	*men.*
un ami,	*a friend.*	des amis,	*friends.*
une maison,	*a house.*	des maisons,	*houses.*

1. *Exception.*

Nouns which end in *u* in the singular, take an *x* when *u* is preceded by another vowel; as *le lieu*, the place, *le cha-*

peau, hat, singular: *les lieux, les chapeaux*, plural. *Trou*, hole, *clou*, nail, *filou*, sharper, *matou*, ram-cat, *licou*, halter, follow the general rule.

2. *Exception.*

Nouns which end in *s*, *x*, or *z*, in the singular, have both numbers alike, as *le fils*, the son, *la voix*, the voice, *le nez*, the nose, singular; *les fils, les voix, les nez*, plural.

3. *Exception.*

Most nouns which end in *al* or *ail*, in the singular, become plural by changing *al* or *ail* into *aux*; as *cheval*, horse, *travail*, work, singular; *chevaux, travaux*, plural.

4. *Exception.*

Nouns which end in *nt*, in the singular, become plural by the addition of an *s*, if the word is of one syllable only: as *pont*, bridge, *dent*, tooth, singular: *ponts, dents*, plural; and most commonly by changing *t* into *s*, if the word be of several syllables; as *enfant*, child, *parent*, relation, singular; *enfans, parens*, plural.

The words *aïeul, ciel, œil, tout*, make in the plural, *aïeux, cieux, yeux, tous.*

How Compound Words form their Plural.

Rule 1. When a word is composed of a substantive and an adjective, both take the mark of a plural. Example: *un gentil-homme*, a nobleman, *des gentils-hommes*; *un arc-boutant*, buttress, *des arcs-boutans.*

Rule 2. When a word is composed of a substantive and a pronoun, both take the mark of a plural; as *Monsieur*, Sir, *Madame*, Madam, singular; *Messieurs, Mesdames*, plural.

Rule 3. When a word is composed of two substantives not separated by a preposition, both take also the mark of the

plural; as *un Garde-Suisse*, singular; *des Gardes-Suisses*, plural.

Rule 4. When a word is composed of two substantives separated by a preposition, the first alone takes the mark of the plural: as *un arc-en-ciel*, a rainbow, *un chef-d'œuvre*, a master-piece, singular; *des arcs-en-ciel, des chefs-d'œuvre*, plural.

Rule 5. When a word is composed of a substantive and a verb, or a preposition; the substantive alone takes the mark of the plural: as *un garde-manger*, a larder, *un avant-coureur*, a forerunner, singular; *des gardes-manger, des avant-coureurs*.

Substantives which have no Plural in French.

The nouns which have no plural are, 1. the names of metals, taken in general; as *l'or*, gold; *l'argent*, silver; *le cuivre*, copper; *le plomb*, lead; *le fer*, iron. Indeed we sometimes say *les fers, les plombs*, &c. but then we consider these metals as wrought, and do not speak of them generally.

2. The names of habitual virtues and vices, such as *la foi* faith; *l'espérance*, hope; *la charité*, charity; *la prudence* prudence; *l'orgueil*, pride; *l'avarice*, covetousness, &c.

3. The infinitives substantively used, as *le boire*, the drinking; *le manger*, the eating, &c.; not *les boires, les mangers*.

4 The following substantives have no plural:

l'absinthe,	*wormwood.*	le lait,	*milk.*
l'artillerie,	*artillery.*	le miel,	*honey.*
le courroux,	*wrath.*	la molesse,	*effeminacy.*
la disette,	*scarcity.*	la noblesse,	*nobility.*
l'enfance,	*infancy.*	l'odorat,	*smelling.*
l'estime,	*esteem.*	l'ouïe,	*hearing.*
la faim,	*hunger.*	la pauvreté,	*poverty.*
la gloire,	*glory.*	le pourpre,	*red fever.*
l'encens,	*incense.*	le prochain,	*our neighbour*
l'eucharistie,	*eucharist.*	la renommée,	*fame.*
la jeunesse,	*youth.*	le repos	*rest.*

le salut,	*salvation.*	le sommeil,	*sleep.*
le sang,	*blood.*	la vieillesse,	*old age.*
la soif,	*thirst.*	la virilité,	*manhood.*

Substantives which have no singular in French.

les accordailles,	*espousals.*	les entrailles,	*bowels.*
les annales,	*annals.*	les épousailles,	*espousals.*
les ancêtres,	*ancestors.*	les frais,	*expenses.*
les armoiries,	*coat of arms.*	les funérailles,	*funerals.*
les arrérages,	*arrears.*	les gens,	*people.*
les atours,	*elegant dress.*	les matériaux,	*materials.*
les brossailles,	*briars.*	les mœurs,	*manners.*
les calendes,	*calends.*	les mouchettes,	*snuffers.*
les catacombes,	*catacombs.*	les munitions,	*ammunition.*
les ciseaux,	*scissars.*	les obsèques,	*obsequies.*
les confins,	*the confines.*	les pleurs,	*tears.*
les décombres,	*rubbish.*	les proches,	*relations.*
les dépens,	*cost.*	les prémices,	*first-fruits.*
les écrouelles,	*the king's evil.*	les représailles,	*reprisals.*
les entraves,	*shackles.*	les vivres,	*victuals.*

CHAPTER III.

OF ADJECTIVES.

THE *substantive* is the name of a person or thing; *adjectives*, on the contrary, express the qualities of a person or thing; as *la vertu est aimable, le vice est odieux*: virtue is amiable, vice is odious.—*Vertu* and *vice* are two substantives; *odieux* and *aimable* two adjectives.

A noun which makes good sense with the word *person* or *thing*, is an adjective; a noun which cannot make any sense with them is a substantive. This is an infallible rule to distinguish them from one another: for instance, the word *good* is an adjective, because we may say a *good* person, a

good thing; but the word *man* is a substantive, because we cannot say, a *man* person, a *man* thing.

The substantives, few excepted, are of one gender only; but the adjectives which qualify them, admit of two genders and numbers, because they must agree with the substantives to which they have reference. They form the feminine from the masculine termination, as follows.

SECTION THE FIRST.

How to form the Feminine of Adjectives.

Rule 1. Adjectives which end in *e* mute in the masculine singular are alike in both genders, as *sage*, wise, *brave*, brave, *célèbre*, famous, masculine; *sage, brave, célèbre*, feminine.

Rule 2. Adjectives which, in the masculine gender, end in any of the following vowels, *é* accented, *i*, or *u*, become feminine by the addition of an *e* mute; as *poli*, polite, *nu*, naked, *sensé*, sensible, masculine; *polie, nue, sensée*, feminine.

The adjectives *beau*, fine, *mou* soft, *fou*, foolish, *nouveau*, new, are written *bel, mol, fol, nouvel*, before a substantive masculine which begins with a vowel or *h* mute, and make in the femine *belle, molle, folle, nouvelle.*

Rule 3. Adjectives which end in *f* in the masculine, become feminine by changing *f* into *ve;* as *vif*, quick, *actif*, active, *neuf*, new, masculine; *vive, active, neuve*, feminine.

Rule 4. The adjectives of the ten following terminations, *el, eil, ul, ien, on, as, ais, os, et, ot*, commonly double their final consonants, and take an *e* mute for the final in the feminine gender: as *cruel*, cruel, *pareil*, alike, *nul*, no one, *ancien*, ancient, *bon*, good, *gras*, fat, *épais*, thick, *gros*, big, *net*, clean, *sot*, stupid, masculine; *cruelle, pareille, nulle, ancienne, bonne, grasse, épaisse, grosse, nette, sotte*, feminine.

Rule 5, Adjectives which end in *x* in the masculine, be-

come feminine by changing *x* into *se*; as *jaloux*, jealous, *heureux*, happy, masculine; *jalouse*, *heureuse*, feminine.

These four, *doux*, sweet, *faux*, false, *vieux*, old, *roux*, red, make in the feminine, *douce*, *fausse*, *vieille*, *rousse*.

Rule 6. Of the seven adjectives which end in *c*, these three, *blanc*, white, *franc*, frank, *sec*, dry, make, in the feminine, *blanche*, *franche*, *sèche*; the four others, *caduc*, decayed, *Grec*, Greek, *public*, public, *Turc*, Turkish, make, in the feminine, *caduque*, *Grèque*, *publique*, *Turque*.

Rule 7. Those ending in *eur*, become feminine by changing *eur* into *eure*, when they are not derived from verbs; as *intérieur*, interior, *extérieur*, exterior, masculine; *intérieure*, *extérieure*, feminine: but *trompeur*, deceitful, makes *trompeuse*, *grondeur*, grumbling, *grondeuse*, &c.

Remark. Several substantives in *eur*, have both genders, as they may apply to men and women, but they must not be mistaken for adjectives, though they may sometimes be used as such. Like the adjectives of the preceding rule, some form their feminine only by the addition of an *e*, as *prieur*, prior, *prieure*, prioress; some change *eur*, into *euse*, as *joueur*, gamester, *joueuse*; and some others change *eur* into *rice*, as *acteur*, actor, *actrice*, actress; *pécheur*, sinner, makes *pécheresse*; *enchanteur*, enchanter, *enchantresse*; *vengeur*, avenger, *vengeresse*.

Rule 8. Adjectives of all finals not mentioned before, become feminine by adding an *e* to the masculine termination; as *grand*, great, *divin*, divine, *savant*, learned, masculine; *grande*, *divine*, *savante*, feminine.

These four, *absous*, absolved, *dissous*, dissolved, *frais*, fresh, *long*, long, are excepted, and make in the feminine, *absoute*, *dissoute*, *fraîche*, *longue*.

N. B. Observe, from the preceding rules, that all adjectives end in *e* mute in the feminine singular; and as those which end in *e* mute form their plural by the addition of an *s*; all adjectives, without any exception, end in *es* in the feminine plural.

SECTION THE SECOND.

Of the Plural of Adjectives.

Adjectives form their plural like the substantives of which we have before spoken, and the rules given in page 41, can be applied to adjectives without any exception.

The following Adjectives have no Plural in the Masculine Gender:

austral,	*southern.*	lustral,	*lustral.*
boréal,	*northern.*	littéral,	*literal.*
canonial,	*canonical.*	matinal,	*early.*
conjugal,	*conjugal.*	naval,	*naval.*
diamétral,	*diametrical.*	pastoral,	*pastoral.*
fatal,	*fatal.*	pascal,	*pascal.*
filial,	*filial.*	pectoral,	*pectoral.*
final,	*final.*	spécial,	*special.*
frugal,	*frugal.*	vénal,	*venal.*
jovial,	*jovial.*		

SECTION THE THIRD.

Of Comparatives and Superlatives.

A Comparative is a comparison of two or more objects, in order to know what proportion they bear to one another: now as two objects can either be equal, superior, or inferior to one another, there are three sorts of comparatives, called of *equality*, *superiority*, and *inferiority*.

The Comparative of equality is formed by prefixing the word *aussi* to an adjective; as *je suis* aussi *riche que vous;* I am *as* rich as you.

The Comparative of superiority is formed by prefixing the word *plus* to an adjective; as *je suis* plus *grand que vous;* I am *taller* than you.

The Comparative of inferiority is formed by putting a negation before the verb, and *si* before the adjective, or only by prefixing the word *moins* to an adjective; as *je suis*

moins *heureux que vous*, or *je* ne *suis* pas si *heureux que vous;* I am *not so* happy as you.

The *Superlatives* increase or diminish to the utmost degree the signification of adjectives. They are of two sorts; the one *relative*, and the other *absolute*.

The first is formed by prefixing the article *le, la, les,* with *plus*, to the adjectives; as *j'ai vû* la plus *belle femme d'Angleterre;* I have seen the *handsomest* woman in England.

The second is formed by prefixing the adverbs *très* or *fort* to the adjective; as *je suis* très-*malheureux;* I am *very* unfortunate.

Comparatives and Superlatives formed irregularly.

These three adjectives, *bon*, good, *mauvais*, bad, *petit*, little, as well as their corresponding adverbs, deviate from others in the formation of their comparatives and superlatives, which are as follows:

	POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.	
adj.	bon,	*good.*	meilleur,	*better.*	le meilleur,	*the best.*
	mauvais,	*bad.*	pire,	*worse.*	le pire,	*the worst.*
	petit,	*little.*	moindre,	*less.*	le moindre,	*the least.*
adv.	bien,	*well.*	mieux,	*better.*	le mieux,	*the best.*
	mal,	*bad.*	pis,	*worse.*	le pis,	*the worst.*
	peu,	*little.*	moins,	*less.*	le moins,	*the least.*

We say also *plus mauvais, plus petit, plus mal;* but never, *plus bon, plus bien, plus peu.*

SECTION THE FOURTH.

Of the Cardinal Numbers.

The *Cardinal numbers* denote the quantity of persons or things, and answer to the question *how much? how many?* They are called *cardinal*, because they are the root of all others; they are as follows:

1,	un, *m.* une, *f.*	*one,*	I.
2,	deux,	*two,*	II.
3,	trois,	*three,*	III.
4,	quatre,	*four,*	IV.
5,	cinq,	*five,*	V.
6,	six,	*six,*	VI.
7,	sept,	*seven,*	VII.
8,	huit,	*eight,*	VIII.
9,	neuf,	*nine,*	IX.
10,	dix,	*ten,*	X.
11,	onze,	*eleven,*	XI.
12,	douze,	*twelve,*	XII.
13,	treize,	*thirteen,*	XIII.
14,	quatorze,	*fourteen,*	XIV.
15,	quinze,	*fifteen,*	XV.
16,	seize,	*sixteen,*	XVI.
17,	dix-sept,	*seventeen,*	XVII.
18,	dix-huit,	*eighteen,*	XVIII.
19,	dix-neuf,	*nineteen,*	XIX.
20,	vingt,	*twenty,*	XX.
21,	vingt et un,	*twenty-one,*	XXI.
22,	vingt-deux,	*twenty-two,*	XXII.
23,	vingt-trois,	*twenty-three,*	XXIII.
24,	vingt-quatre,	*twenty-four,*	XXIV.
25,	vingt-cinq,	*twenty-five,*	XXV.
26,	vingt-six,	*twenty-six,*	XXVI.
27,	vingt-sept,	*twenty-seven,*	XXVII.
28,	vingt-huit,	*twenty-eight,*	XXVIII.
29,	vingt-neuf,	*twenty-nine,*	XXIX.
30,	trente,	*thirty,*	XXX.
31,	trente et un,	*thirty-one,*	XXXI.
32,	trente-deux,	*thirty-two,*	XXXII.
33,	trente-trois,	*thirty-three,*	XXXIII.
34,	trente-quatre,	*thirty-four,*	XXXIV.
35,	trente-cinq,	*thirty-five,*	XXXV.
36,	trente-six,	*thirty-six,*	XXXVI.
37,	trente-sept,	*thirty-seven,*	XXXVII.
38,	trente-huit,	*thirty-eight,*	XXXVIII.
39,	trente-neuf,	*thirty-nine,*	XXXIX.
40,	quarante,	*forty,*	XL.
41,	quarante et un,	*forty-one,*	XLI

42,	quarante-deux,	*forty-two,*	XLII.
43,	quarante-trois,	*forty-three,*	XLIII.
44,	quarante-quatre,	*forty-four,*	XLIV.
45,	quarante-cinq,	*forty-five,*	XLV.
46,	quarante-six,	*forty-six,*	XLVI.
47,	quarante-sept,	*forty-seven,*	XLVII.
48,	quarante-huit,	*forty-eight,*	XLVIII.
49,	quarante-neuf,	*forty-nine,*	XLIX.
50,	cinquante,	*fifty,*	L.
51,	cinquante et un,	*fifty-one,*	LI.
52,	cinquante-deux,	*fifty-two,*	LII.
53,	cinquante-trois,	*fifty-three,*	LIII.
54,	cinquante-quatre,	*fifty-four,*	LIV.
55,	cinquante-cinq,	*fifty-five,*	LV.
56,	cinquante-six,	*fifty-six,*	LVI.
57,	cinquante-sept,	*fifty-seven,*	LVII.
58,	cinquante-huit,	*fifty-eight,*	LVIII.
59,	cinquante-neuf,	*fifty-nine,*	LIX.
60,	soixante,	*sixty,*	LX.
61,	soixante et un,	*sixty-one,*	LXI.
62,	soixante-deux,	*sixty-two,*	LXII.
63,	soixante-trois,	*sixty-three,*	LXIII.
64,	soixante-quatre,	*sixty-four,*	LXIV.
65,	soixante-cinq,	*sixty-five,*	LXV.
66,	soixante-six,	*sixty-six,*	LXVI.
67,	soixante-sept,	*sixty-seven,*	LXVII.
68,	soixante-huit,	*sixty-eight,*	LXVIII.
69,	soixante-neuf,	*sixty-nine,*	LXIX.
70,	soixante-dix,	*seventy,*	LXX.
71,	soixante et onze,	*seventy-one,*	LXXI.
72,	soixante-douze,	*seventy-two,*	LXXII.
73,	soixante-treize,	*seventy-three,*	LXXIII.
74,	soixante-quatorze,	*seventy-four,*	LXXIV.
75,	soixante-quinze,	*seventy-five,*	LXXV.
76,	soixante-seize,	*seventy-six,*	LXXVI.
77,	soixante-dix-sept,	*seventy-seven,*	LXXVII.
78,	soixante-dix-huit,	*seventy-eight,*	LXXVIII.
79,	soixante-dix-neuf,	*seventy-nine,*	LXXIX.
80,	quatre-vingt,	*eighty,*	LXXX.
81,	quatre-vingt-un,	*eighty-one,*	LXXXI.
82,	quatre-vingt-deux,	*eighty-two,*	LXXXII.

83,	quatre-vingt-trois,	*eighty-three,*	LXXXIII.
84,	quatre-vingt-quatre,	*eighty-four,*	LXXXIV.
85,	quatre-vingt-cinq,	*eighty-five,*	LXXXV.
86,	quatre-vingt-six,	*eighty-six,*	LXXXVI.
87,	quatre-vingt-sept,	*eighty-seven,*	LXXXVII.
88,	quatre-vingt-huit,	*eighty-eight,*	LXXXVIII.
89,	quatre-vingt-neuf,	*eighty-nine,*	LXXXIX.
90,	quatre-vingt-dix,	*ninety,*	XC.
91,	quatre-vingt-onze,	*ninety-one,*	XCI.
92,	quatre-vingt-douze,	*ninety-two,*	XCII.
93,	quatre-vingt-treize,	*ninety-three,*	XCIII.
94,	quatre-vingt-quatorze,	*ninety-four,*	XCIV.
95,	quatre-vingt-quinze,	*ninety-five,*	XCV.
96,	quatre-vingt-seize,	*ninety-six,*	XCVI.
97,	quatre-vingt-dix-sept,	*ninety-seven,*	XCVII.
98,	quatre-vingt-dix-huit,	*ninety-eight,*	XCVIII.
99,	quatre-vingt-dix-neuf,	*ninety-nine,*	XCIX.
100,	cent,	*hundred,*	C.
200,	deux cents,	*two hundred,*	CC.
300,	trois cents,	*three hundred,*	CCC.
400,	quatre cents,	*four hundred,*	CCCC.
500,	cinq cents,	*five hundred,*	D.
600,	six cents,	*six hundred,*	DC.
700,	sept cents,	*seven hundred,*	DCC.
800,	huit cents,	*eight hundred,*	DCCC.
900,	neuf cents,	*nine hundred,*	DCCCC.
1000,	mille,	*one thousand,*	M.

Observations upon Cardinal Numbers.

1. When two or more numbers are joined together, the greatest goes first in French : thus we say, *vingt-cinq, vingt-six,* &c. and not *cinq & vingt,* five and twenty, *six & vingt,* six and twenty, as the English sometimes do.

2. When several numbers meet together, we do not put in French any conjunction between them : thus we say, *cent vingt, cent trente,* and not *cent & vingt, cent & trente,* hundred and twenty, hundred and thirty.

3. The English word *thousand,* is rendered in French by *mil,* with one *l* only, when it is used for the date of the year, and by *mille* with *lle,* in other circumstances : thus, we say,

l'an mil huit cent huit, in the year one thousand eight hundred and eight.

4. When the words *cent* and *mille,* are followed by a number, they are never preceded by the word *un* in French, as they are in English by the word *one:* thus we say, *cent cinquante,* for *one* hundred and fifty; *mil sept cent,* for *one* thousand and seven hundred; and not un *cent cinquante,* nor un *mil sept cent.*

5. These numbers, *quatre-vingt, six vingt,* and *cent,* are written with an *s,* only when they are followed immediately by a substantive: thus we write *quatre-vingts livres,* eighty pounds; *trois cents soldats,* three hundred soldiers, with an *s;* and *quatre-vingt-dix livres,* ninety pounds; *trois cent vingt-six soldats,* three hundred and twenty-six soldiers, without an *s.*

6. The word *million* is a true substantive, and takes the mark of the plural, as *deux millions, dix millions.*

7. *Mille,* when meaning a thousand, never takes an *s,* so we say *deux mille,* two thousand: but when *mille* means a *mile,* it takes *s* in the plural, as *un mille,* one mile, *deux milles,* two miles, &c.

8. All numbers not mentioned in the preceding observations are always indeclinable.

SECTION THE FIFTH.

Of Ordinal Numbers.

Ordinal numbers denote the order and disposition of things; they are as follows:

1er,	premier, *m.*	première, *f.*	1st,	*first.*
2d,	second, *m.*	seconde, *f*	2d,	*second.*
3e,	troisième,		3d,	*third.*
4e,	quatrième,		4th,	*fourth.*
5e,	cinquième,		5th,	*fifth.*
6e,	sixième,		6th,	*sixth.*
7e,	septième,		7th,	*seventh.*
8e,	huitième,		8th,	*eighth.*
9e,	neuvième,		9th,	*ninth.*

10e,	dixième,	10th,	*tenth.*
11e,	onzième,	11th,	*eleventh.*
12e,	douzième,	12th,	*twelfth.*
13e,	treizième,	13th,	*thirteenth.*
14e,	quatorzième,	14th,	*fourteenth.*
15e,	quinzième,	15th,	*fifteenth.*
16e,	seizième,	16th,	*sixteenth.*
17e,	dix-septième,	17th,	*seventeenth.*
18e,	dix-huitième,	18th,	*eighteenth.*
19e,	dix-neuvième,	19th,	*nineteenth.*
20e,	vingtième,	20th,	*twentieth.*
21e,	vingt et unième, et ainsi de suite.	21st,	*twenty-first, and so on.*

Observations upon Ordinal Numbers.

1. Except *le premier* and *le second*, the *ordinal* numbers are formed from the *cardinal*, by changing *e* mute into *ième*, for those which end with a vowel: as *quatre, quatrième;* and by adding *ième* to those which end in any other consonant than *f*: as *trois, dix*, cardinal; *troisième, dixième*, ordinal, except *cinq* which takes *u* before *ième, cinquième.*

2. Those which end in *f*, change that final into *vième*: as *neuf, dix-neuf*, cardinal; *neuvième, dix-neuvième*, ordinal.

3. The English always use the *ordinal* numbers, when they put a date to any thing; the French, on the contrary, most commonly use the *cardinal* in this case, (except the first which is *ordinal*): thus we say, *le premier de Janvier, le deux de Fevrier, le trois de Mars, le quatre d'Avril, le cinq de Mai*, &c. the first of January, the second of February, the third of March, the fourth of April, the fifth of May, &c.

4. The English use the *ordinal* numbers, with an article after the Christian name of a sovereign; the French, on the contrary, use the *cardinal*, (the two first excepted), and, never put any article before them. Example: *Henri premier, Henri second, Henri trois, Henri quatre*, &c. Henry the first, Henry the second, Henry the third, Henry the fourth, &c. we say also nevertheless, *Henri deux, Charles deux.*

5. The adverbs of *number* are formed from the *ordinal,*

by adding *ment* to the final: as *quatrième, dixième*, ordinal; *quatrièmement, dixièmement*, adverbs.

There are again three other sorts of numbers, called *collective, distributive* and *proportional*; the *collective* denotes a certain quantity of things joined together: as *une douzaine*, a dozen; *une cinquantaine*, fifty, The *distributive* express a part of the whole: as *la moitié*, the half; *le tiers*, the third part; *le dixième*, the tenth part, &c. The *proportional* express the same quantity, multiplied, as *double*, double, *triple*, triple, *centuple*, centuple.

CHAPTER IV.

Of Pronouns.

Pronouns are words used instead of nouns. If we were obliged to use a substantive before or after every verb, the repetition would be extremely tedious; we avoid this inconvenience by the help of some little words used instead of them, which are called *pronouns*. They are of six sorts, called *personal, possessive, demonstrative, relative, interrogative* and *indeterminate*, of which as follows:

1. *Of Personal Pronouns.*

The personal pronouns denote the persons; there are three persons: the *first* is that who speaks, the *second* is that to whom one speaks, and the *third* is the person of whom one speaks. The pronouns of the first person, *je, me, moi, nous*, and those of the second *tu, te, toi, vous*, are said of persons only, or of personified objects; but those of the third, *il, ils; elle, elles; lui, leur, le, la, les; se, soi; y, en*, are said of persons, animals, and things.

As the same pronoun is expressed one way when it is *conjunctive*, (that is to say, indispensably joined to a verb), and another when *disjunctive*, (that is to say, which may be used without any reference to a verb); strict attention must be given to the following declensions, in which they are carefully distinguished.

DECLENSION OF CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

FIRST PERSON.

	Singular.			Plural.	
	m. f.			*m. f.*	
N.	Je,	*I.*	N.	Nous,	*We.*
G.	En,	*Of me.*	G.	En,	*Of us.*
D.	Me,	*To me.*	D.	Nous,	*To us.*
Ac.	Me,	*Me.*	Ac.	Nous,	*Us.*

SECOND PERSON.

	m. f.			*m. f.*	
N.	Tu,	*Thou.*	N.	Vous,	*You.*
G.	En,	*Of thee.*	G.	En,	*Of you.*
D.	Te,	*To thee.*	D.	Vous,	*To you.*
Ac.	Te,	*Thee.*	Ac.	Vous,	*You.*

THIRD PERSON.

N.	Il, *m.*	*He.*	N.	Ils, *m.*	*They.*
G.	En,	*Of him.*	G.	En,	*Of them.*
D.	Lui,	*To him.*	D.	Leur,	*To them.*
Ac.	Le,	*Him.*	Ac.	Les,	*Them.*
N.	Elle, *f.*	*She.*	N.	Elles, *f.*	*They.*
G.	En,	*Of her.*	G.	En,	*Of them.*
D.	Lui,	*To her.*	D.	Leur,	*To them.*
Ac.	La,	*Her.*	Ac.	Les,	*Them.*

OF THE DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

FIRST PERSON.

	Singular.			Plural.	
N.	Moi,	*I.*	N.	Nous,	*We.*
G.	De moi,	*Of me.*	G.	De nous,	*Of us.*
D.	A moi,	*To me.*	D.	A nous,	*To us.*
Ac.	Moi,	*Me.*	Ac.	Nous,	*Us.*

SECOND PERSON.

Singular.			Plural.		
N.	Toi,	*Thou.*	N.	Vous,	*You.*
G.	De toi,	*Of thee.*	G.	De vous,	*Of you.*
D.	A toi,	*To thee.*	D.	A vous,	*To you.*
Ac.	Toi,	*Thee.*	Ac.	Vous,	*You.*

THIRD PERSON.

N.	Lui, *m.*	*He.*	N.	Eux, *m.*	*They.*
G.	De lui,	*Of him.*	G.	D'eux,	*Of them.*
D.	A lui,	*To him.*	D.	A eux,	*To them.*
Ac.	Lui,	*Him.*	Ac.	Eux,	*Them.*
N.	Elle, *f.*	*She.*	N.	Elles, *f.*	*They.*
G.	D'elle,	*Of her.*	G.	D'elles,	*Of them.*
D.	A elle,	*To her.*	D.	A elles,	*To them.*
Ac.	Elle,	*Her.*	Ac.	Elles,	*Them.*

Pronouns used with reference to animals and things.

Singular.			Plural.		
N.	Il, elle, *or* ce,	*it.*	N.	Ils, elles, *or* ce,	*them.*
G.	En,	*of it.*	G.	En,	*of them.*
D.	Lui, y,	*to it.*	D.	Leur, y,	*to them.*
Ac.	Le, la,	*it.*	Ac.	Les,	*them.*

N. B. The compound pronouns *moi-même*, myself; *toi-même*, thyself; *lui-même*, himself; *elle-même*, herself; *nous-mêmes*, ourselves; *vous-mêmes*, yourselves; *eux-mêmes*, themselves; take the preposition *de* in the genitive case, and *à* in the dative.

---

2. *Of Possessive Pronouns.*

The possessive pronouns denote possession. They are called *conjunctive*, when they are joined to a noun, and

disjunctive when they are used with reference to a noun antecedent. Both are declined as follows:

DECLENSION OF CONJUNCTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	m.	*f.*	*m.* & *f.*	
N. Ac.	mon,	ma,	mes,	*my.*
G.	de mon,	de ma,	de mes,	*of my.*
D.	à mon,	à ma,	à mes,	*to my.*

	Singular.		Plural.	
	m.	*f.*	*m.* & *f.*	
N. Ac.	ton,	ta,	tes,	*thy.*
G.	de ton,	de ta,	de tes,	*of thy.*
D.	à ton,	à ta,	à tes,	*to thy.*

	Singular.		Plural.	
	m.	*f.*	*m.* & *f.*	
N. Ac.	son,	sa,	ses,	*his, her, its.*
G.	de son,	de sa,	de ses,	*of his, &c.*
D.	à son,	à sa,	à ses,	*to his, &c.*

	Singular.	Plural.	
	m. & *f.*	*m.* & *f.*	
N. Ac.	notre,	nos,	*our.*
G.	de notre,	de nos,	*of our.*
D.	à notre,	à nos,	*to our.*

	Singular.	Plural.	
	m. & *f.*	*m.* & *f.*	
N. Ac.	votre,	vos,	*your.*
G.	de votre,	de vos,	*of your.*
D.	à votre,	à vos,	*to your.*

	Singular.	Plural.	
	m. & *f.*	*m.* & *f.*	
N. Ac.	leur,	leurs,	*their.*
G.	de leur,	de leurs,	*of their.*
D.	à leur.	à leurs,	*to their.*

DECLENSION OF DISJUNCTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

	Singular. *m.*	*f.*	Plural. *m.*	*f.*	
N. Ac.	le mien,	la mienne,	les miens,	les miennes,	*mine.*
G.	du mien,	de la mienne,	des miens,	des miennes,	*of mine.*
D.	au mien,	à la mienne,	aux miens,	aux miennes,	*to mine.*

	Singular. *m.*	*f.*	Plural. *m.*	*f.*	
N. Ac.	le tien,	la tienne,	les tiens,	les tiennes,	*thine.*
G.	du tien,	de la tienne,	des tiens,	des tiennes,	*of thine.*
D.	au tien,	à la tienne,	aux tiens,	aux tiennes,	*to thine.*

	Singular. *m.*	*f.*	Plural. *m.*	*f.*	
N. Ac.	le sien,	la sienne,	les siens,	les siennes,	*his, her, its.*
G.	du sien,	de la sienne,	des siens,	des siennes,	*of his, &c.*
D.	au sien,	à la sienne,	aux siens,	aux siennes,	*to his, &c.*

	Singular. *m.*	*f.*	Plural. *m. & f.*
N. Ac.	le nôtre,	la nôtre,	les nôtres, *ours.*
G.	du nôtre,	de la nôtre,	des nôtres, *of ours*
D.	au nôtre,	à la nôtre,	aux nôtres, *to ours*

	Singular. *m.*	*f.*	Plural. *m. & f.*
N. Ac.	le vôtre,	la vôtre,	les vôtres, *yours.*
G.	du vôtre,	de la vôtre,	des vôtres, *of yours.*
D.	au vôtre,	à la vôtre,	aux vôtres, *to yours.*

	Singular. *m*	*f.*	Plural. *m. & f.*	
N. Ac.	le leur,	la leur,	les leurs,	*theirs.*
G.	du leur,	de la leur,	des leurs,	*of theirs.*
D.	au leur,	à la leur,	aux leurs,	*to theirs.*

Observations upon these Pronouns.

1. The possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the substantive which they precede, or to which they have reference.

2. *Mon, ton, son,* are used in the feminine instead of *ma, ta, sa,* before a vowel or *h* mute; as, *mon âme,* my soul, *son humeur,* his humour.

3. The *conjunctive* take the preposition *de* in the genitive case, and *à* in the dative, like proper names. The *disjunctive* are preceded by *le, la, les,* in the nominative; by *du, de la, des,* in the genitive; and by *au, à la, aux,* in the dative, like a substantive.

4. *Leur,* to them, must not be confounded with *leur,* their. The first is a personal pronoun which goes before a verb, and never takes an *s,* as *il leur parle,* he speaks to them. The second is a possessive pronoun which goes before a substantive, and take an *s* in the plural, as *leurs frères sont venus,* their brothers are come.

5. *Notre* and *votre,* conjunctive, are sounded short; *le nôtre, le vôtre,* disjunctive, are sounded long, and have a circumflex accent over *ô:* as *notre père est mort; le vôtre est en bonne santé;* our father is dead; yours is in good health.

---

3. *Of Demonstrative Pronouns.*

Demonstrative pronouns denote precisely, and point out, as it were, to the eye, the noun which they precede, or to which they have reference. They are called *conjunctive demonstrative* when they are joined to a substantive, and *disjunctive* when they have reference to a substantive antecedent.

Pronouns used before a substantive.

	m.		*f.*	
N. Ac. *sing.*	ce,	cet*,	cette,	*this* or *that.*
G.	de ce,	de cet,	de cette,	*of this* or *of that.*
D,	à ce,	à cet,	à cette,	*to this* or *to that.*

* This pronoun is used before a noun masculine, which begins with a vowel or an *h* mute.

N. Ac. *pl.*	ces,—*m.* & *f.*	*these* or *those.*
G.	de ces,	*of these* or *of those.*
D.	à ces,	*to these* or *to those.*

Demonstrative Pronouns followed by a genitive or a relative Pronoun.

	m.	*f.*	
N. Ac. *sing.*	celui,	celle,	*that.*
G.	de celui,	de celle,	*of that.*
D.	à celui,	à celle,	*to that.*
N. Ac. *pl.*	ceux,	celles,	*those.*
G.	de ceux,	de celles,	*of those.*
D.	à ceux,	à celles,	*to those.*

Pronouns used with reference to the last noun spoken of

	m.	*f.*	
N. Ac. *sing.*	celui-ci,	celle-ci,	*this.*
G.	de celui-ci,	de celle-ci,	*of this.*
D.	à celui-ci,	à celle-ci,	*to this.*
N. Ac. *pl.*	ceux-ci,	celles-ci,	*these.*
G.	de ceux-ci,	de celles-ci,	*of these.*
D.	à ceux-ci,	à celles-ci,	*to these.*

Pronouns used with reference to the first noun spoken of.

N. Ac. *sing.*	celui-là,	celle-là,	*that.*
G.	de celui-là,	de celle-là,	*of that.*
D.	à celui-là,	à celle-là,	*to that.*
N. Ac. *pl.*	ceux-là,	celles-là,	*those.*
G.	de ceux-là,	de celles-là,	*of those.*
D.	à ceux-là,	à celles-là,	*to those.*

Pronouns used to point at an object without naming it.

N. Ac. *sing.*	ceci,	*this.*	cela,	*that.*
G.	de ceci,	*of this.*	de cela,	*of that.*
D.	à ceci,	*to this.*	à cela,	*to that.*

4. *Of Relative Pronouns.*

Though every pronoun has reference to a substantive, and might be, on that account, called *relative*, yet the following, *qui, que, dont, lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*, especially bear that denomination, being more particularly related to their antecedent than any other. Of the relative pronouns, some have reference only to persons or personified objects, and some to animals and things. They are declined as follows:

Pronouns relative to persons.

	m. f. sing. plur.	
N.	qui,	*who.*
G.	de qui, *or* dont,	*of whom.*
D.	à qui,	*to whom.*
Ac.	qui, *or* que,	*whom.*

Pronouns relative to animals and things.

Singular.

	m. f.	*m.*	*f.*	
N.	qui *or*	lequel,	laquelle,	*which.*
G.	dont *or*	duquel,	de laquelle,	*of which.*
D.		auquel,	à laquelle,	*to which.*
Ac.	que *or*	lequel,	laquelle,	*which.*

Plural.

	m. f.	*m.*	*f.*	
N.	qui *or*	lesquels,	lesquelles,	*which.*
G.	dont *or*	desquels,	desquelles,	*of which.*
D.		auxquels,	auxquelles,	*to which.*
Ac.	que *or*	lesquels,	lesquelles,	*which.*

5. *Of Interrogative Pronouns.*

Interrogative pronouns are those used to ask a question;

viz. *who? which?* and *what?* expressed and declined in French as follows:

Pronouns used with reference to persons.

N.	qui?	*who?*
G.	de qui?	*of whom?*
D.	à qui?	*to whom?*
Ac.	qui?	*whom?*

Pronouns used with reference to persons and things.

	Singular.		Plural.		
	m.	*f.*	*m.*	*f.*	
N. Ac.	lequel,	laquelle,	lesquels,	lesquelles,	*which?*
G.	duquel,	de laquelle,	desquels,	desquelles,	*of which?*
D.	auquel,	à laquelle,	auxquels,	auxquelles,	*to which?*

What? followed by a substantive.

	Singular.		Plural.		
	m.	*f.*	*m.*	*f.*	
N. Ac.	quel,	quelle,	quels,	quelles,	*what?*
G.	de quel,	de quelle,	de quels,	de quelles,	*of what?*
D.	à quel,	à quelle,	à quels,	a quelles,	*to what?*

What? not followed by a substantive.

N.	quoi,	*what?*
G.	de quoi,	*of what?*
D.	à quoi,	*to what?*
Ac.	que,	*what?*

---

6. *Of Indeterminate Pronouns.*

Indeterminate pronouns are so called, because they express a vague and indeterminate object; they are divided into four classes.

1. *Those which are never joined to a noun.*

on,	one, people, they.	*l'un l'autre,*	one another.
quelqu'un,	somebody.	*autrui,*	others.
quiconque,	whoever.	*personne,*	nobody.
chacun,	every one.	*rien.*	nothing.

2. *Those which are always joined to a noun.*

quelque,	some.	*quelconque,*	whatever.
chaque,	every.	*certain,*	some.

3. *Those which are sometimes joined to a noun and sometimes not.*

nul,	not one.	*ni l'un ni l'autre,*	neither.
pas un,	not one.	*le même,*	the same.
aucun,	not one.	*tel,*	such.
autre,	another.	*plusieurs,*	many.
l'un et l'autre,	both.	*tout,*	every, everything.
l'un ou l'autre,	either.		

4. *Those which are followed by the conjunction* que.

qui que,	whoever.	*quelque que,*	whatever.
quoi que,	whatever.	*tel que,*	such as.
quel que,	whoever or whatever.	*tout que,*	however.
lequel que,	whichever.		

Observe, 1. After the indeterminate pronoun *on,* and other, in the singular, we express the personal pronouns which relate to them, by *de soi, à soi, se, soi,* as *on doit veiller sur soi,* one must watch over one's self, *chacun doit penser à soi,* every one ought to take care of himself.

2. *L'un l'autre* makes *l'un de l'autre,* in the genitive, and *l'un à l'autre,* in the dative; *l'un et l'autre, l'un ou l'autre, ni l'un ni l'autre,* make *de l'un et de l'autre, de l'un ou de l'autre, ni de l'un ni de l'autre,* in the genitive, and *à l'un et à l'autre, à l'un ou à l'autre, ni à l'un ni à l'autre,* in the dative, *le même* makes *du même, au même.*

3. All other pronouns take only the preposition *de* in the genitive, and *à* in the dative.

CHAPTER V.

OF VERBS.

This chapter is divided into *eight* sections: *the first* speaks of the nature and species of verbs; *the second* treats of their different moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; *the third* gives the conjugation of the auxiliaries *avoir* and *être*, and contains a list of those conjugated with *to have* in English, and with *être* in French; *the fourth* comprehends the twelve regular conjugations; *the fifth* explains the conjugation of reflected verbs; *the sixth* teaches the method of conjugating all verbs with negations, interrogations, and pronouns; *the seventh* has for object the irregular conjugations; and *the eighth* treats of the impersonal verbs.

SECTION THE FIRST.

Of the nature and species of verbs.

A verb, according to the Latin etymology, *verbum*, signifies *word*, to denote that the verb is the word by excellence, and the principal part of speech.

A verb expresses an action done, or received; or denotes only the state of its nominative case; hence arise three distinct sorts of verbs which are called,

1, active, *actif*.
2, passive, *passif*.
3, neuter, *neutre*.

The active verb expresses the action of its nominative upon some persons or things; as *Dieu punira les méchans,* God

will punish the wicked. *Punish* is a verb active, which expresses the action of God over the wicked.

The passive verb expresses an action received by its nominative case; as *les méchans seront punis de Dieu*, wicked people will be punished by God.

The neuter verb expresses merely the state of its nominative case; as *je suis*, I am: *je dors*, I sleep; *je languis*, I languish. It expresses also an action, but which remains in the subject, which produces it; as *je marche*, I walk, *j'agis*, I act.

Verbs are again subdivided into six classes which are called,

VERBS,

1,	auxiliary,	*auxiliaires.*
2,	reflected,	*réfléchis.*
3,	personal,	*personnels:*
4,	impersonal,	*impersonnels.*
5,	regular,	*réguliers.*
6,	irregular,	*irréguliers.*

1. *The auxiliary verbs* are these two, *avoir*, to have; and *être*, to be; they are called *auxiliaries*, because they help to conjugate all other verbs in their compound tenses.

2. *The reflected verbs* are those which have for subject and object the same person or thing; as *je me lève*, I rise; *je m'habille*, I dress myself; *je me repens*, I repent.

3. *The personal verbs* are those which are conjugated with three persons in the singular number, and three in the plural, in all the tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods; as *je parle, tu parles, il parle, nous parlons, vous parlez*, &c.

4. *The impersonal verbs* are those which are used only in the third person singular of each tense; as *il pleut*, it rains; *il neige*, it snows; *il gèle*, it freezes.

5. *The regular verbs* are those which are conjugated in all their tenses and persons, like the verb of the same final

in the infinitive, which is given for example in regular conjugations; thus, for instance, *chanter* and *danser*, to sing, and to dance, are regular of the first conjugation, because they are conjugated like *parler* in all their tenses and persons.

The *irregular verbs* are those which deviate in some tenses or persons, from the verb regular of the same conjugation which is given for example; thus, *aller*, to go, is irregular, because it is not conjugated, like *parler*, though it has the same final in the infinitive mood.

SECTION THE SECOND.

Of Moods, Tenses, Numbers and Persons of Verbs.

Verbs are necessarily subject, 1. *to moods*, whereby they express in what manner a thing comes to pass; 2. *to tenses*, by the help of which they represent the thing spoken of, as present, past or future; 3. *to numbers* and *persons*, that they may agree with their nominative case. What is called conjugation is the method of varying these different moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

1. OF MOODS.

Moods are the different manners of using a verb. There are four moods; the *infinitive*, the *indicative*, the *subjunctive* and the *imperative*.

The infinitive mood, which is the root of a verb, and by which the conjugations are distinguished from each other, expresses an action, but in an indeterminate manner, without specifying any particular agent: as *parler*, to speak; *dormir*, to sleep; *agir*, to act, &c.

The indicative mood shews directly and positively the different tenses of a verb: it forms a sense of itself independently of what precedes or follows; as, *je veux*, I am willing; *j'écris*, I am writing; *je parle*, I speak.

The subjunctive mood denotes also different tenses, but dependently on the verb or conjunction antecedent; as, *il*

faut que nous soyons *modestes, quelque mérite que* nous ayons: if you take out *il faut que, quelque mérite que*, the rest, *nous soyons, nous ayons*, have not a complete sense.

The imperative mood expresses the action of desiring, commanding, exhorting, &c. as, *répondez-moi*, answer me:

Tenez votre parole inviolablement,
Mais ne la donnez pas inconsidérément.

2. OF TENSES.

Tenses indicate the time; and are expressed by different terminations; a verb has reference to, present, past, or future. Their names are found in the following conjugations, and their use is fully explained in the Syntax, chapters 15, 16, and 17.

3. OF NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

There are two numbers in a verb, which are the *singular* and *plural;* the singular is used when we speak of one, as, *votre frère* est *mort*, your brother is dead; and the plural, when we speak of more than one, as, *vos frères* sont *morts*, your brothers are dead.

There are three persons in each number; *the first* is used when we speak of ourselves, the second when we speak to another, and *the third* when we speak of another.

SECTION THE THIRD.

Conjugation of the auxiliary verb avoir, *to have.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense,	avoir,	*to have.*
Gerund,	ayant,	*having.*
Participle,	eu, *m.* eue, *f.*	*had.*
Compound of the present,	avoir eu,	*to have had.*
Compound of the gerund,	ayant eu,	*having had.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.		Plural.	
1. J'ai*,	*I have.*	Nous avons,	*we have.*
2. tu as,	*thou hast.*	vous avez,	*you have.*
3. il a,	*he has.*	ils ont,	*they have.*

IMPERFECT.

1. J'avois†,	*I had.*	Nous avions,	*we had.*
2. tu avois,	*thou hadst.*	vous aviez,	*you had.*
3. il avoit,	*he had.*	ils avoient,	*they had.*

PRETERITE.

1. J'eus,	*I had.*	Nous eûmes,	*we had.*
2. tu eus,	*thou hadst.*	vous eûtes,	*you had.*
3. il eut,	*he had.*	ils eurent,	*they had.*

FUTURE.

1. J'aurai,	*I shall or will*	*have.*	Nous aurons,	*we shall*	*have.*
2. tu auras,	*thou shalt*		vous aurez,	*you shall*	
3. il aura,	*he shall*		ils auront,	*they shall*	

CONDITIONAL.

1. J'aurois,	*I would*	*have.*	Nous aurions,	*we would*	*have.*
2. tu aurois,	*thou wouldest*		vous auriez,	*you would*	
3. il auroit,	*he would.*		ils auroient,	*they would*	

Compound of the present,	J'ai eu, &c. *I have had.*
Compound of the imperfect,	J'avois eu, &c. *I had had.*
Compound of the preterite,	J'eus eu, &c. *I had had.*

* The figures 1, 2, 3, denote the first, second, and third persons.

† Many authors write, *j'avais, tu avais, il avait, ils avaient,* &c. and use *ai* instead of *oi,* for the imperfect and conditional of *all* verbs, and in general whenever *oi* has the sound of è grave.

Compound of the future.	J'aurai eu, &c. *I shall have had.*	
Compound of the conditional.	J'aurois eu, *or* j'eusse eu, &c. *I would have had.*	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Que	*That*		
1. J'aie,	*I may have.*	Nous ayons,	*we may have.*
2. tu aies,	*thou mayest have.*	vous ayez,	*you may have.*
3. il ait,	*he may have.*	ils aient,	*they may have.*

PRETERITE.

1. J'eusse,	*I might have.*	Nous eussions,	*we might have.*
2. tu eusses,	*thou mightest.*	vous eussiez,	*you might have.*
3. il eût,	*he might have.*	ils eussent,	*they might have.*

Compound of the present,	J'aie eu,	*I may have had.*
Compound of the preterite,	J'eusse eu,	*I might have had.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Ayons,	*let us have.*
2. aies,	*have thou.*	ayez,	*have ye.*
3. qu'il ait,	*let him have.*	qu'ils aient,	*let them have.*

N. B. Though I have only put the first person of the compound tenses, the pupil must repeat all the persons by heart.

Conjugation of the auxiliary verb, être, *to be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense,	être,	*to be.*
Gerund, ——	étant,	*being.*

Participle,	été	*been.*
Compound of the present,	avoir été	*to have been.*
Compound of the gerund,	ayant été,	*having been.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.		Plural.	
1. Je suis,	*I am.*	Nous sommes,	*we are.*
2. tu es,	*thou art.*	vous êtes,	*you are.*
3. il est,	*he is.*	ils sont,	*they are.*

IMPERFECT.

1. J'étois,	*I was.*	Nous étions,	*we were.*
2. tu étois,	*thou wast.*	vous étiez,	*you were.*
3. il étoit,	*he was.*	ils étoient,	*they were.*

PRETERITE.

1. Je fus,	*I was.*	Nous fûmes,	*we were.*
2. tu fut,	*thou wast.*	vous fûtes,	*you were.*
3. il fut,	*he was.*	ils furent,	*they were.*

FUTURE.

1. Je serai,	*I shall* or *will be.*	Nous serons,	*we shall* or *will be.*
2. tu seras,	*thou shalt* or *wilt be.*	vous serez,	*you shall* or *will be.*
3. il sera,	*he shall* or *will be.*	ils seront,	*they shall* or *will be.*

CONDITIONAL.

1. Je serois,	*I would be.*	Nous serions,	*we would be.*
2. tu serois,	*thou wouldest be.*	vous seriez,	*you would be.*
3. il seroit,	*he would be.*	ils seroient,	*they would be.*

Compound of the present,	J'ai été, *I have been.*
Compound of the imperfect,	J'avois été, *I had been.*
Compound of the preterite,	J'eus été, *I had been.*
Compound of the future,	J'aurai été, *I shall have been.*

Compound of the conditional,	J'aurois été, *or* j'eusse été, *I would have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	Que	*That*		
1.	Je sois,	*I may be.*	Nous soyons,	*we may be.*
2.	tu sois,	*thou mayest be.*	vous soyez,	*you may be.*
3.	il soit,	*he may be.*	ils soient,	*they may be.*

PRETERITE.

1.	Je fusse,	*I might be.*	Nous fussions,	*we might be.*
2.	tu fusses,	*thou mightest be.*	vous fussiez,	*you might be.*
3.	il fût,	*he might be.*	ils fussent,	*they might be.*

Compound of the present,	J'aie été, *I may have been.*
Compound of the preterite,	J'eusse été, *I might have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

			Soyons,	*let us be.*
2.	sois,	*be thou.*	soyez,	*be ye.*
3.	qu'il soit,	*let him be.*	qu'ils soient,	*let them be.*

These two verbs, *avoir* and *être*, help to conjugate al others in their compound tenses, and therefore must be learn perfectly. All verbs conjugated with the verb *to be* ir English, take *être* in French; but all those conjugatec with *to have* in English, do not take *avoir* in French; the following are excepted.

Verbs conjugated with to have *in English, and* ètre *in French.*

1. All reflected and reciprocal verbs, without exception, take, in their compound tenses, the auxiliary *être* in French, and the auxiliary *to have* in English.

2. The sixteen following are conjugated with *être* in French, and *to have* in English:

aller,	*to go.*	tomber,	*to fall.*
arriver,	*to arrive.*	venir,	*to come.*
déchoir,	*to decay.*	devenir,	*to become.*
décéder,	*to die.*	disconvenir,	*to disagree.*
entrer,	*to come in.*	intervenir,	*to intervene.*
mourir,	*to die.*	parvenir,	*to attain.*
naître,	*to be born.*	revenir,	*to come back.*
partir,	*to set out.*	survenir,	*to happen.*

These six *accourir*, to run to; *accroître* to increase: *apparoître*, to appear; *croître*, to grow; *disparoître*, to disappear; and *périr*, to perish; which are always conjugated with the auxiliary *to have* in English; are indifferently conjugated in French with *avoir*, or *être*.

Verbs which take avoir *in one signification, and* être *in another.*

These six verbs, *accoucher*, *convenir*, *demeurer*, *descendre* *monter* and *passer*, take *avoir*, or *être*, in their compound tenses, according to the following distinctions:

1. *Accoucher* takes *avoir*, when used in an active sense, and *être*, when used as a verb neuter; as *votre mère* est *accouchée, mon frère l'a accouchée;* your mother is brought to bed; my brother has delivered her.

2. *Convenir* takes *avoir*, when it means *to be convenient:* and *être*, when it signifies *to agree;* as *votre maison* auroit *convenu à mon père, je suis fâché que vous ne* soyez *pas convenus du prix;* your house would have suited my father, I am sorry that you have not agreed upon the terms.

3. *Demeurer* takes *avoir*, when it signifies *to live in;* and *être*, when it signifies *to remain;* as *j'ai demeuré* à *Londres*, I have lived in London; *il* est demeuré *inébranlable*, he has remained immoveable.

4. *Descendre* takes *avoir*, when it governs an accusative case, and *être* in other cases; as *il a descendu l'escalier;* he has gone down stairs; *il* est *descendu d'une bonne famille*, he is descended from a good family.

5. *Monter* takes *avoir*, when it governs the accusative and *être* in other cases; as *j'ai monté la colline*, I have ascended the hill; *je suis monté par degrés aux charges-militaires*, I have ascended by degrees to military employments.

6. *Passer* takes *avoir*, when it is followed by a noun or a pronoun, and *être* when not; as, *j'ai passé par la France*, I have passed through France; *cette mode* est *passée*, that fashion is past.

SECTION THE FOURTH.

Of Regular Conjugations.

The respective conjugations are formed by the different terminations of verbs in their tenses and persons, and particularly in the infinitive mood; now, the infinitive of all our verbs ends either in *ER*, *IR*, *OIR*, or *RE*; as *parler*, *agir*, *recevoir*, *plaire*, which form four general conjugations; however, as the verbs which end in *IR* and *RE*; are conjugated differently in the same tenses and persons, I admit of twelve *regular* conjugations; one in *ER*, four in *IR*, one in *OIR*, and six in *RE*, which will greatly diminish the number of the *irregular*, and consequently facilitate the learning of verbs. They are as follows:

1 in *er*	parler,	*to speak.*	6 in *re*	plaire,	*to please.*
4 in *ir*	agir,	*to act.*		craindre,	*to fear.*
	sentir,	*to smell.*		connoître,	*to know.*
	ouvrir,	*to open.*		instruire,	*to instruct.*
	tenir,	*to hold.*		vendre,	*to sell.*
1 in *oir*	recevoir,	*to receive.*		écrire,	*to write.*

First Conjugation. Parler.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense,	parler,	*to speak.*
Gerund,	parlant,	*speaking.*
Participle,	parlé,	*spoken.*

Compound of the present,	avoir parlé,	*to have spoken.*
Compound of the gerund,	ayant parlé,	*having spoken.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.		Plural.	
Je parle,	*I speak.*	Nous parlons,	*we speak.*
tu parles,	*thou speakest.*	vous parlez,	*you speak.*
il parle,	*he speaks.*	ils parlent,	*they speak.*

IMPERFECT.

Je parlois,	*I was speaking.*	Nous parlions,	*we were speaking.*
tu parlois,	*thou wast speaking.*	vous parliez,	*you were speaking.*
il parloit,	*he was speaking.*	ils parloient,	*they were speaking.*

PRETERITE.

Je parlai,	*I spoke.*	Nous parlâmes,	*we spoke.*
tu parlas,	*thou spokest.*	vous parlâtes,	*you spoke.*
il parla,	*he spoke.*	ils parlèrent,	*they spoke.*

FUTURE.

Je parlerai,	*I shall speak.*	Nous parlerons,	*we shall speak.*
tu parleras,	*thou shalt speak.*	vous parlerez,	*you shall speak.*
il parlera,	*he shall speak.*	ils parleront,	*they shall speak.*

CONDITIONAL.

Je parlerois,	*I would speak.*	Nous parlerions,	*we would speak.*
tu parlerois,	*thou wouldest speak.*	vous parleriez,	*you would speak.*
il parleroit,	*he would speak.*	ils parleroient,	*they would speak.*

Compound of the present,	J'ai parlé, *I have spoken.*
Compound of the imperfect,	J'avois parlé, *I had spoken.*
Compound of the preterite,	J'eus parlé, *I had spoken.*
Compound of the future,	J'aurai parlé, *I shall have spoken.*
Compound of the conditional,	J'aurois *or* j'eusse parlé, *I would have spoken.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Que	*That*		
Je parle,	*I may speak.*	Nous parlions,	*we may speak.*
tu parles,	*thou mayest speak.*	vous parliez,	*you may speak.*
il parle,	*he may speak.*	ils parlent,	*they may speak.*

PRETERITE.

Je parlasse,	*I might speak.*	Nous parlassions,	*we might speak.*
tu parlasses,	*thou mightest speak.*	vous parlassiez,	*you might speak.*
il parlât,	*he might speak.*	ils parlassent,	*they might speak.*

Compound of the present, J'aie parlé, *I may have spoken.*
Compound of the preterite, J'eusse parlé, *I might have spoken.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Parlons,	*let us speak.*
2. parle,	*speak thou.*	parlez,	*speak ye.*
3. qu'il parle,	*let him speak.*	qu'ils parlent,	*let them speak.*

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Was,* with the gerund, is the mark of the imperfect in all verbs, *shall* or *will* of the future, *would, could,* or *should* of the conditional, *may* of the present subjunctive, *might* of the preterite, and *let* of the imperative mood.

2. Most French verbs have the infinitive in *er,* and are conjugated the same as *parler,* except *aller, envoyer,* and *renvoyer,* which are irregular.

3. Verbs which end in *ayer, oyer,* or *uyer,* in the infinitive mood take an *i* after *y* in the first and second persons of the plural of the imperfect of the indicative, and present of the subjunctive: as, *essayer, employer, essuyer,* inf. *nous essayions, vous essayiez, nous employions, vous employiez, nous essuyions, vous essuyiez,* imperfect indicative, and pres. subj.

4. Verbs which in the infinitive end in *ier,* are written with double *ii* in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative, and of the present of the subjunctive: as, *prier, plier,* inf. *nous priions, nous pliions, vous priiez, vous pliiez,* imperfect indicative, and pres. subj.

5. We put an *e* between *g* and *a* or *o* through the whole conjugation of verbs which end in *ger* in the infinitive mood. Thus we say, *juger, jugeant, je jugeois, nous jugeons; partager, je partageois,* &c. not *jugant, jugois,* as we say, *parlant, parlois.*

N. B. As the compound tenses of all verbs, regular and irregular, are nothing else than the conjugation of the verbs *avoir* or *être,* and the participle of the verb conjugated; the scholar knowing well the auxiliaries, knows how to conjugate the compound tenses of all verbs; therefore we may dispense with inserting them in the following conjugations.

Second Conjugation. Agir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense,	agir,	*to act.*
Gerund,	agissant,	*acting.*
Participle,	agi,	*acted.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.		Plural.	
J'agis,	*I act.*	Nous agissons,	*we act.*
tu agis,	*thou actest.*	vous agissez,	*you act.*
il agit,	*he acts.*	ils agissent,	*they act.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

J'agissois,	*I was acting*	Nous agissions,	*we were acting*
tu agissois,	*thou wast acting*	vous agissiez,	*you were acting*
il agissoit,	*he was acting*	ils agissoient,	*they were acting*

PRETERITE.

J'agis,	*I acted.*	Nous agîmes,	*we acted.*
tu agis,	*thou actedest.*	vous agîtes,	*you acted.*
il agit,	*he acted.*	ils agirent,	*they acted.*

FUTURE.

J'agirai,	*I shall* or *will act.*	Nous agirons,	*we shall act.*
tu agiras,	*thou shalt, &c. act.*	vous agirez,	*you shall act.*
il agira,	*he shall, &c. act.*	ils agiront,	*they shall act.*

CONDITIONAL.

J'agirois,	*I would, &c. act.*	Nous agirions,	*we would act.*
tu agirois,	*thou wouldest act.*	vous agiriez,	*you would act.*
il agiroit,	*he would act.*	ils agiroient,	*they would act.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Que	*That*		
J'agisse,	*I may act.*	Nous agissions,	*we may act.*
tu agisses,	*thou mayest act.*	vous agissiez,	*you may act.*
il agisse,	*he may act.*	ils agissent,	*they may act.*

PRETERITE.

J'agisse,	*I might act.*	Nous agissions,	*we might act.*
tu agisses,	*thou mightest act.*	vous agissiez,	*you might act.*
il agît,	*he might act.*	ils agissent,	*they might act.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Agissons,	*let us act.*
2. agis,	*act thou.*	agissez,	*act ye.*
3. qu'il agisse,	*let him act.*	qu'ils agissent,	*let them act.*

All verbs which end in the infinitive mood in *ir*, except those mentioned at the end of the three following conjugations, are regular in French, and conjugated after *agir*. *Haïr*, to hate, is conjugated in the same manner, but in the singular of the indicative present it makes *je hais, tu hais, il hait*, pronounced, *je hès, tu hès, il hèt.*

Third Conjugation. Sentir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense,	sentir,	*to smell.*
Gerund,	sentant,	*smelling.*
Participle,	senti,	*smelt.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.		Plural.	
Je sens,	*I smell.*	Nous sentons,	*we smell.*
tu sens,	*thou smellest.*	vous sentez,	*you smell.*
il sent,	*he smells.*	ils sentent,	*they smell.*

IMPERFECT.

Je sentois,	*I was* smelling.	Nous sentions,	*we were* smelling.
tu sentois,	*thou wast* smelling.	vous sentiez,	*you were* smelling.
il sentoit,	*he was* smelling.	ils sentoient,	*they were* smelling.

PRETERITE.

Je sentis,	*I smelt.*	Nous sentîmes,	*we smelt.*
tu sentis,	*thou smeltest.*	vous sentîtes,	*you smelt.*
il sentit,	*he smelt.*	ils sentirent,	*they smelt.*

FUTURE.

Je sentirai,	*I shall smell.*	Nous sentirons,	*we shall smell.*
tu sentiras,	*that shalt smell.*	vous sentirez,	*you shall smell.*
il sentira,	*he shall smell.*	ils sentiront,	*they shall smell.*

CONDITIONAL.

Je sentirois,	*I could smell.*	Nous sentirions,	*we could smell.*
tu sentirois,	*thou couldest smell.*	vous sentiriez,	*you could smell.*
il sentiroit,	*he could smell.*	ils sentiroient,	*they could smell*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Que	*That*		
Je sente,	*I may smell.*	Nous sentions,	*we may smell.*
tu sentes,	*thou mayest smell.*	vous sentiez,	*you may smell.*
il sente,	*he may smell.*	ils sentent,	*they may smell.*

PRETERITE.

Je sentisse,	*I might smell.*	Nous sentissions,	*we might smell.*
tu sentisses,	*thou mightest smell.*	vous sentissiez,	*you might smell.*
il sentît,	*he might smell.*	ils sentissent,	*they might smell.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Sentons,	*let us smell.*
2. sens,	*smell thou.*	sentez,	*smell ye.*
3. qu'il sente,	*let him smell.*	qu'ils sentent,	*let them smell.*

The sixteen following verbs are conjugated like *sentir:*

Consentir,	*to consent.*	se rendormir,	*to fall asleep again.*
démentir,	*to give the lie.*		
desservir,	*to clear the table.*	repartir*,	*to set out again, to reply.*
dormir,	*to sleep.*	se repentir,	*to repent.*
endormir,	*to lull asleep.*	ressentir,	*to resent.*
mentir,	*to lie.*	ressortir*,	*to go out again.*
partir,	*to set out.*	servir,	*to serve.*
pressentir,	*to foresee.*	sortir,	*to go out.*
rendormir,	*to sleep again.*		

* *Repartir*, to set out again, to reply, and *ressortir* to go out again, must not be confounded with *répartir*, to distribute, and *ressortir*, to belong to, which two last are conjugated like *agir*.

Fourth Conjugation. Ouvrir.

Present tense,	ouvrir,	*to open.*
Gerund,	ouvrant,	*opening.*
Participle,	ouvert,	*opened.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.		Plural.	
J'ouvre,	*I open.*	Nous ouvrons,	*we open.*
tu ouvres,	*thou openest.*	vous ouvrez,	*you open.*
il ouvre,	*he opens.*	ils ouvrent,	*they open.*

IMPERFECT.

J'ouvrois,	*I was opening.*	Nous ouvrions,	*we were opening.*
tu ouvrois,	*thou wast opening.*	vous ouvriez,	*you were opening.*
il ouvroit,	*he was opening.*	ils ouvroient,	*they were opening.*

PRETERITE.

J'ouvris,	*I opened.*	Nous ouvrîmes,	*we opened.*
tu ouvris,	*thou openedest.*	vous ouvrîtes,	*you opened.*
il ouvrit	*he opened.*	ils ouvrirent,	*they opened.*

FUTURE.

J'ouvrirai,	*I shall open.*	Nous ouvrirons,	*we shall open.*
tu ouvriras,	*thou shalt open.*	vous ouvrirez,	*you shall open.*
il ouvrira,	*he shall open.*	ils ouvriront,	*they shall open.*

CONDITIONAL.

J'ouvrirois,	*I should open.*	Nous ouvririons,	*we should open.*
tu ouvrirois,	*thou shouldest open.*	vous ouvririez,	*you should open.*
il ouvriroit,	*he should open.*	ils ouvriroient,	*they should open.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Que *That*
J'ouvre, *I may open.* Nous ouvrions, *we may open.*
tu ouvres, *thou mayest open.* vous ouvriez, *you may open.*
il ouvre, *he may open.* ils ouvrent, *they may open.*

PRETERITE.

J'ouvrisse, *I might open.* Nous ouvrissions, *we might open.*
tu ouvrisses, *thou mightest open.* vous ouvrissiez, *you might open.*
il ouvrît, *he might open.* ils ouvrissent, *they might open.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Ouvrons, *let us open.*
2. ouvre, *open thou.* ouvrez, *open ye.*
3. qu'il ouvre, *let him open.* qu'ils ouvrent, *let them open.*

N. B. All the verbs which end in *vrir*, or *frir*, are regular, and conjugated after *ouvrir*, in all their tenses and persons.

Fifth Conjugation. Tenir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense, tenir, *to hold.*
Gerund, tenant, *holding.*
Participle, tenu, *held.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular. Plural.
Je tiens, *I hold.* Nous tenons, *we hold.*
tu tiens, *thou holdest.* vous tenez, *you hold.*
il tient, *he holds.* ils tiennent, *they hold.*

IMPERFECT.

Je tenois,	*I was holding.*	Nous tenions,	*we were holding.*
tu tenois,	*thou wast holding.*	vous teniez,	*you were holding.*
il tenoit	*he was holding.*	ils tenoient,	*they were holding.*

PRETERITE.

Je tins,	*I held.*	Nous tînmes,	*we held.*
tu tins,	*thou heldest.*	vous tîntes,	*you held.*
il tint,	*he held.*	ils tinrent,	*they held.*

FUTURE.

Je tiendrai,	*I shall hold.*	Nous tiendrons,	*we shall hold.*
tu tiendras,	*thou shalt hold.*	vous tiendrez,	*you shall hold.*
il tiendra,	*he shall hold.*	ils tiendront,	*they shall hold.*

CONDITIONAL.

Je tiendrois,	*I would hold.*	Nous tiendrions,	*we would hold.*
tu tiendrois,	*thou wouldest hold.*	vous tiendriez,	*you would hold.*
il tiendroit,	*he would hold.*	ils tiendroient,	*they would hold.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TEENSE.

Que	*That*		
Je tienne,	*I may hold.*	Nous tenions,	*we may hold.*
tu tiennes,	*thou mayest hold.*	vous teniez,	*you may hold.*
il tienne,	*he may hold.*	ils tiennent,	*they may hold.*

PRETERITE.

Je tinsse,	*I might hold.*	Nous tinssions,	*we might hold.*
tu tinsses,	*thou mightest hold.*	vous tinssiez,	*you might hold.*
il tînt,	*he might hold.*	ils tinssent,	*they might hold.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Tenons	*let us hold.*
2. tiens	*hold thou.*	tenez,	*hold ye.*
3. qu'il tienne,	*let him hold.*	qu'ils tiennent,	*let them hold.*

N. B. All the verbs which end in *enir*, without an accent upon the *e*, are regular, and conjugated after *tenir* in all their tenses and persons.

Sixth Conjugation. Recevoir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense,	recevoir,	*to receive.*
Gerund,	recevant,	*receiving.*
Participle,	reçu,	*received.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.		Plural.	
Je reçois,	*I receive.*	Nous recevons,	*we receive.*
tu reçois,	*thou receivest.*	vous recevez,	*you receive.*
il reçoit,	*he receives.*	ils reçoivent,	*they receive.*

IMPERFECT.

Je recevois,	*I was receiving.*	Nous recevions,	*we were receiving.*
tu recevois,	*thou wast receiving.*	vous receviez,	*you were receiving.*
il recevoit,	*he was receiving.*	ils recevoient,	*they were receiving.*

PRETERITE.

Je reçus,	*I received.*	Nous reçûmes,	*we received.*
tu reçus,	*thou receivedest.*	vous reçûtes,	*you received.*
il reçut,	*he received.*	ils reçurent,	*they received.*

FUTURE.

Je recevrai,	*I shall receive.*	Nous recevrons,	*we shall receive.*
tu recevras,	*thou shalt receive.*	vous recevrez,	*you shall receive.*
il recevra,	*he shall receive.*	ils recevront,	*they shall receive.*

CONDITIONAL.

Je recevrois,	*I would receive,*	Nous recevrions,	*we would,* &c.
tu recevrois,	*thou wouldest,* &c.	vous recevriez,	*you would,* &c.
il recevroit,	*he would receive.*	ils recevroient,	*they would,* &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Que	*That*		
Je reçoive,	*I may receive.*	Nous recevions,	*we may,* &c.
tu reçoives,	*thou mayest receive.*	vous receviez,	*you may,* &c.
il reçoive,	*he may receive.*	ils reçoivent,	*they may,* &c.

PRETERITE.

Je reçusse,	*I might receive.*	Nous reçussions,	*we might,* &c.
tu reçusses,	*thou mightest,* &c.	vous reçussiez,	*you might,* &c.
il reçût,	*he might receive.*	ils reçussent,	*they might,* &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Recevons,	*let us receive.*
2. Reçois,	*receive thou.*	recevez,	*receive ye.*
3. qu'il reçoive,	*let him receive.*	qu'ils reçoivent,	*let them receive.*

N. B. All the verbs which end in *evoir,* in the infinitive mood are regular, and conjugated after *recevoir:* and all those which end in *oir,* not preceded by *ev,* are irregular: such are, *pouvoir, savoir, vouloir.* &c.

Seventh Conjugation. Plaire.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense,	plaire,	*to please.*
Gerund,	plaisant,	*pleasing.*
Participle,	plu,	*pleased.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.		Plural.	
Je plais,	*I please.*	Nous plaisons,	*we please.*
tu plais,	*thou pleasest.*	vous plaisez,	*you please.*
il plaît,	*he pleases.*	ils plaisent,	*they please.*

IMPERFECT.

Je plaisois,	*I was pleasing.*	Nous plaisions,	*we were pleasing.*
tu plaisois,	*thou wast pleasing.*	vous plaisiez,	*you were pleasing.*
il plaisoit,	*he was pleasing.*	ils plaisoient,	*they were pleasing.*

PRETERITE.

Je plus,	*I pleased.*	Nous plûmes,	*we pleased.*
tu plus,	*thou pleasedest.*	vous plûtes,	*you pleased.*
il plut,	*he pleased.*	ils plurent,	*they pleased.*

FUTURE.

Je plairai,	*I shall please.*	Nous plairons,	*we shall please.*
tu plairas,	*thou shalt please.*	vous plairez,	*you shall please.*
il plaira,	*he shall please.*	ils plairont,	*they shall please.*

CONDITIONAL.

Je plairois,	*I would please.*	Nous plairions,	*we would please.*
tu plairois,	*thou wouldest please.*	vous plairiez,	*you would please.*
il plairoit,	*he would please.*	ils plairoient,	*they would please.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Que	*That*		
Je plaise,	*I may please.*	Nous plaisions,	*we may please.*
tu plaises,	*thou mayest please.*	vous plaisiez,	*you may please.*
il plaise,	*he may please.*	ils plaisent,	*they may please.*

PRETERITE.

Je plusse,	*I might please.*	Nous plussions,	*we might please.*
tu plusses,	*thou mightest please.*	vous plussiez,	*you might please.*
il plût,	*he might please.*	ils plussent,	*they might please.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Plaisons,	*let us please.*
2. plais,	*please thou.*	plaisez,	*please ye.*
3. qu'il plaise,	*let him please.*	qu'ils plaisent	*let them please.*

N. B. So are conjugated the compounds of *plaire*, and the verb *taire*, to conceal.

Eighth Conjugation. Craindre.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense,	craindre,	*to fear.*
Gerund,	craignant,	*fearing.*
Participle,	craint,	*feared.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.		Plural.	
Je crains,	*I fear.*	Nous craignons,	*we fear.*
tu crains,	*thou fearest.*	vous craignez,	*you fear.*
il craint,	*he fears.*	ils craignent,	*they fear.*

IMPERFECT.

Je craignois,	*I was fearing.*	Nous craignions,	*we were fearing.*
tu craignois,	*thou wast fearing.*	vous craigniez,	*you were fearing.*
il craignoit,	*he was fearing.*	ils craignoient,	*they were fearing.*

PRETERITE.

Je craignis,	*I feared.*	Nous craignîmes,	*we feared.*
tu craignis,	*thou fearedest.*	vous craignîtes,	*you feared.*
il craignit,	*he feared.*	ils craignirent,	*they feared.*

FUTURE.

Je craindrai,	*I shall fear.*	Nous craindrons,	*we shall, &c.*
tu craindras,	*thou shalt fear.*	vous craindrez,	*you shall fear.*
il craindra,	*he shall fear.*	ils craindront,	*they shall fear.*

CONDITIONAL.

Je craindrois,	*I would fear.*	Nous craindrions,	*we would.*
tu craindrois,	*thou wouldest fear.*	vous craindriez,	*you would.*
il craindroit,	*he would fear.*	il craindroient,	*they would.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Que	*That*		
Je craigne,	*I may fear.*	Nous craignions,	*we may, &c.*
tu craignes,	*thou mayest fear.*	vous craigniez,	*you may, &c.*
il craigne,	*he may fear.*	ils craignent,	*they may, &c.*

PRETERITE.

Je craignisse,	*I might fear.*	Nous craignissions,	*we might*
tu craignisses,	*thou mightest, &c.*	vous craignissiez,	*you might.*
il craignît,	*he might fear.*	ils craignissent,	*they might.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Craignons,	*let us fear.*
2. crains,	*fear thou.*	craignez,	*fear ye.*
3. qu'il craigne,	*let him fear.*	qu'ils craignent,	*let them fear.*

N. B. All the verbs which end in the infinitive, in *aindre*, *eindre*, or *oindre*, are regular and conjugated on *craindre*.

Ninth Conjugation. Connoître.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense,	connoître,	*to know.*
Gerund,	connoissant,	*knowing.*
Participle,	connu,	*known.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.		Plural.	
Je connois,	*I know.*	Nous connoissons,	*we know.*
tu connois,	*thou knowest.*	vous connoissez,	*you know.*
il connoît,	*he knows.*	ils connoissent,	*they know.*

IMPERFECT.

Je connoissois,	*I was knowing.*	Nous connoissions,	*we were knowing.*
tu connoissois,	*thou wast knowing.*	vous connoissiez,	*you were knowing.*
il connoissoit,	*he was knowing.*	ils connoissoient,	*they were knowing.*

PRETERITE.

Je connus,	*I knew.*	Nous connûmes,	*we knew.*
tu connus,	*thou knewest.*	vous connûtes,	*you knew.*
il connut,	*he knew.*	ils connurent,	*they knew.*

FUTURE.

Je connoîtrai,	*I shall know.*	Nous connoîtrons,	*we shall,&c.*
tu connoîtras,	*thou shalt know.*	vous connoîtrez,	*you shall,&c.*
il connoîtra,	*he shall know.*	ils connoîtront,	*they shall know.*

CONDITIONAL.

Je connoîtrois,	*I should know.*	Nous connoîtrions,	*we should.*
tu connoîtrois,	*thou shouldest know.*	vous connoîtriez,	*you should,*
il connoîtroit,	*he should know.*	ils connoîtroient,	*they should.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Que *That*

Je connoisse,	*I may know.*	Nous connoissions,	*we may, &c.*
tu connoisses,	*thou mayest,&c.*	vous connoissiez,	*you may, &c.*
il connoisse,	*he may, &c.*	ils connoissent,	*they may, &c.*

PRETERITE.

Je connusses,	*I might know.*	Nous connussions,	*we might.*
tu connusses,	*thou mightest, &c.*	vous connussiez,	*you might.*
il connût,	*he might know.*	ils connussent,	*they might, &c.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Connoissons,	*let us know.*
2. connois,	*know thou.*	connoissez,	*know ye.*
3. qu'il connoisse,	*let him know.*	qu'ils connoissent,	*let them, &c.*

N. B. All verbs which end in *aître* or *oître*, in the present infinitive, are regular, and conjugated on *connoître*, except *naître*, to be born, which is irregular.

Tenth Conjugation. Instruire.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense,	instruire,	*to instruct.*
Gerund,	instruisant,	*instructing.*
Participle,	instruit,	*instructed.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.		Plural.	
J'instruis,	*I instruct.*	Nous instruisons,	*we instruct.*
tu instruis,	*thou instructest.*	vous instruisez,	*you instruct.*
il instruit,	*he instructs.*	ils instruisent,	*they instruct.*

IMPERFECT.

J'instruisois,	*I was* } *instructing.*	Nous instruisions,	*we were* } *instructing.*
tu instruisois,	*thou wast*	vous instruisiez,	*you were*
il instruisoit,	*he was*	ils instruisoient,	*they were*

PRETERITE.

J'instruisis,	*I instructed.*	Nous instruisîmes,	*we instructed.*
tu instruisis,	*thou instructedest.*	vous instruisîtes,	*you instructed.*
il instruisit,	*he instructed.*	ils instruisirent,	*they instructed.*

FUTURE.

J'instruirai,	*I will instruct.*	Nous instruirons,	*we will*, &c.
tu instruiras,	*thou wilt instruct.*	vous instruirez,	*you will*, &c.
il instruira,	*he will instruct.*	ils instruiront,	*they will*, &c.

CONDITIONAL.

J'instruirois,	*I would instruct.*	Nous instruirions,	*we would.*
tu instruirois,	*thou wouldest*, &c.	vous instruiriez,	*you would*, &c.
il instruiroit,	*he would instruct.*	ils instruiroient,	*they would*, &c

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Que	*That*		
J'instruise,	*I may instruct.*	Nous instruisions,	*we may*, &c.
tu instruises,	*thou mayest*, &c.	vous instruisiez,	*you may*, &c.
il instruise,	*he may instruct.*	ils instruisent,	*they may instruct.*

PRETERITE.

J'instruisisse,	*I might instruct.*	Nous instruisissions,	*we might.*
tu instruisisses,	*thou mightest.*	vous instruisissiez,	*you might.*
il instruisît,	*he might instruct.*	ils instruisissent,	*they might.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

		Instruisons,	*let us instruct.*
2. instruis,	*instruct thou.*	instruisez,	*instruct ye.*
3. qu'il instruise,	*let him instruct.*	qu'ils instruisent,	*let them*, &c.

All verbs which end in *uire*, in the infinitive mood, are regular and conjugated on *instruire;* except *luire*, to shine; *reluire*, to glitter; and *nuire*, to hurt; which make, in the participle, *lui, relui*, and *nui;* their other tenses are regular.

Eleventh Conjugation. Vendre.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense,	vendre,	*to sell.*
Gerund,	vendant,	*selling.*
Participle,	vendu,	*sold.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.		Plural.	
Je vends,	*I sell.*	Nous vendons,	*we sell.*
tu vends,	*thou sellest.*	vous vendez,	*you sell.*
il vend,	*he sells.*	ils vendent,	*they sell.*

IMPERFECT.

Je vendois,	*I was selling.*	Nous vendions,	*we were selling*
tu vendois,	*thou wast selling.*	vous vendiez,	*you were selling*
il vendoit,	*he was selling.*	ils vendoient,	*they were selling*

PRETERITE.

Je vendis,	*I sold.*	Nous vendîmes,	*we sold.*
tu vendis,	*thou soldest.*	vous vendîtes,	*you sold.*
il vendit,	*he sold.*	ils vendirent,	*they sold.*

FUTURE.

Je vendrai,	*I shall sell.*	Nous vendrons,	*we shall sell.*
tu vendras,	*thou shalt sell.*	vous vendrez,	*you shall sell.*
il vendra,	*he shall sell.*	ils vendront,	*they shall sell.*

CONDITIONAL.

Je vendrois,	*I would sell.*	Nous vendrions,	*we would sell.*
tu vendrois,	*thou wouldest sell.*	vous vendriez,	*you would sell.*
il vendroit,	*he would sell.*	ils vendroient,	*they would sell.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Que	*That*		
Je vende,	*I may sell.*	Nous vendions,	*we may sell.*
tu vendes,	*thou mayest sell.*	vous vendiez,	*you may sell.*
il vende	*he may sell.*	ils vendent,	*they may sell.*

PRETERITE.

Je vendisse,	*I might sell.*	Nous vendissions,	*we might sell.*
tu vendisses,	*thou mightest sell.*	vous vendissiez,	*you might sell.*
il vendît,	*he might sell.*	ils vendissent,	*they might sell.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Vendons,	*let us sell.*
2. vends,	*sell thou.*	vendez,	*sell ye.*
3. qu'il vende,	*let him sell.*	qu'ils vendent,	*let them sell.*

N. B. All verbs ending in *andre, endre, erdre, ondre,* or *ordre,* are regular, and conjugated on *vendre,* except *prendre,* to take, and its compounds, which are irregular.

Twelfth Conjugation. Ecrire.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense,	écrire,	*to write.*
Gerund,	écrivant,	*writing.*
Participle,	écrit,	*written.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.		Plural.	
J'écris,	*I write.*	Nous écrivons,	*we write.*
tu écris,	*thou writest.*	vous écrivez,	*you write.*
il écrit,	*he writes.*	ils écrivent,	*they write.*

IMPERFECT.

J'écrivois,	*I was* } writing.	Nous écrivions,	*we were* } writing.
tu écrivois,	*thou wast*	vous écriviez,	*you were*
il écrivoit,	*he was*	ils écrivoient,	*they were*

PRETERITE.

J'écrivis,	*I wrote.*	Nous écrivîmes,	*we wrote.*
tu écrivis,	*thou wrotest.*	vous écrivîtes,	*you wrote.*
il écrivit,	*he wrote.*	ils écrivirent,	*they wrote.*

FUTURE.

J'ecrirai,	*I shall write.*	Nous écrirons,	*we shall write*
tu écriras,	*thou shalt write.*	vous écrirez,	*you shall write.*
il écrira,	*he shall write.*	ils écriront,	*they shall write.*

CONDITIONAL.

J'écrirois,	*I would write.*	Nous écririons,	*we would write.*
tu écrirois,	*thou wouldest,*	vous écririez,	*you would write.*
il écriroit,	*he would write.*	ils écriroient,	*they would write.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Que	*That*		
J'écrive,	*I may write.*	Nous écrivions,	*we may write.*
tu ecrives,	*thou mayest write.*	vous écriviez,	*you may write.*
il écrive,	*he may write.*	ils écrivent,	*they may write.*

PRETERITE.

J'écrivisse,	*I might write,*	Nous écrivissions,	*we might.*
tu écrivisses,	*thou mightest write.*	vous écrivissiez,	*you might.*
il écrivît	*he might write.*	ils écrivissent,	*they might.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Ecrivons,	*let us write.*
2. ecris,	*write thou.*	écrivez,	*write ye.*
3. qu'il écrive,	*let him write.*	qu'ils écrivent,	*let them write.*

All the verbs which end in *crire*, are regular, and conjugated like *écrire*.

SECTION THE FIFTH.

Conjugation of a reflected verb.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present tense,	se lever,	*to rise.*
Gerund,	se levant,	*rising.*
Participle,	levé,	*risen.*
Compound of the present,	s'être levé,	*to have risen.*
Compound of the gerund,	s'étant levé,	*having risen.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.		Plural.	
Je me lève,	*I rise.*	Nous nous levons,	*we rise.*
tu te lèves,	*thou risest.*	vous vous levez,	*you rise.*
il se lève,	*he rises.*	ils se lèvent,	*they rise.*

IMPERFECT.

Je me levois,	*I was*	*rising.*	Nous nous levions,	*we were*	*rising.*
tu te levois,	*thou wast*		vous vous leviez,	*you were*	
il se levoit,	*he was*		ils se levoient,	*they were*	

PRETERITE.

Je me levai,	*I rose.*	Nous nous levâmes,	*we rose.*
tu te levas,	*thou didst rise.*	vous vous levâtes,	*you rose.*
il se leva,	*he rose.*	ils se lèverent,	*they rose.*

FUTURE.

Je me leverai,	*I shall rise.*	Nous nous leverons,	*we shall rise.*
tu te leveras,	*thou shalt rise.*	vous vous leverez,	*you shall rise.*
il se levera,	*he shall rise.*	ils se leveront,	*they shall rise.*

CONDITIONAL.

Je me leverois,	*I would rise.*	Nous nous leverions,	*we would.*
tu te leverois,	*thou wouldest rise.*	vous vous leveriez,	*you would.*
il se leveroit,	*he would rise.*	ils se leveroient,	*they would.*

COMPOUND TENSES.

COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.

Je me suis levé,	*I have risen.*	Nous nous sommes levés,	*we, &c.*
tu t'es levé,	*thou hast.*	vous vous êtes levés,	*you have.*
il s'est levé,	*he has risen.*	ils se sont levés,	*they have risen.*
elle s'est levée	*she has risen.*	elles se sont levées,	*they have, &c.*

COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.

Je m'étois levé,	*I had risen.*	Nous nous étions levés,	*we had.*
tu t'étois levé,	*thou hadst.*	vous vous étiez levés,	*you had.*
il s'étoit levé,	*he had risen.*	ils s'étoient levés,	*they had, &c.*

COMPOUND OF THE PRETERITE.

Je me fus levé,	*I had risen.*	Nous nous fûmes levés,	*we had.*
tu te fus levé,	*thou hadst risen.*	vous vous fûtes levés,	*you had.*
il se fut levé,	*he had risen.*	ils se furent levés,	*they had, &c.*

COMPOUND OF THE FUTURE.

Je me serai levé,	*I shall have.*	Nous nous serons levés,	*we shall.*
tu tu seras levé,	*thou shalt.*	vous vous serez levés,	*you shall.*
il se sera levé,	*he shall have.*	ils se seront levés,	*they shall.*

COMPOUND OF THE CONDITIONAL.

Je me serois levé,	*I should, &c.*	Nous nous serions levés,	*we, &c.*
tu te serois levé,	*thou shouldest.*	vous vous seriez levés,	*you, &c.*
il se seroit levé,	*he should, &c.*	ils se seroient levés,	*they should*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Que	*That*		
Je me lève,	*I may rise.*	Nous nous levions,	*we may rise.*
tu te lèves,	*thou mayest rise.*	vous vous leviez,	*you may rise.*
il se lève,	*he may rise.*	ils se lèvent,	*they may rise*

PRETERITE.

Je me levasse,	*I might rise.*	Nou nous levassions,	*we might.*
tu te levasses,	*thou mightest.*	vous vous levassiez,	*you might.*
il se levât,	*he might rise.*	ils se levassent,	*they might rise.*

COMPOUND TENSES.

COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT

Je me sois levé,	*I may*, &c.	Nous nous soyons levés,	*we*, &c.
tu te sois levé,	*thou mayest.*	vous vous soyez levés,	*you*, &c.
il se soit levé,	*he may*, &c.	ils se soient levés,	*they*, &c.

COMPOUND OF THE PRETERITE.

Je me fusse levé,	*I might*, &c.	Nous nous fussions levés,	*we*, &c
tu te fusse levé,	*thou*, &c,	vous vous fussiez levés,	*you*, &c
il se fût levé,	*he might*, &c.	ils se fussent levés,	*they*, &c

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

		Levons-nous,	*let us rise.*
2. lève-toi,	*rise thou.*	levez-vous,	*rise you.*
3. qu'il se lève,	*let him rise.*	qu'ils se lèvent,	*let them rise*

OBSERVATIONS.

1. All reflected verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary *être* in French, and *to have* in English, in their compound tenses.

2. They are also conjugated with two pronouns relative to the same object; *je me* is used for the first person of the singular number; *tu te* for the second; *il* or *elle se*, for the third; *nous nous*, for the first of the plural number, *vous vous*, for the second; *ils* or *elles se*, for the third, as before.

3. Most passive verbs, which have an inanimate object for their nominative case, are reflected in French; as, *les mauvaises nouvelles* se répandent *plus promptement que les bonnes*, bad news are sooner spread about than good.

4. The verbs which are followed in English by the pronouns *myself, thyself, himself,* &c. answer exactly to the French reflected. The following have no pronouns in English, and, as they cannot be easily distinguished, must be learnt by heart:

VERBS REFLECTED IN FRENCH.

s'abonner, *to compound.*
s'abstenir, to *abstain.*
s'accorder, *to agree.*
s'accouder, *to lean upon.*
s'asseoir, *to sit down.*
s'attacher, *to stick.*
se baigner, *to bathe.*
se baisser, *to stoop.*
se cantonner, *to canton.*
se coucher, *to go to bed.*
se débattre, *to struggle.*
se déborder, *to flow over.*
se dédire, *to retract.*
se défier, *to distrust.*
se dépêcher, *to make haste.*
se démettre, *to resign.*
se désister, *to desist.*
s'élancer, *to leap upon.*
s'en aller, *to go away.*
s'emparer, *to seize upon.*
s'empresser, *to be eager.*
s'endormir, *to fall asleep.*
s'enfuir, *to run away.*
s'enhardir, *to grow bold.*
s'enraciner, *to take root.*
s'enrhumer, *to catch cold.*
s'enrichir, *to grow rich.*
s'entretenir, *to discourse with.*
s'envoler, *to fly away.*
s'épanouir, *to blow.*
s'esquiver, *to steal away.*
s'étonner, *to wonder.*
s'évanouir, *to faint away.*
s'évaporer, *to evaporate.*
s'évertuer, *to strive.*
se farder, *to paint.*
se fier, *to trust.*
se figurer, *to fancy.*
se flétrir, *to fade away.*
se fondre, *to melt.*
se formaliser, *to find fault.*
se glisser, *to creep in.*
se hâter, *to make haste.*
s'imaginer, *to fancy.*
s'ingérer, *to intermeddle.*
s'insinuer, *to steal in.*
se lever, *to rise.*
se liquéfier, *to liquefy.*

se marier, *to marry.*
se méfier, *to distrust.*
se méprendre, *to mistake.*
se moquer, *to laugh at.*
se mutiner, *to mutiny.*
se piquer, *to pretend to.*
se plaindre, *to complain.*
se promener, *to walk.*
se réjouir, *to rejoice.*
se repentir, *to repent.*
se reposer, *to rest.*
se ressouvenir, *to remember.*
se révolter, *to rebel.*
se saisir, *to seize upon.*
se soumettre, *to submit.*
se souvenir, *to remember.*
se vanter, *to boast.*

SECTION THE SIXTH.

Several manners of conjugating a verb.

1. WITH NEGATION. Infinitive present: *Ne pas donner*, not to give; *ne donnant pas*, not giving.

Ind. pres. *Je ne donne pas*, I do not give; *tu ne donnes pas*, thou dost not give; *il ne donne pas*, he does not give; *nous ne donnons pas*, we do not give; *vous ne donnez pas*, you do not give; *ils ne donnent pas*, they do not give: and so on for all the other tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods.

Compound tenses: *Je n'ai pas donné*, I have not given; *tu n'as pas donné*, thou hast not given; *il n'a pas donné*, he has not given, &c. and so on for all compound tenses and persons.

2. WITH INTERROGATION. Imperfect of the indicative: *Punissois-je*, did I punish? *punissois-tu*, didst thou punish? *punissoit-il*, did he punish? *punissions-nous*, did we punish? *punissiez-vous*, did you punish? *punissoient-ils*, did they punish?

Compound tenses: *Ai-je puni*, have I punished? *as tu puni*, hast thou punished? *a-t-il puni*, has he punished? and so on for other tenses.

3. WITH NEGATION AND INTERROGATION. Preterite of the indicative: *Ne marchai-je pas*, did I not walk? *ne marchas-tu pas*, didst thou not walk? *ne marcha-t-il pas*, did he not walk? *ne marchâmes-nous pas*, did we

not walk? *ne marchâtes-vous pas,* did you not walk? *ne marchèrent-ils pas,* did they not walk?

Compound tenses: *N'ai-je pas marché,* have I not walked? *n'as-tu pas marché,* hast thou not walked? *n'a-t-il pas marché,* has he not walked? and so on for all other persons.

4. WITH PRONOUNS. Future: *Je les vendrai,* I will sell them; *tu les vendras,* thou wilt sell them; *il les vendra,* he will sell them; *nous les vendrons,* we will sell them; *vous les vendrez,* you will sell them; *ils les vendront,* they will sell them.

Compound tenses: *Je les ai vendus,* I have sold them; *tu les as vendus,* thou hast sold them; *il les a vendu,* he has sold them, &c.

5. WITH NEGATION AND PRONOUNS. Conditional: *Je ne le connoîtrois pas,* I should not know him; *tu ne le connoîtrois pas,* thou shouldest not know him; *il ne le connoîtroit pas,* he should not know him; *nous ne le connoîtrions pas,* we should not know him; *vous ne le connoîtriez pas,* you should not know him; *ils ne le connoîtroient pas,* they should not know him.

Compound tenses: *Je ne l'ai pas connu,* I have not known him; *tu ne l'as pas connu,* thou hast not known him; *il ne l'a pas connu,* he has not known him, &c.

6. WITH INTERROGATION AND PRONOUNS. Future indicative: *Les verrai-je,* shall I see them? *les verras-tu,* shalt thou see them? *les verra-t-il,* shall he see them? *les verrons-nous,* shall we see them? *les verrez-vous,* shall you see them? *les verront-ils,* shall they see them?

Compound tenses: *Les ai-je vus,* have I seen them? *les as-tu vus,* has thou seen them? *les a-t-il vus,* has he seen them?

This method of conjugating verbs is very useful for understanding the rules of the syntax; therefore I recommend it particularly to children.

SECTION THE SEVENTH.

Conjugation of all the irregular verbs.

I. Absoudre. *To absolve**.

Inf. Absoudre, *to absolve.* *Ger.* absolvant, *absolving*
Part. absous, *absolved.*

	Singular. 1	2	3	Plural. 1	2	3
Pres. J'absou	-s,	s,	t;	absolv -ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp. J'absolv	-ois,	ois,	oit;	absolv -ions,	iez,	oient.
Fut. J'absoud	-rai,	ras,	ra;	absoud -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond. J'absoud	-rois,	rois,	roit;	absoud -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P. J'absolv	-e	es,	e;	absolv -ions,	iez,	ent.
Imper. abso		us,	lve;	absolv -ons,	ez,	ent.

Abattre, *to pull down*, *on* battre 5.
Abstraire, *to abstract*, *on* traire 35.
Accourir, *to run to*, *on* courir 11.
Accueillir, *to welcome*, *on* cueillir 13.

II. Acquerir, *to acquire.*

Inf. Acquérir, *to acquire.* *Ger.* acquérant, *acquiring.*
Part. acquis, *acquired.*

Pres. J'acquie	-rs,	rs,	rt;	acqu -érons,	érez,	ièrent.
Imp. J'acquér	-ois,	ois,	oit;	acquér -ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret. J'acqu	-is	is,	it;	acqu -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut. J'acquer	-rai,	ras,	ra;	acquer -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond. J'acquer	-rois,	rois,	roit;	acquer -rions,	riez,	roient.

* The pupil must learn to repeat the English words which answer to every tense and person of the French verbs: this will be an easy task, if he remembers that *to* is the mark of the present of the infinitive; *was* with the gerund, the mark of the imperfect of the indicative; *shall* or *will* of the future; *would*, *could*, or *should*, of the conditional; *may*, of the present of the subjunctive; *might* of the preterite; and *let* of the imperative mood. The figures 1, 2, 3, denote the first, second, and third persons of the singular and plural.

		Singular.				Plural.		
		1	2	3		1	2	3
S. P.	J'acquièr	-e,	es,	e;	acqu	-érions,	ériez,	ièrent.
Pret.	J'acqu	-isse,	isses,	ît;	acqu	-issons,	issiez,	issent.
Imper.	acqui		-ers,	ère;	acqu	-érons,	érez,	ièrent.

Admettre, *to admit*, *on* mettre 19.

III. Aller, *to go.*

Inf. Aller, *to go.* *Ger.* allant. *going.* *Part.* allé, *gone.*

Pres.	Je	vais,	vas,	va;		allons,	allez,	vont.
Imp.	J'all	-ois,	oit,	oit;	all	-ions	iez,	oient.
Pret.	J'all	-ai,	as,	a;	all	-âmes,	âtes,	èrent.
Fut.	J'i	-rai,	ras,	ra;	i	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	J'i	-rois,	rois,	roit;	i	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	J'aill	-e	es	e;	all	-ions,	iez,	aillent.
Pret.	J'all	-asse,	asses,	ât;	all	-assions,	assiez,	assent.
Imper.			va,	aille;		allons,	allez,	aillent.

Apprendre, *to learn*, *on* prendre 27.
Assaillir*, *to assault*, *on* cueillir 13

IV. S'asseoir, *to sit down.*

Inf. S'asseoir, *to sit down.* *Ger.* s'asséyant, *sitting.*
Part. assis, *sat.*

Pres.	Je m'ass	-ieds,	ieds,	ied;	asse	-yons,	yez,	yent.
Imp.	Je m'assey	-ois,	ois,	oit;	assey	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je m'ass	-is,	is,	it;	ass	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut.	Je m'assié	-rai†,	ras,	ra;	assié	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je m'assié	-rois†,	rois,	roit;	assié	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je m'assey	-e,	es,	e;	asse	-yions,	yiez,	yent.
Pret.	Je m'ass	-isse,	isses,	ît;	ass	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper.	ass		ieds,	eye;	asse	-yons,	yez,	yent.

Attraire, *to attract*, *on* traire 35.

* *Assaillir* makes in the future and conditional *j'assaillirai*, *j'assaillirois.*

† We also say, *je m'asseyerai*, *je m'asseyerois.*

V. Battre *to beat.*

Inf. Battre, *to beat.* *Ger.* Battant, *beating.* *Part.* battu, *beaten.*

	Singular. 1	2	3	Plural. 1	2	3
Pres.	Je ba -ts	ts,	t;	batt -ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je batt -ois,	ois,	oit;	batt -ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je batt -is,	is,	it;	batt -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut.	Je batt -rai,	ras,	ra;	batt -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je batt -rois,	rois,	roit;	batt -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je batt -e,	es,	e;	batt -ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret.	Je batt -isse,	isses,	ît;	batt -issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper.	ba	-ts,	tte;	batt -ons,	ez,	ent.

VI. Boire, *to drink.*

Inf. Boire, *to drink.* *Ger.* buvant, *drinking.* *Part.* bu, *drank.*

Pres.	Je boi -s	s,	t;	buv -ons,	ez,	boivent.
Imp.	Je buv -ois,	ois,	oit;	buv -ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je b -us,	us,	ut;	b -ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
Fut.	Je boi -rai,	ras,	ra;	boi -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je boi -rois,	rois,	roit;	boi -rions,	riez,	oient.
S. P.	Je boiv -e,	es,	e;	buv -ions	iez,	boivent.
Pret.	Je b -usse,	usses,	ût;	b -usions,	ussiez,	ussent.
Imper.		bois,	boive;	buvons,	buvez,	boivent.

VII. Bouillir, *to boil.*

Inf. Bouillir, *to boil.* *Ger.* bouillant, *boiling.* *Part.* bouilli, *boiled.*

Pres.	Je bou -s,	s,	t;	bouill -ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je bouill -ois,	ois,	oit;	bouill -ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je bouill -is,	is,	it;	bouill -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut.	Je bouilli -rai,	ras,	ra;	bouilli -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je bouilli -rois,	rois,	roit;	bouilli -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je bouill -e,	es,	e;	bouill -ions,	iez,	ent.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Pret.	Je bouill -isse,	isses,	ît;	bouill -issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper.		bous,	bouille;	bouill -ons,	ez,	ent.

Circoncire *,	*to circumcise,*	*on* confire	9.
Combattre,	*to fight,*	*on* battre	5.
Comprendre,	*to understand,*	*on* prendre	27.
Commettre,	*to commit,*	*on* mettre	19.
Compromettre,	*to expose,*	*on* mettre	19.

VIII. Conclure, *to conclude.*

Inf. Conclure, *to conclude.* *Ger.* concluant, *concluding.* *Part.* conclu, *concluded.*

Pres.	Je concl -us,	us,	ut;	conclu-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je conclu-ois,	ois,	oit;	conclu-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je concl -us,	us,	ut;	concl -ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
Fut.	Je conclu-rai,	ras,	ra;	conclu-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je conclu-rois,	rois,	roit;	conclu-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je conclu-e,	es,	e;	conclu-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret.	Je concl -usse,	usses,	ût;	concl -ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
Imper.	concl	-us,	ue;	conclu-ons,	ez,	ent.

Concurir, *to concur, on* courir 11.

IX. Confire, *to pickle.*

Inf. Confire, *to pickle.* *Ger.* confisant, *pickling.* *Part.* confit, *pickled.*

Pres.	Je conf -is,	is,	it;	confis -ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je confis -ois,	ois,	oit;	confis -ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je conf -is,	is,	it;	conf -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut.	Je confi -rai,	ras,	ra;	confi -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je confi -rois,	rois,	roit;	confi -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je confis -e,	es,	e;	confis -ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret.	Je conf -isse,	isses,	ît;	conf -issions,	issiez,	issent.

* But the participle is *circoncis.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
		2	3	1	2	3
Imper.	conf	-is,	ise;	confis -ons,	ez,	ent.

Conquérir,	*to conquer,*	*on* acquérir	2
Contredire *,	*to contradict,*	*on* dire	14.
Contrefaire,	*to mimic,*	*on* faire	16.
Convaincre,	*to convince,*	*on* vaincre	36.
Corrompre,	*to corrupt,*	*on* rompre	32.

X. Coudre, *to sew.*

Inf. Coudre, *to sew.* *Ger.* cousant, *sewing.* *Part.* cousu, *sewed.*

Pres.	Je cou -ds,	ds,	d;	cous -ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je cous -ois,	ois,	oit;	cous -ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je cous -is,	is,	it;	cous -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut.	Je coud -rai,	ras,	ra;	coud -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je coud -rois,	rois,	roit;	coud -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je cous -e,	es,	e;	cous -ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret.	Je cous -isse,	isses,	ît;	cous -issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper.	cou	s,	se;	cous -ons,	ez,	ent.

XI. Courir, *to run.*

Inf. Courir, *to run.* *Ger.* courant, *running.* *Part.* couru, *run.*

Pres.	Je cou -rs,	rs,	rt;	cour -ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je cour -ois,	ois,	oit;	cour -ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je cour -us,	us,	ut;	cour -ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
Fut.	Je cour -rai,	ras,	ra;	cour -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je cour -rois,	rois,	roit;	cour -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je cour -e,	es,	e;	cour -ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret.	Je cour -usse,	usses,	ût;	cour -ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
Imper.	cour	-s,	e;	cour -ons,	ez,	ent.

* But it makes in the second person plural of the indicative and of the imperative *contredisez.*

XII. CROIRE, *to believe.*

Inf. Croire, *to believe.* *Ger.* croyant, *believing.* *Part.* cru, *believed.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Pres. Je croi	-s,	s,	t;	cro -yons,	yez,	ient,
Imp. Je croy	-ois,	ois	oit;	croy -ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret. Je cr	-us,	us,	ut;	cr -ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
Fut. Je croi	-rai,	ras,	ra;	croi -rons	rez,	ront.
Cond. Je croi	-rois,	rois,	roit;	croi -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P. Je croi	-e	es,	e;	croi -yions,	yiez,	ient.
Pret. Je cr	-usse,	usses,	ût;	cr -ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
Imper. croi		-s,	e;	cro -yons,	yez,	ient.

XIII. CUEILLIR, *to gather.*

Inf. Cueillir, *to gather.* *Ger.* cueillant, *gathering.* *Part.* cueilli, *gathered.*

Pres. Je cueill	-e,	es,	e;	cueill -ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp. Je cueill	-ois,	ois,	oit;	cueill -ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret. Je cueill	-is,	is,	it;	cueill -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut. Je cueille	-rai,	ras,	ra;	cueille -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond. Je cueille	-rois,	rois,	oit;	cueille -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P. Je cueill	-e,	es,	e;	cueill -ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret. Je cueill	-isse,	isses,	ît;	cueill -issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper. cueill		-e	e;	cueill -ons,	ez,	ent.

Découdre,	*to unsew.*	*on* coudre,	10.
Dédire *,	*to unsay.*	*on* dire,	14.
Défaire,	*to undo.*	*on* faire,	16.
Démettre,	*to put out.*	*on* mettre,	19.
Se Démettre,	*to resign.*	*on* mettre,	19.
Se Déprendre,	*to loose.*	*on* prendre,	27.
Désapprendre,	*to unlearn.*	*on* prendre,	27.
Dévêtir	*to divest.*	*on* revêtir,	30.

* See the observation upon *contredire.*

XIV. Dire, *to say.*

Inf. Dire, *to say.* *Ger.* disant, *saying.* *Part.* dit, *said.*

	Singular. 1	2	3		Plural. 1	2	3
Pres. Je d	-is,	is,	it;	di	-sons,	tes,	sent.
Imp. Je dis	-ois,	ois,	oit;	dis	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret. Je d	-is,	is,	it;	d	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut. Je di	-rai,	ras,	ra;	di	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond. Je di	-rois,	rois,	roit;	di	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P. Je dis	-e,	es,	e;	dis	-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret. Je d	-isse,	isses,	ît;	d	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper. d		-is,	ise;		-disons,	dîtes,	disent.

Discourir,	*to discourse,*	*on* courir,	11.
Dissoudre,	*to dissolve,*	*on* absoudre,	1.
Distraire,	*to distract,*	*on* traire,	35.
S'ébattre*,	*to rejoice,*	*on* battre,	5.
Ebouillir,	*to boil down,*	*on* bouillir,	7.
Elire,	*to elect,*	*on* lire,	18.
Emoudre,	*to grind, (knives.)*	*on* moudre,	20.
Emouvoir,	*to stir up,*	*on* mouvoir,	22.
Encourir,	*to incur,*	*on* courir,	11.
S'enfuir,	*to run away,*	*on* fuir,	17.
S'enquérir,	*to inquire,*	*on* acquérir,	2.
S'ensuivre,	*to follow,*	*on* suivre,	34.
S'entremettre,	*to interpose,*	*on* mettre,	19.
Entreprendre,	*to undertake,*	*on* prendre,	27.
Entrevoir,	*to have a glimpse,*	*on* voir,	39.

XV. Envoyer, *to send.*

Inf. Envoyer, *to send.* *Ger.* envoyant, *sending.* *Part.* envoyé, *sent.*

Pres. J'envoi	-e,	es,	e;	envo	-yons,	yez,	ient.
Imp. J'envoy	-ois,	ois,	oit;	envoy	-ions,	iez,	oient.

* An old expression almost out of use.

	Singular. 1	2	3	Plural. 1	2	3
Pret. J'envoy	-ai,	as,	a;	envoy -âmes,	âtes,	èrent.
Fut. J'enver	-rai,	ras,	ra;	enver -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond. J'enver,	-rois,	rois,	roit;	enver -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P. J'envoi	-e,	es,	e;	envo -yions,	yiez,	ient.
Pret. J'envoy	-asse,	asses,	ât;	envoy -assions,	assiez,	assent.
Imper. envoi		-e,	e;	envo -yons,	yez,	ient.

Equivaloir, *to be equal, on* valoir 37.
Exclure, *to exclude, on* conclure 8.
Extraire, *to extract, on* traire 35.

XVI. FAIRE, *to do.*

Inf. Faire, *to do.* *Ger.* faisant, *doing.* *Part.* fait, *done.*

Pres. Je fa	-is,	is,	it;	fai, -sons,	tes,	font.
Imp. Je fais,	-ois,	ois,	oit;	fais, -ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret. Je f	-is,	is,	it;	f -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut. Je fe	-rai,	ras,	ra;	fe -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond. Je fe	-rois,	rois,	roit;	fe -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P. Je f	-asse,	asses,	asse;	f -assions,	assiez,	assent.
Pret. Je f	-isse,	isses,	ît;	f -issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper. f		-ais,	asse;	f -aisons,	aites,	assent.

XVII. FUIR, *to shun.*

Inf. Fuir, *to shun.* *Ger.* fuyant, *shunning.* *Part.* fui, *shunned.*

Pres. Je fu	-is,	is,	it;	fu -yons,	yez,	ient.
Imp. Je fuy	-ois,	ois,	oit;	fuy -ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret. Je fu	-is,	is,	it;	fu -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut. Je fui	-rai,	ras,	ra;	fui -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond. Je fui	-rois,	rois,	roit;	fui -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P. Je fui	-e,	es,	e;	fu -yions,	yiez,	ient.
Pret. Je fu	-isse,	isses,	ît;	fu -issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper. fu		is,	ie;	fu -yons,	yez,	ient.

Interdire*, *to forbid, on* dire, 14.
Interrompre, *to interrupt, on* rompre, 32.

* See the observation upon *contredire.*

XVIII. LIRE, *to read.*

Inf. Lire, *to read.* *Ger.* lisant, *reading.* *Part.* lu, *read.*

		Singular. 1	2	3		Plural. 1	2	3
Pres.	Je l	-is,	is,	it;	lis	-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je lis	-ois,	ois,	oit;	lis	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je l	-us,	us,	ut;	l	-ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
Fut.	Je li	-rai,	ras	ra;	li	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je li	-rois,	rois,	roit;	li	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je lis	-e,	es,	e;	lis	-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pres.	Je l	-usse,	usses,	ût;	l	-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
Imper.	l	-is,		ise;	lis	-ons,	ez,	ent.

Maudire*, *to curse,* *on* dire 14.
Médire†, *to slander,* *on* dire 14.
Se méprendre, *to mistake,* *on* prendre 27.

XIX. METTRE, *to put.*

Inf. Mettre, *to put.* *Ger.* mettant, *putting.* *Part.* mis, *put.*

Pres.	Je me	-ts,	ts,	t;	mett	-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je mett	-ois,	ois,	oit;	mett	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je m	-is,	is,	it;	m	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut.	Je mett	-rai,	ras,	ra;	mett	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je mett	-rois,	rois,	roit;	mett	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je mett	-e,	es,	e;	mett	-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret.	Je m	-isse,	isses,	ît;	m	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper.	me		-ts,	tte;	mett	-ons,	ez,	ent.

XX. MOUDRE, *to grind.*

Inf. Moudre, *to grind.* *Ger.* moulant, *grinding.* *Part.* moulu, *ground.*

Pres.	Je mou	-ds,	ds,	d;	moul	-ons,	ez,	ent.

* *Maudire* makes in the Gerund, *maudissant;* in the plural of the indicative present, *nous maudissons, vous maudissez, ils maudissent;* in the Imperfect, *je maudissois,* in the Pres. and Pret. Subj. *je maudisse;* and in the Imperative *qu'il maudisse, maudissons, maudissez, qu'ils maudissent.*

† See the observation upon *contredire.*

	Singular.	1	2	3	Plural.	1	2	3
Imp.	Je moul	-ois,	ois,	oit;	moul	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je moul	-us,	us,	ut;	moul	-ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
Fut.	Je moud	-rai,	ras,	ra;	moud	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je moud	-rois,	rois,	roit;	moud	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je moul	-e,	es,	e;	moul	-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret.	Je moul	-usse,	usses,	ût;	moul	-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
Imper.	mou		-ds,	le;	moul	-ons,	ez,	ent.

XXI. Mourir, *to die.*

Inf. Mourir, *to die.* *Ger.* mourant, *dying.* *Part.* mort, *dead.*

Pres.	Je meu	-rs,	rs,	rt;	mour	-ons,	ez,	meurent.
Imp.	Je mour	-ois,	ois,	oit;	mour	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je mour	-us,	ut,	ut;	mour	-ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
Fut.	Je mour	-rai,	ras,	ra;	mour	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je mour	-rois,	rois,	roit;	mour	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je meur	-e,	es,	e;	mour	-ions,	iez,	meurent.
Pret.	Je mour	-usse,	usses,	ût;	mour	-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
Imper.	meur		-s,	e;	mour	-ons,	ez,	meurent.

XXII. Mouvoir, *to move.*

Inf. Mouvoir, *to move.* *Ger.* mouvant, *moving.* *Part.* mu, *moved.*

Pres.	Je m	-eus,	eus,	eut;	mouv	-ons,	ez,	meuvent.
Imp.	Je mouv	-ois,	ois,	oit;	mouv	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je m	-us,	us,	ut;	m	-ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
Fut.	Je mouv	-rai,	ras,	ra;	mouv	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je mouv	-rois,	rois,	roit;	mouv	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je meuv	-e,	es,	e;	mouv	-ions,	iez,	meuvent.
Pret.	Je m	-usse,	usses,	ût;	muss	-ions,	iez,	ent.
Imper.	m		-eus,	meuve;	mouv	-ons,	ez,	meuvent.

XXIII. Naitre, *to be born.*

Inf. Naître, *to be born.* *Ger.* naissant, *being born.* *Part.* né, *born.*

Pres.	Je nai	s,	s,	t,	naiss	-ons,	-ez,	ent.

	Singular.				Plural.		
	1	2	3		1	2	3
Imp.	Je naiss, -ois,	ois,	oit;	naiss	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je naqu, -is,	is,	it;	naqu	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut.	Je naît, -rai,	ras,	ra;	naît	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je naît, -rois,	rois,	oit;	naît	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je naiss, -e,	es,	e;	naiss,	-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret.	Je naqu -isse,	isses,	ît;	naqu	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper.	nai	-s	sse;	naiss	-ons,	ez,	ent.

Omettre, *to omit, on* mettre 19.

XXIV. Paitre, *to graze.*

Inf. Paître, *to graze. Ger.* paissant, *grazing. Part.* pu, *grazed.*

Pres.	Je pai -s,	s,	t;	paiss	-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je paiss -ois,	ois,	oit;	paiss	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Fut.	Je paît -rai,	ras,	ra;	paît	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je paît -rois,	rois,	roit;	paît	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je paiss, -e,	es,	e;	paiss	-ions,	iez,	ent.
Imper.	pai	-s,	sse;	paiss	-ons,	ez,	ent.

Parcourir, *to run over, on* courir, 11.
Permettre, *to permit, on* mettre, 19.
Poursuivre, *to pursue, on* suivre, 34.

XXV. Pourvoir, *to provide.*

Inf. Pourvoir, *to provide. Ger.* pourvoyant. *Part.* pourvu.

Pres.	Je pourvoi -s,	s,	t;	pourvo	-yons,	yez,	ient,
Imp.	Je pourvoy -ois,	ois	oit;	pourvoy	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je pourv -us,	us,	ut;	pourv	-ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
Fut.	Je pourvoi -rai,	ras,	ra;	pourvoi	-rons	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je pourvoi -rois,	rois,	roit;	pourvoi	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je pourvoi -e	es,	e;	pourvoi	-yions,	yiez,	ient.
Pret.	Je pourv -usse,	usses,	ût;	pourv	-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
Imper.	pourvoi	-s,	e;	pourvo	-yons,	yez,	ient.

XXVI. Pouvoir, *to be able.*

Inf. Pouvoir, *to be able.* *Ger.* pouvant. *Part.* pu.

	Singular.	1	2	3	Plural.	1	2	3
Pres.	Je peu	-x*,	x,	t;	pouv	-ons,	ez,	peuvent.
Imp.	Je pou	-vois,	ois,	oit;	pouv	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je p	-us,	us,	ut;	p	-ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
Fut.	Je pour	-rai,	ras,	ra;	pour	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je pour	-rois,	rois,	roit;	pour	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je puiss	-e,	es,	e;	puiss	-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret.	Je p	-usse,	usses,	ût;	p	-ussions,	ussiez,	ent.

Prédire †, *to foretel, on* dire 14.

XXVII. Prendre, *to take.*

Inf. Prendre, *to take.* *Ger.* prenant, *taking.* *Part.* pris, *taken.*

Pres.	Je pren	-ds,	ds,	d;	pren	-ons,	ez,	nent.
Imp.	Je pren	-ois,	ois,	oit;	pren	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je pr	-is,	is,	it;	pr	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut.	Je prend	-rai,	ras,	ra;	prend	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je prend	-rois,	rois,	roit;	prend	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je prenn	-e,	es,	e;	pren	-ions,	iez,	nent.
Pret.	Je pr	-isse,	isses,	ît;	pr	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper.	pren		-ds,	ne;	pren	-ons,	ez,	nent.

Prévaloir ‡, *to prevail, on* valoir, 37.

XXVIII. Prevoir, *to foresee.*

Inf. Prévoir *to foresee.* *Ger.* prévoyant. *Part.* prévu.

Pres.	Je prévoi	-s,	s,	t;	prévo	-yons,	yez,	ient.
Imp.	Je prévoy	-ois,	ois,	oit;	prévoy	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je prév	-is,	is,	it;	prév	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut.	Je prévoi	-rai,	ras,	ra;	prévoi	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je prévoi	-rois,	rois,	roit;	prévoi	-rions,	riez,	roient.

* We say more commonly *je puis*, instead of *je peux.*
† See the observation upon *contredire.*
‡ But it makes in the Subj. pres. *je prévale, tu prévales,* &c.

	Singular. 1	2	3		Plural. 1	2	3
S. P. Je prévoi	-e,	es,	e;	prévo	-yions,	yiez,	ient.
Pret. Je prév	-isse,	isses,	ît;	prév	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper. prévoi		-s,	e;	prévo	-yons,	yez,	ient.

Promettre,	*to promise,*	*on* mettre	19.
Promouvoir,	*to promote,*	*on* mouvoir	22.
Rabattre,	*to abate,*	*on* battre	5.
Rapprendre,	*to learn again,*	*on* prendre	27.
Se rasseoir,	*to sit down again,*	*on* s'asseoir	4.
Rebattre,	*to beat again,*	*on* battre	5.
Reboire,	*to drink again,*	*on* boire	6.
Rebouillir,	*to boil again,*	*on* bouillir	7.
Reconquérir,	*to reconquer,*	*on* acquérir	2.
Recoudre,	*to sew again,*	*on* coudre	10.
Recourir,	*to have recourse,*	*on* courir	11.
Recueillir,	*to gather,*	*on* cueillir	13.
Redéfaire,	*to undo again,*	*on* faire	16.
Redire,	*to say again,*	*on* dire	14.
Refaire,	*to do again,*	*on* faire	16.
Relire,	*to read over,*	*on* lire	18.
Remettre,	*to replace,*	*on* mettre	19.
Remoudre,	*to grind again,*	*on* moudre	20.
Renaître *,	*to be born again,*	*on* naître	23.
Rentraire,	*to fine-draw,*	*on* traire	35.
Repaître †,	*to feed,*	*on* paître	24.
Renvoyer,	*to send back,*	*on* envoyer	15.
Reprendre,	*to take again,*	*on* prendre	27.
Requérir,	*to require,*	*on* acquérir	2.

XXIX. Resoudre, *to resolve.*

Inf. Résoudre, *to resolve.* *Ger.* résolvant. *Part.* résolu.

Pres. Je résou	-ds,	ds,	d;	résolv	-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp. Je résolv	-ois,	ois,	oit;	résolv	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret. Je résol	-us,	us,	ut;	résol	-ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
Fut. Je résoud	-rai,	ras,	ra;	résoud	-rons,	rez,	ront.

* But it has no participle, and consequently no compound tenses.

† It makes in the Preterite of the Ind. *je repus,* and in the Pret. of the Subj. *je repusse.*

	Singular.	1	2	3	Plural.	1	2	3
Cond.	Je résoud	-rois,	rois,	roit;	résoud	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je résolv	-e,	es,	e;	résolv	-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret.	Je résol	-usse,	usses,	ût;	résol	ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
Imper.	réso		-uds,	lve;	résolv	-ons,	ez,	ent.

Retraire, *to redeem*, *on* traire 35.
Revaloir, *to return like for like*, *on* valoir 37.

XXX. Revetir, *to invest.*

Inf. Revêtir *to invest.* *Ger.* revêtant. *Part.* revêtu.

Pres.	Je revê	-ts,	ts,	t;	revêt	-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je revêt	-ois,	ois,	oit;	revet	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je revêt	-is,	is,	it;	revêt	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut.	Je revêti	-rai,	ras,	ra;	revêti	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je revêti	-rois	rois,	roit;	revêti	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je revêt	-e,	es,	e;	revêt	-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret.	Je revêt	-isse,	isses,	ît;	revêt	-issions,	issez,	issent.
Imper.	revêt		-s	e;	revêt	-ons,	ez,	ent.

Revivre, *to revive*, *on* vivre 38.
Revoir *to see again*, *on* voir 39.

XXXI. Rire, *to laugh.*

Inf. Rire, *to laugh.* *Ger.* riant, *laughing.* *Part.* ri, *laughed.*

Pres.	Je r	-is,	-is,	it;	ri	-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je ri	-ois,	ois,	oit;	ri	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je r	-is,	is,	it;	r	-îmes,	îtes,	irent
Fut.	Je ri	-rai,	ras,	ra;	ri	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je ri	-rois,	rois,	roit;	ri	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je ri	-e,	es,	e;	ri	-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret.	Je r	-isse,	isses,	ît;	r	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper.	r		-is,	ie;	ri	-ons,	ez,	ent.

XXXII. Rompre, *to break.*

Inf. Rompre, *to break.* *Ger.* rompant, *breaking.* *Part.* rompu, *broken.*

Pres.	Je romp	-s,	s,	t;	romp	-ons,	ez	ent,

	Singular. 1	2	3	Plural. 1	2	3
Imp. Je romp	-ois,	ois,	oit;	romp -ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret. Je romp	-is,	is,	it;	romp -îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut. Je romp	-rai,	ras,	ra;	romp -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond. Je romp	-rois,	rois,	roit;	romp -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P. Je romp	-e,	es,	e;	romp -ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret. Je romp	-isse,	isses,	ît;	romp -issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper. romp		s,	e;	romp -ons,	ez,	ent.

Satisfaire, *to satisfy*, *on* faire 16.

XXXIII. Savoir, *to know.*

Inf. Savoir, *to know.* *Ger.* sachant, *knowing.* *Part.* su, *known.*

Pres. Je sai	-s,	s,	t;	sav	-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp. Je sav	-ois,	ois,	oit;	sav	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret. Je s	-us,	us,	ut;	s	-ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
Fut. Je sau	-rai,	ras,	ra;	sau	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond. Je sau	-rois,	rois,	roit;	sau,	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P. Je sach,	-e,	es,	e;	sach,	-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret. Je s	-usse,	usses,	ût;	s	-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
Imper. sach		-e,	e;	sach	-ons,	ez,	ent.

Secourir, *to relieve*, *on* courir 11.
S'ensuivre, *to follow*, *on* suivre 34.
Soumettre, *to submit*, *on* mettre 19.
Sourire, *to smile*, *on* rire 31.
Soustraire, *to subtract*, *on* traire 35.
Suffire*, *to suffice*, *on* confire 9.

XXXIV. Suivre, *to follow.*

Inf. Suivre, *to follow.* *Ger.* suivant, *following.* *Part.* suivi, *followed.*

Pres. Je sui	-s	s,	t;	suiv	-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp. Je suiv	-ois,	ois,	oit;	suiv	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret. Je suiv	-is,	is,	it;	suiv	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut. Je suiv	-rai,	ras,	ra;	suiv	-rons,	rez,	ront.

* But the Participle is *suffi.*

	Singular.				Plural.			
		1	2	3		1	2	3
Cond.	Je suiv	-rois,	rois,	roit;	suiv	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je suiv	-e,	es,	e;	suiv	-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret.	Je suiv	-isse,	isses,	ît;	suiv	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper.	sui		-s,	ve;	suiv	-ons,	ez,	ent.

Surfairé,	*to ask too much,*	*on* faire,	16.
Surprendre,	*to surprise,*	*on* prendre,	27.
Surseoir *,	*to supersede,*	*on* prévoir,	28.
Survivre,	*to outlive,*	*on* vivre,	38.

XXXV. Traire, *to milk.*

Inf. Traire, *to milk.* *Ger.* trayant, *milking.* *Part.* trait, *milked.*

Pres.	Je trai	-s,	s,	t;	tra	-yons,	yez,	yent.
Imp.	Je tray	-ois,	ois,	oit;	tray	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Fut.	Je trai	-rai,	ras,	ra;	trai	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je trai	-rois	rois,	roit;	trai	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je tray	-e,	es,	e;	tra	-yons,	yez,	yent.
Imper.	tra		-is	ye;	tra	-yons,	yez,	yent.

Transmettre,	*to transmit,*	*on* mettre,	19.
Tresaillir †,	*to start,*	*on* cueillir,	13.

XXXVI. Vaincre, *to vanquish.*

Inf. Vaincre, *to vanquish.* *Ger.* vainquant, *vanquishing.* *Part.* vaincu, *vanquished.*

Pres.	Je vain	-cs,	cs,	c;	vainqu	-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je vainqu	-ois,	ois,	oit;	vainqu	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je vainqu	-is,	is,	it;	vainqu	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut.	Je vainc	-rai,	ras,	ra;	vainc	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je vainc	-rois,	rois,	roit;	vainc	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je vainqu	-e,	es,	e;	vainqu	-ions,	iez,	ent.

* But its participle is *sursis.*

† It makes in the future, *je tressaillirai,* and in the conditional, *je tressaillirois.*

		Singular. 1	2	3		Plural. 1	2	3
Pret.	Je vainqu	-isse,	isses,	ît;	vainqu	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper.	vain	-cs,		que;	vainqu	-ons,	ez,	ent.

XXXVII. Valoir, *to be worth.*

Inf. Valoir, *to be worth.* *Ger.* valant, *being worth.* *Part.* valu, *been worth.*

Pres.	Je vau	-x,	x,	t;	val	-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je val	-ois,	ois,	oit;	val	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je val	-us,	us,	ut;	val	-ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
Fut.	Je vaud	-rai,	ras,	ra;	vaud	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je vaud	-rois,	rois,	roit;	vaud	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je vaill	-e,	es,	e;	val	-ions,	iez,	vaillent.
Pret.	Je val	-usse,	usses,	ût;	val	-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.

XXXVIII. Vivre, *to live.*

Inf. Vivre, *to live.* *Ger.* vivant, *living.* *Part.* vécu, *lived.*

Pres.	Je v	-is,	is,	it;	viv	-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je viv	-ois,	ois,	oit;	viv	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je véc	-us,	us,	ut;	véc	-ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
Fut.	Je viv	-rai,	ras,	ra;	viv	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je viv	-rois,	rois,	roit;	viv	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je viv	-e,	es,	e;	viv	-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pret.	Je véc	-usse,	usses,	ût;	véc	-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
Imper.			vis,	vive;	vivons,		vivez,	vivent.

XXXIX. Voir, *to see.*

Inf. Voir, *to see.* *Ger.* voyant, *seeing.* *Part.* vu, *seen.*

Pres.	Je voi	-s,	s,	t;	voy	-ons,	ez,	voient.
Imp.	Je voy	-ois,	ois,	oit;	voy	-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je v	-is,	is,	it;	v	-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
Fut.	Je ver	-rai,	ras,	ra;	ver	-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je ver	-rois,	rois,	roit;	ver	-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je voi	-e,	es,	e;	vo	-yions,	yiez,	ient.
Pret.	Je v	-isse,	isses,	ît;	v	-issions,	issiez,	issent.
Imper.			vois,	voie;	vo	-yons,	yez,	voient.

XL. Vouloir, *to be willing.*

Inf. Vouloir, *to be willing.* *Ger.* voulant, *being willing.* *Part.* voulu, *been willing.*

	Singular. 1	2	3	Plural. 1	2	3
Pres. Je veu	-x,	x,	t;	voul -ons,	ez,	veulent.
Imp. Je voul	-ois,	ois,	oit;	voul -ions,	iez,	oient,
Pret. Je voul	-us,	us,	ut;	voul -ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.
Fut. Je voud	-rai,	ras,	ra;	voud -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond. Je voud	-rois,	rois,	roit;	voud -rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P. Je veuill	-e,	es,	e;	voul -ions,	iez,	veuillent.
Pret. Je voul	-usse,	usses,	ût;	voul -ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.
Imper. veuill		-e,	e;	veuill -ons,	ez,	ent.

The following Verbs are of common Use only in the Tenses and Persons hereafter mentioned.

Inf. bruire, *to rustle.* *Ger.* bruyant. *Imp.* il bruyoit, ils bruyoient.

Inf. braire, *to bray like an ass.* *Pres.* il brait, ils braient. *Fut.* il braira, ils brairont. *Cond.* il brairoit, ils brairoient.

Inf. Choir, *to fall.* *Part.* chu.

Inf. échoir, *to expire, to fall by lot, to happen.* *Ger.* échéant. *Part.* échu. *Pres.* il échoit. *Pret.* j'échus, &c. *Fut.* j'écherrai, &c. *Cond.* j'écherrois, &c.

Inf. déchoir, *to decay;* like échoir, except, *Ind. pres.* je déchois, &c. *Imper.* déchois, &c. *Sub. pres.* je déchoie, &c.

Inf. clorre, *to close.* *Part.* clos. *Pres. ind.* je clos, tu clos, il clot. *Fut.* je clorrai, tu clorras, il clorra. *Cond.* je clorrois, tu clorrois, il clorroit.

Inf. enclorre, *to inclose,* is conjugated like *clorre.*

Inf. éclore, *to be hatched.* *Part.* éclos. *Pres. ind.* il éclot, ils éclosent. *Fut.* il éclora, ils écloront, *Cond.* il écloroit, ils écloroient. *Pres. subj.* qu'il éclose, qu'ils éclosent.

Inf. faillir, *to fail.* *Part.* failli. *Preter. ind.* je faillis, &c. Défaillir, *to faint*, is conjugated in the same manner, and makes besides *Ind. pres.* nous défaillons. *Imp.* je défaillois, &c.

Inf. frire, *to fry.* *Part.* frit. *Pres. ind.* je fris, tu fris, il frit. *Fut.* je frirai, tu friras, il frira, nous frirons, vous frirez, ils friront. *Cond.* je fri-rois, rois, roit, fri-rions, riez, roient.

In other tenses we make use of the verb *faire*, and of the infinitive *frire*, as *je faisois frire, tu faisois frire*, &c.

Inf. Giser, *to lie.* *Ger.* gisant. *Pres. ind.* il gît, nous gisons, ils gisent. *Imp.* il gisoit.

Inf. ouïr, *to hear.* *Part.* ouï, *heard.* The participle is often followed by *dire*, as *j'ai ouï dire.*

Inf. querir, *to fetch*, is used, in the infinitive, only after the verbs *aller*, *envoyer*, and *venir*.

Inf. seoir, *to become.* *Pres. ind.* il sied, ils siéent. *Imp.* il seyoit, ils seyoient. *Fut.* il siéra, ils siéront. *Cond.* il siéroit, ils siéroient.]

Inf. Saillir, *to project.* *Ger.* saillant. *Part.* sailli. *Pres. ind.* il saille. *Imp.* il sailloit. *Fut.* il saillera. *Cond.* il sailleroit. *Pres. subj.* qu'il saille. *Pret.* qu'il saillît.

Inf. vêtir, *to clothe.* *Part.* vêtu, *clothed.*

SECTION THE EIGHTH.

Conjugation of the Impersonal Verbs.

NEIGER, *to snow.*

Inf. neiger, *ger.* neigeant, *part.* neigé, *comp.* avoir neigé, ayant neigé.

Pres. ind. il neige, *imp.* il neigeoit, *pret.* il neigea, *fut.* il neigera, *cond.* il neigeroit, *pres. subj.* il neige, *pret.* il neigeât, *comp. tenses,* il a neigé, il avoit neigé, &c.

Geler, *to freeze,* éclairer, *to lighten,* tonner, *to thunder,* and gréler, *to hail,* are conjugated on *neiger.*

PLEUVOIR, *to rain.*

Inf. pleuvoir, *ger.* pleuvant, *part.* plu, *comp.* avoir plu, ayant plu.

Pres. ind. il pleut, *imp.* il pleuvoit, *pret.* il plut, *fut.* il pleuvra, *cond.* il pleuvroit, *pres. subj.* il pleuve, *pret.* il plût, *comp. tenses,* il a plu, il avoit plu, &c.

FALLOIR, *to be necessary.*

Inf. falloir, *part.* fallu, *comp.* avoir fallu, ayant fallu.

Pres. ind. il faut, *imp.* il falloit, *pret.* il fallut, *fut.* il faudra, *cond.* il faudroit, *pres. subj.* il faille, *pret.* il fallût, *comp. tenses,* il a fallu, il avoit fallu, &c.

Y AVOIR, *to be there.*

Inf. y avoir, *ger.* y ayant, *comp.* y avoir eu, y ayant eu.

Pres. ind. il y a, *there is, imp.* il y avoit, *there was, pret.* il y eut, *there was, fut.* il y aura, *there shall be, cond.* il y auroit, *there would be, pres. subj.* il y ait, *there may be, pret.* il y eût, *there might be, comp. tenses,* il y a eu, *there has been,* il y avoit eu, *there had been,* &c.

An easy method to learn Verbs.

This method is divided into two sections: the first teaches how to form the tenses of a verb, and the second how to form the persons of a tense.

§ I. *Rules for the formation of the Tenses of Regular Verbs.*

The PRESENT *of the infinitive*, the GERUND, the PARTICIPLE, the PRESENT, and the PRETERITE, *of the indicative*, are called the primitive tenses, because all others are formed from them according to the following rules.

Rule I. From the *present infinitive* are formed, 1. The *future*, by adding *ai* to the final of those which end with a consonant; as *donner, dormir*, infinitive; *je donnerai, je dormirai*, future; and by changing the final *e* into *ai*, in those which end with a vowel; as *lire, vendre*, infinitive; *je lirai, je vendrai*, future. 2. The *conditional*, by adding *ois* to the final of those which end with a consonant; as *chanter, punir*, infinitive; *je chanterois, je punirois*, conditional; and by changing *e* mute into *ois* in those which end with a vowel; as *plaire, répondre*, infinitive; *je plairois, je répondrois*, conditional.

Rule II. From the *gerund* are formed, 1. The *three persons plural of the present of the indicative*, by changing *ant* into *ons, ez, ent;* as *parlant, agissant*, gerund, *nous parlons, vous parlez, ils parlent; nous agissons, vous agissez, ils agissent.* 2. The *imperfect of the indicative*, by changing *ant* into *ois;* as *venant, connoissant*, gerund, *je venois, je connoissois.* 3. The *present of the subjunctive*, by changing *ant* into *e;* as *réduisant, écrivant*, gerund, *je réduise, j'écrive.*

Rule III. From the *participle* are formed, in all verbs, regular or irregular, all the *compound tenses*, by means of the auxiliary verbs *avoir*, or *être; aimé, fini, ouvert, venu, repenti*, participle; *j'ai aimé, j'avois fini, j'aurai*

ouvert, je serois venu, je me sois repenti; no exceptions to this rule.

Rule IV. From the *present of the indicative* is formed the *second person of the imperative,* by suppressing the pronoun *je;* as *j'aime, je viens, je connois,* pres. ind. *aime. viens, connois.* The *first* and *second persons plural of the imper.* are similar to the same persons in the *pres. ind.* only suppressing the pronouns *nous, vous;* as *nous finissons, vous plaisez,* ind. pret. *finissons, plaisez,* imperative.

Rule V. From the *preterite of the indicative* is formed the *subjunctive preterite,* by changing the final *ai* into *asse,* for the verbs of the first conjugation; as *je donnai, j'aimai,* pret. ind. *je donnasse, j'aimasse,* pret. subj. and by adding *se* to all those which end in *s,* as *j'agis, je lus, je tins,* pret. ind. *j'agisse, je lusse, je tinsse,* pret. subj. This fifth rule has no exceptions, not even in the irregular verbs.

The exceptions to rule the first are, the verbs of the fourth conjugation, which change *enir* into *iendrai* for the future, and into *iendrois* for the conditional; as *tenir, je tiendrai, je tiendrois;* and the verbs of the sixth conjugation, which change *oir* into *rai* for the future, and into *rois* for the conditional, as *recevoir, je recevrai, je recevrois.*

The exceptions to rule the second are the same verbs of the preceding exception, which do not form from the gerund, *the third person plural of the pres. ind.* nor the *three persons singular,* and *third person plural of the pres. subj.* But they form them from the *first person singular of the pres. ind.* by changing *s* into *nent, ne, nes, ne,* and *nent,* for the verbs in *enir;* and into *vent, ve, ves, ve, vent,* for the verbs in *evoir;* as *je viens, ils viennent, que je vienne, que tu viennes, qu'il vienne, qu'ils viennent; je reçois, ils reçoivent, que je reçoive, que tu reçoives, qu'il reçoive, qu'ils reçoivent.*

Verbs whose gerunds end in *oyant, uyant,* change *y* into *i* before an *e* mute, as *nettoyant, ils nettoient, appuyant que j'appuie.*

To give the learner a better idea of the foregoing rules, we shall give a table of the primitive tenses of the twelve regular conjugations.

Inf. pres.	*Gerund.*	*Participle.*	*Ind. pres.*	*Pret.*
1 Parler,	parlant,	parlé,	je parle,	je parlai.
2 Agir,	agissant,	agi,	j'agis,	j'agis.
3 Sentir,	sentant,	senti,	je sens,	je sentis.
4 Ouvrir,	ouvrant,	ouvert,	j'ouvre,	j'ouvris.
5 Tenir,	tenant,	tenu,	je tiens,	je tins.
6 Recevoir,	recevant,	reçu,	je reçois,	je reçus.
7 Plaire,	plaisant,	plu,	je plais,	je plus.
8 Craindre,	craignant,	craint,	je crains,	je craignis.
9 Connoître,	connoissant,	connu,	je connois,	je connus.
10 Instruire,	instruisant,	instruit,	j'instruis,	j'instruisis.
11 Vendre,	vendant,	vendu,	je vends,	je vendis.
12 Ecrire,	écrivant,	écrit,	j'écris,	j'écrivis.

§ II. *Rules for the Formation of Persons.*

RULE 1. *Pres. Ind.*

The first person ends either in *e*, *s*, or *x*. When it ends in *e*, the second adds an *s*, and the third is like the first; as *je parle, tu parles, il parle.*

When it ends in *s* or *x*, the second is like the first, and the third changes the final *s* or *x* into *t*; as *je lis, tu lis, il lit; je veux, tu veux, il veut.*

However, *s* is left out in the third person of verbs which end in *cs*, *ds*, or *ts*, in the first; as *je vaincs, tu vaincs, il vainc; je perds, tu perds, il perd; je mets, tu mets il met.*

The three persons plural end in *ons, ez, ent:* as *parlant,* ger. *nouz parlons, vous parlez, ils parlent;* plural of the pres. of the indicative.

The Exceptions are:

1. The verb *aller*, which makes *je vais, tu vas, il va; nous allons, vous allez, ils vont.*

2. The verb *avoir*, which makes *j'ai, tu as, il a, nous avons, vous avez, ils ont.*

3. *Etre*, which makes *je suis, tu es, il est, nous sommes, vous êtes, ils sont.*

4. *Dire*, and *redire*, which makes *vous dites*, and *vous redites.*

5. *Faire*, and its compounds which makes, *vous faites, ils font.*

RULE 2.

The persons of other tenses are formed from the first, either in regular or irregular verbs, by changing the final as follows:

IMPERFECT OF THE INDICATIVE.

Singular.			Plural.		
1	2	3	1	2	3
ois,	ois,	oit,	ions,	iez,	oient.

Preterite of the Indicative.

ai,	as,	a;	âmes,	âtes,	èrent.
is,	is,	it;	îmes,	îtes,	irent.
ins,	ins,	int;	înmes,	întes,	inrent.
us,	us,	ut;	ûmes,	ûtes,	urent.

Future.

rai,	ras,	ra;	rons,	rez,	ront.

Conditional.

rois,	rois,	roit;	rions,	riez,	roient.

Subjunctive Present.

e,	es,	e;	ions,	iez,	ent.

Preterite of the Subjunctive.

asse,	asses,	ât;	assions,	assiez,	assent.

isse,	isses,	ît;	issions,	issiez,	issent.
insse,	insses,	înt;	inssions,	inssiez,	inssent.
usse,	usses,	ût;	ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.

The only exceptions are the verb *être*, which makes in the subjunctive present : *je sois, tu sois, il soit, nous soyons, vous soyez, ils soient*, and the verb *avoir*, which make *j'aye, tu ayes, il ait, nous ayons, vous ayez, ils aient*.

OF ADVERBS.

The word Adverb *signifies joined to a* Verb.

The Adverb is a word indeclinable, which modifies a verb, a participle, or an adjective, and serves to give them an exact degree of signification. Example :

Dieu est *infiniment* juste ; il punira *sévèrement* les impies.
God is infinitely *just ; He will punish* severely *the impious.*

Most of the French adjectives become adverbs by altering their final according to the three following rules :

RULE I.

Adjectives which end in *ant* or *ent* become adverbs by changing the final *ant* into *amment*, and *ent* into *emment* ; as *constant, prudent, patient*, adjectives ; *constamment, prudemment, patiemment*, adverbs. The only exceptions are *lentement*, and *présentement*, from the adjectives *lent* and *présent*.

RULE II.

Adjectives which end in a vowel, become adverbs, by adding *ment* to the final ; as *sage, poli, ingenu*, adjectives ; *sagement, poliment, ingenûment*, adverbs. The adjectives *beau, fou, nouveau*, and *mou*, become adverbs by adding *ment* to their feminine *belle, folle, nouvelle*, and *molle: bellement, follement, nouvellement, mollement*.

RULE III.

Adjectives which end neither in a vowel, nor in *ant* or *ent* in the masculine singular, become adverbs by adding *ment* to their feminine termination; as *grand, doux, heureux*, adjectives masculine; *grande, douce, heureuse*, adjectives feminine*; *grandement, doucement, heureusement*, adverbs.

The *e* which precedes *ment* is mute in all adverbs formed from adjectives, except in the following, in which it takes an acute accent; *aisément, assurément, aveuglément, commodément, communément, conformément, délibérément, démésurément, désespérément, désordonnément, détérminément, effrontément, énormément, expressément, figurément, importunément, impunément, incommodément, inconsidérément, indéterminément, inespérément, inopinément, malaisément, modérément, nommément, obscurément, obstinément, opiniatrément, passionnément, posément, précisément, prématurément, privément, profondément, profusément, proportionnément, sensément, séparément, serrément, subordonnément.*

DIFFERENT SORTS OF ADVERBS.

Besides the great num ber of adverbs formed from adjectives according to the three preceding rules, there are many others, which may be divided into nine classes, according to their signification; they are as follows:

1. ADVERBS OF ORDER: as the *premièrement*, first; *secondement*, secondly; *troisièmement*, thirdly, &c. *devant*, before; *derrière*, behind; *après*, after; *ensuite*, afterwards, &c.

2. ADVERBS OF PLACE: as *où*, where; *d'où*, from whence; *ici*, here; *là*, there; *dedans*, within; *dehors*, without; *en haut*, above; *en bas*, below; *loin*, far; *près*, near, &c.

3. ADVERBS OF TIME: as *à présent*, now; *aujourd'hui*, to-day; *hier*, yesterday; *autrefois*, formerly; *bientôt*, soon; *dans peu*, shortly; *désormais*, hereafter, &c.

* For the formation of the feminine of adjectives see page 45 and 46.

4. ADVERBS OF QUANTITY: as *combien*, how much; *beaucoup*, much; *peu*, little; *assez*, enough; *tant*, so much; *autant*, as much; *trop*, too much; *trop peu*, too little, &c.

5. ADVERBS OF COMPARISON: as *comme*, as; *de même*, in the same manner; *aussi*, as; *autant*, as much *plus*, more; *moins*, less; *pareillement*, likewise, &c.

6. ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION: as *oui*, yes; *à la vérité*, indeed, *vraiment*, truly; *sans doute*, without doubt; *assurément*, assuredly; *certainement*, certainly, &c.

7. ADVERBS OF NEGATION: as *non*, no; *ne pas*, not; *point du tout*, not at all; *nullement*, by no means, &c.

8. ADVERBS OF INTERROGATION: as *quand*, when; *pourquoi*, why; *combien*, how much; *comment*, how; *où*, where, &c.

9. ADVERBS OF DOUBT: as *peut-être*, perhaps; *probablement*, very likely, &c.

PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are indeclinable words, so called from the Latin verb *præponere*, (which signifies to place before,) because they are always put in French before the word they govern. Example: *Ce qui se fait* dans *la passion, se fait souvent* contre *la raison, et nous donne* dans *la suite de grands sujets* de *repentir*. What is done *in* passion is often done *against* reason, and gives us *in* time great cause *of* repentance.

Prepositions are indeclinable. They serve to denote the several relations of *nouns*, *pronouns*, or *adverbs*, with one another. They are the following:

Prepositions which govern the Genitive Case.

à cause de, *on account of*,	à la réserve de, *excepting that*
à côté de, *by*,	à l'égard de, *with regard to*,
à couvert de, *secure from*,	à l'exception de, *excepted*,
à fleur de, *even with*,	à l'exclusion de, *excepting*,
à force de, *by dint of*,	à l'insu de, *unknown to*,
à l'abri de, *sheltered from*,	à l'opposite de, *over against*
à la faveur de, *by means of*,	à moins de, *under*,
à la manière de, *after the fashion*	à raison de, *at the rate of*,

à rebours de, *contrary to*,
au deçà de, *on this side*,
au dedans de, *within*,
au dehors de, *without*,
au delà de, *on that side*,
au derrière de, *behind*,
au dessous de, *under*,
au dessus de, *upon*,
au devant de, *before*,
au lieu de, *instead*,
au millieu de, *in the middle of*,
au moyen de, *by means of*
au niveau de, *even to*,
au péril de, *at the peril of*,
auprès de, *near*,
au prix de, *at the expense of*,
au risque de, *at the danger of*,
autour de, *around*,
au travers de, *through*,
aux dépens de, *at the expense of*,
aux environs de, *round about*,
en deçà de, *on this side*,
en dépit de, *in spite of*,
en présence de, *in presence of*,
ensuite de, *after*,
faute de, *for want of*,
hors de, *out of*,
le long de, *along*,
loin de, *far from*,
pour l'amour de, *for the sake of*
près de, *near*,
proche de, *nigh*,
tout auprès de, *close to*,
vis-à-vis de, *opposite to*.

Prepositions which govern the Accusative Case.

après, *after*,
à travers, *through*,
avant, *before*,
avec, *with*,
chez, *at*,
contre, *against*,
dans, *in*,
depuis, *since*,
derrière, *behind*,
dès, *from*,
devant, *before*,
durant, *during*,
en, *in*,
entre, *between*,
envers, *towards*,
environ, *about*,
excepté, *except*,
hormis, *except*, *but*,
malgré, *in spite of*,
moyennant, *for*,
nonobstant, *notwithstanding*,
outre, *besides*,
par, *by*,
parmi, *among*,
pendant, *during*,
pour, *for*,
proche, *near*,
sans, *without*,
sauf, *safe*,
selon, *according to*,
sous, *under*,
suivant, *according to*,
sur, *upon*,
touchant, *concerning*,
vers, *towards*.

Observe, that the prepositions preceded in French by *à*, *au*, or *aux*, govern the genitive case, and that most others require the accusative after them.

These four *conformément à*, according to; *jusqu'à*, as far as; *par rapport à*, with respect to; *quant à*, as for; govern the dative case.

Prepositions joined to a Verb.

Many prepositions come in English after a verb, and make a part of its signification; such are the following, which are not expressed in French:

abattre, *to pull down.*
abandonner, *to give up.*
cacheter, *to seal up.*
combler, *to fill up.*
déchirer, *to tear off.*
déraciner, *to root out.*
s'envoler, *to fly away.*
époudrer, *to wipe off.*
s'évanouir, *to faint away.*
expulser, *to turn out.*
extirper, *to root out.*
se lever, *to get up.*
mander, *to send for.*
ôter, *to take away.*
paraphraser, *to comment upon.*
ramener, *to bring back.*
trouver, *to find out.*
monter, *to go up.*
descendre, *to go down.*
entrer, *to come in.*
sortir, *to go out.*
regarder, *to look out.*
chercher, *to look for.*
admirer, *to wonder at.*
attendre, *to wait for.*

VERBS COMPOSED WITH A PREPOSITION.

The English give to the most part of their verbs a signification quite opposite to the primitive one, by prefixing to them the preposition *un* or *dis*. The French do the same, prefixing *dés* to the words which begin with a *vowel* or *h* mute; and *dé* to those which begin with a consonant. Example:

border, *to border.*
déborder, *to unborder.*

charger, *to load.*
décharger, *to unload.*

faire, *to do.*
défaire, *to undo*

paver, *to pave.*
dépaver, *to unpave.*

apprendre, *to learn.*
désapprendre, *to unlearn.*

habiller, *to dress.*
déshabiller, *to undress.*

friser, *to curl.* | tromper, *to deceive.*
défriser, *to uncurl.* | détromper, *to undeceive.*

lacer, *to lace.* | voiler, *to veil.*
délacer, *to unlace.* | dévoiler, *to unveil.*

lier, *to tie.* | tordre, *to twist.*
délier, *to untie.* | détordre, *to untwist.*

compter, *to count.* | approuver, *to approve.*
décompter, *to discount.* | désapprouver, *to disapprove.*

se fier, *to trust.* | armer, *to arm.*
se défier, *to distrust.* | désarmer, *to disarm.*

couvrir, *to cover.* | honorer, *to honour.*
découvrir, *to discover.* | déshonorer, *to dishonour.*

plaire, *to please.* | obéir, *to obey.*
déplaire, *to displease.* | désobéir, *to disobey.*

posséder, *to possess.* | unir, *to unite.*
déposséder, *to dispossess.* | désunir, *to disunite.*

The English put the word *again*, after a verb, to express the reiteration of a thing. The French express the reiteration by prefixing the preposition *re* to the verb, when it begins with a consonant, and *r* only when it begins with a vowel or *h* mute. Thus we say,

appeler, *to call.* | lire, *to read.*
rappeler, *to call again.* | relire, *to read again.*

cacheter, *to seal up.* | mesurer, *to measure.*
recacheter, *to seal up again.* | remesurer, *to measure again.*

composer, *to compose.* | paroître, *to appear.*
recomposer, *to compose again.* | reparoître, *to appear again.*

demander, *to ask.* | plisser, *to plait.*
redemander, *to ask again.* | replisser, *to plait again.*

faire, *to do.* | prendre, *to take.*
refaire, *to do again.* | reprendre, *to take again.*

embarquer, *to embark.* | tomber, *to fall.*
rembarquer, *to embark again.* | retomber, *to fall again.*

trouver, *to find.*
retrouver, *to find again.*

venir, *to come.*
revenir, *to come again.*

vendre, *to sell.*
revendre, *to sell again.*

There are many other prepositions which come immediately after a verb in English, and change its signification; such are *away, back, upon, out, for, with, off,* &c. but these cannot be reduced to rules, and can be learned by practice only.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions are indeclinable words, used in a sentence to join together the different parts of speech. Example:

Parlez peu et *pensez bien,* si *vous voulez qu'on vous regarde comme un homme d'esprit;*

Speak little *and* think much, *if* you would be looked upon as a man of sense.

In this sentence, *et,* and *si,* are two conjunctions, which shew the dependency and conjunction of the words which compose it.

Conjunctions are simple or compound; the simple consist of one word, as *et, ou, aussi, ni,* &c. the compound are formed of two or more words, such as *afin que, au lieu que, si ce n'est que.* Both simple and compound may be divided into *ten species,* called,

1. Copulative, as *et,* and; *comme,* as; *de sorte que,* so that, &c.
2. Disjunctive; as *ou,* or; *ou bien,* else; *ni,* neither, &c.
3. Adversative, as *néanmoins,* nevertheless, &c.
4. Conditional, as, *si,* if; *pourvu que,* provided, &c.
5. Concessive, as *d'accord,* granted; *en effet,* really, &c.
6. Comparative, as *aussi bien que,* as well as, &c.
7. Causal, as *parce que,* because, &c.
8. Interrogative, as, *pourquoi,* why; *quand,* when, &c.
9. Continuative, as *de plus,* moreover; *encore,* yet, &c.
10. Concluding, as *donc,* therefore; *ainsi,* thus, &c.

The above explanation being too abstract for many young students, I will dispose the conjunctions in three alphabetical lists. *The first* contains the conjunctions which govern the infinitive mood; *the second* enumerates those which govern the subjunctive; and the third comprehends all others.

1. *Conjunctions which govern the Infinitive.*

A fin de, *in order to.*
à moins de, *unless.*
avant de, *before.*
au lieu de, *instead of.*
loin de, *far from.*
de crainte de, *for fear of.*
de peur de, *for fear of.*
faute de, *for want of.*
jusqu'à, *till.*
plutôt que de, *rather than.*
pour, *for.*
sans, *without.*

2. *Conjunctions which govern the Subjunctive.*

A fin que, *that.*
à moins que, *unless.*
avant que, *before.*
au cas que, *in case that.*
bien que, *though.*
de crainte que, *for fear.*
de peur que, *lest.*
en cas que, *if.*
encore que, *though.*
jusqu'à ce que, *till.*
loin que, *far from.*
malgré que, *for all that.*
nonobstant que, *for all that.*
non pas que, *not that.*
posé que, *suppose that.*
pourvu que, *provided.*
quoique, *though.*
sans que, *without.*
soit que, *whether.*
supposé que, *suppose that.*
Dieu veuille que, *God grant.*
pour que, *that.*

3. *Conjunctions which govern neither the Infinitive nor the Subjunctive.*

A cause que, *because.*
à condition que, *provided.*
ainsi, *thus.*
ainsi que, *as.*
après que, *after.*
au lieu que, *whereas.*
au moins, *at least.*
aussi, *also.*
aussi bien que, *as well as.*
aussitôt que, *as soon as.*
au surplus, *moreover.*
autant que, *as much.*
car, *for.*
cependant, *however.*
c'est pourquoi, *therefore.*
comme, *as.*
d'abord que, *as soon as.*
d'ailleurs, *besides.*

d'autant que, *whereas.*
de façon que, *so that.*
depuis que, *since.*
de plus, *moreover.*
de sorte que, *so that.*
dès que, *as soon as.*
donc, *then.*
durant que, *during.*
et, *and.*
en effet, *indeed.*
enfin, *in short.*
ensuite, *afterwards.*
joint à cela, *moreover.*
lorsque, *when.*
mais, *but.*
même, *even.*
néanmoins, *nevertheless.*
ni, *nor.*
non plus, *neither.*
non-seulement, *not only.*
ou bien, *or else.*
ou, *or.*
outre, *besides.*
outre cela, *add to that.*
parce que, *because.*
pendant que, *while.*
pour lors, *then.*
pourquoi, *why.*
pourtant, *however.*
puis, *then.*
puisque, *since.*
quand, *when.*
quand même, *although.*
selon que, *according as.*
si, *if.*
si bien que, *so that.*
si ce n'est que, *except that.*
sinon, *else.*
sitôt que, *as soon as.*
suivant que, *according as.*
sur quoi, *whereupon.*
surtout, *especially.*
tandis que, *whilst.*
tant que, *as long as.*
toutefois, *however.*

OBSERVE, that many adverbs become prepositions, when they govern a noun, a pronoun or a verb; as *marchez devant*, walk before, adverb; *marchez devant moi*, walk before me, preposition. Some prepositions in their turn become conjunctions, when they are used to join different parts of speech, as *faites cela pour moi*, do it for me, preposition; *je le ferai pour vous plaire*, I will do it to please you, conjunction.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections are some indeclinable words used to express the affections of the mind, either of *joy, grief, fear, aversion, derision, surprise*, &c.

1. Of joy, as	bon! *well!* vive la joie! *huzza!*
2. Of grief, as	hélas! *alas!* ah! *hah!* &c.
3. Of fear, as	ah! *ah!* hélas! *alas!* hé! *oh!* &c.
4. Of aversion, as	fi! *fye upon!* fi donc! *fye upon.*
5. Of derision,	oh! *oh!* zest! *pshaw!*
6. Of surprise, as	bon Dieu! *Good God!* eh! *lack a day.*
7. Of encouraging, as	allons! *come on!* courage! *cheer up!*
8. To stop, as	holà! *hold!* tout beau! *softly!*

PART III.

OF SYNTAX *.

SYNTAX is the regular construction of the different parts of speech, conformably to the rules of grammar, and the genius of a language.

Construction supposes three things in every tongue: the *union* of words, their *concord*, and their *disposition:* these objects are fully explained in the following Rules, which point out the different genius of each language with accuracy and precision.

Syntax is here divided into twenty-four chapters: the chapters are again divided into sections when occasion requires it.

CHAPTER I.

Use of the French Articles.

This chapter is divided into *four* sections, *The first* explains the several circumstances in which articles are used in both languages; *the second* enumerates the cases in which

* The learner must not begin the second chapter of the syntax, till he understands the rules of the first; nor the third, before he knows the second; and so on for all others. It is also proper that he should repeat at least once a week the principal rules which he has already learnt, lest he should forget them.

the article is used in French, and not in English: *the third* describes those in which it is used in English and not in French: *the fourth* contains all the circumstances in which both languages take no article.

SECTION THE FIRST.

Article used in French and in English.

RULE 1.——un, une, *a, an.*

The indefinite article (*un*, masc. *une*, fem. in English, *a* or *an*) is used in both languages to express a substantive singular in an indeterminate manner. Examples:

A book, *a* house, *a* friend, *a* philosopher.
Un *livre*, une *maison*, un *ami*, un philosophe.
England is *a* fruitful country. *A* wise man.
L'Angleterre est un *pays fertile*. Un *homme sage*.

RULE 2.——le, la, les, *the.*

The definite article (*le*, masc. *la*, fem. *l'* of both genders before a vowel or *h* mute, *les* for the plural of both genders, in English *the*) is used in both languages before a substantive, taken in a particular and specified sense, that is to say, before a noun which denotes an individual distinction. Examples:

The house of my father. *The* book which I read.
La *maison de mon père*. Le *livre que je lis*.
The horse which I have sold to you is excellent.
Le *cheval que je vous ai vendu est excellent*.

RULE 3.——*a* or *an* rendered by *le, la, les.*

The English make use of the indefinite article *a* or *an* before nouns of *measure, weight,* and *number,* when they want to express how much a thing is worth, or sold for; the French on the contrary, use the definite article, *le, la, les,* in such cases. Examples:

Measure.	That lace is worth a crown *a* yard. *Cette dentelle vaut un écu* la *verge.* Coals cost two shillings *a* bushel. *Le charbon coûte deux schellings* le *boisseau.*
Weight.	Butter is sold for ten-pence *a* pound. *Le beurre se vend dix sous* la *livre.*
Number.	Eggs are worth fifteen-pence *a* dozen. *Les œufs valent quinze sous* la *douzaine.*

SECTION THE SECOND.

Article used in French and not in English.

RULE 4.——*le, la, les,* not *the.*

The definite article *(le, la, les,)* is used in French and ot in English, before all substantives taken in the whole xtent of their signification. Examples:

Men are mortal;	Les *hommes sont mortels.*
God hates sinners;	*Dieu hait* les *pécheurs.*
Virtue is amiable;	La *vertu est aimable.*
Vice is odious;	Le *vice est odieux.*

The words *men, sinners, virtue,* and *vice,* are taken in a general sense; because all men are mortal, God hates all sinners, all virtues are amiable, and all vices odious.

RULE 5.——*le, la, les,* not *the.*

The definite article *(le, la, les,)* is used in French and not in English, before the names of kingdoms, countries, and provinces. Examples:

France and England are two powerful kingdoms.
La *France et* l'*Angleterre sont deux puissans royaumes.*
I have passed through Spain, Switzerland, and Germany.
J'ai passé par l'*Espagne,* la *Suisse, et* l'*Allemagne.*

These nouns usually take no article, when they are in the genitive or ablative case, or after the preposition *en*. Examples:

Les royaumes de *France et* d'*Angleterre sont puissans.*
J'ai voyagé en *Italie. J'arrive* d'*Allemagne. Je viens* de *Russie.*

However, the names of distant countries take always the article, such are *le Bengal, le Canada, le Japon, le Mexique, le Pérou,* &c. Some names of provinces follow the same rule; as *le Dauphiné, le Maine, le Perche, le Mantouan, le Gévaudan,* &c. Thus we say, *je vais au Japon,* and not *en Japon; j'arrive* du *Canada, l'or* du *Pérou.*

N. B. When the names of kingdoms and republics are the same as those of their capital towns, they are considered as proper names, and as such take no article; of this sort are *Naples, Venise,* and *Gênes;* thus we say, *Venise est une république;* not *la Venise est une république.*

RULE 6.—*le, la, les.*

The definitive article *(le, la, les,)* is used in French before the adjectives substantively used; whether it is used or not in English. Examples:

The industrious are praised, and the slothful punished;
Les *diligens sont loués et* les *paresseux punis.*
Black and white are two opposite colours;
Le *noir et* le *blanc sont deux couleurs opposées.*

RULE 7.—*du, de la, des,* some.

The partitive article *(du* m. sing. *de la* f. *de l'* before a vowel or *h* m. and *des* plur. of both genders) is used in French before a substantive, when we want to express an indeterminate number or portion of a thing; this article answers to the English word *some,* expressed or understood. Examples:

Give me *some* bread, *some* meat, and *some* eggs;
Donnez moi du *pain,* de la *viande,* et des *œufs.*
I have bought paper, ink, and pens;
J'ai acheté du *papier,* de l'*encre, et* des *plumes.*

RULE.—de instead of *du, de la, des.*

If a substantive, taken in a partitive sense as before, is preceded in French by an adjective, the preposition *de* is used for both genders and numbers, instead of the partitive article *du, de la, des.* Examples:

Donnez-moi de *bon pain,* de *bonne viande, et* de *bons œufs.*
J'ai acheté de *mauvais papier, et* de *mauvaise encre.*

N. B. Every time the words *some* or *any,* are, or can be used in English before a substantive, the partitive article *du, de la, des,* or the preposition *de,* must be used in French, according to the distinction of the two preceding rules.

RULE 9.—*Where the Article is required.*

Every noun which is *the nominative,* or *the case* of a verb, must have in French one of the three articles, *definite, indefinite,* or *partitive,* of which before. Examples:

Gold and silver cannot render man happy;
L'*or et* l'*argent ne sauroient rendre* l'*homme heureux.*
Spain produces wine, oranges, and olives;
L'*Espagne produit* du *vin,* des *oranges, et* des *olives.*

N. B. I do not comprehend in this rule the proper names of persons and towns, the substantives preceded by a pronoun or an adjective of number, neither of which have any article, as we shall see in the rules 14th and 15th.

RULE 10.—*Repetition of the Articles.*

The articles are repeated in French before every substantive, and agree with them in gender and number; in English, on the contrary they are indeclinable. Examples:

The genius of the French tongue consists in clearness, purity, elegance, and strength;
Le génie de la langue Françoise consiste dans la *clarté* la *pureté,* l'*élégance, et* la *force.*
I have bought meat, cheese, and fruits;
J'ai acheté de la *viande,* du *fromage, et* des *fruits.*

SECTION THE THIRD.

Articles used in English and not in French.

RULE 11.—*the*, not *le, la, les.*

The definite article *(the)* is used in English, and not in French, before the ordinal numbers, *the first, the second, the third; the fourth*, &c. used in quotations. Examples:

Book *the* first, chapter *the* sixth, section *the* ninth;
Livre premier, chapitre six, section neuvième.

No article is used in French before the ordinal numbers, which come after the Christian names of sovereigns. Examples:

Charles *the* first, Philip *the* second, George *the* third;*
Charles premier, Philippe second, George trois.

RULE 12.—*a*, not *un* or *une.*

The indefinite article *(a* or *an)* is used in English, and not in French, before nouns which express the *titles, professions, trade, country*, or any other attribute of the substantive antecedent. Examples:

My father was *a* nobleman;	*Mon père étoit noble.*
Your brother is *a* physician;	*Votre frère est médecin.*
Are you *a* Frenchman?	*Etes-vous François?*

RULE 13.—*a*, not *un* or *une.*

The indefinite article *(a* or *an)* is also used in English, and not in French, in the four following cases:

1. Before a substantive used to qualify another. Example:

The King was received in triumph, *an* honour he deserved;
Le Roi fut reçu en triomphe, honneur qu'il méritoit bien.

* Observe, by the preceding examples, that the ordinal numbers (the two first excepted) are rendered in French by the cardinal, after the names of Sovereigns, and also often in quotations

2. Before a substantive which specifies or explains the thing spoken of. Example:

I have read to-day the Busy Body, *an* esteemed comedy;
J'ai lu aujourd'hui l'Empressé, comédie estimée.

3. In the title of a book, or of any performance. Example:

A grammar of the French tongue;
Grammaire de la langue Françoise.

4. After the word *what*, used to express surprise. Example:

What *a* noise you make!
Quel bruit vous faites!

SECTION THE FOURTH.

No Article used in French nor in English.

RULE 14.—*No Article in either Language.*

No article is used in French or English before the word *God (Dieu,)* nor before the proper names of *heathen deities*, of *men, women, towns, villages, days*, or *months*. Examples:

God is present every where;
*Dieu est présent partout**.
Cicero and Demosthenes were two great orators;
Cicéron et Démosthènes étoient deux grands orateurs.
London and Paris are two large capital cities;
Londres et Paris sont deux grandes capitales.
Jupiter and Venus were heathen divinities.
Jupiter et Vénus étoient des divinités païennes.

Some (but few) proper names of persons take an article

* The definite article should be used before the proper names, if they were in the plural, or particularized. Examples: *le Dieu des Chrétiens est tout-puissant. Les Cicérons sont rares.*

in French, such are, *l'Arioste, le Tasse, l'Arétin, le Titien*, &c. *

Some names of towns take also an article; such are, *la Haie, l' Aigle, la Rochelle, le Hâvre, le Mans*, &c.

RULE 15.—*No Article in either Language.*

No article is used in French or in English, before a substantive preceded by any pronoun whatever. Examples:

My friend will come to-morrow;	*Mon ami viendra demain.*
This house is new;	*Cette maison est neuve.*
What's o'clock now?	*Quelle heure est-il à présent?*

RULE 16.—*The Preposition* de.

No article (but the preposition *de*) is used in French after the words *espèce, sorte, genre, mélange;* or any other of the same signification. Examples:

Man is exposed to all sorts of infirmities;
L'homme est sujet à toutes sortes d'*infirmités.*
Jealousy is a mixture of love and hatred, of fear and despair;
La jalousie est un mélange d'*amour et* de *haine*, de *crainte et* de *désespoir.*

RULE 17.—*Transposition of Words.*

No article (but the preposition *de*) is used before the latter of two substantives, when it expresses the *nature, matter, species, quality*, or *country* of the first. Examples:

A head-ach, a tooth-ach;	*Un mal* de *tête, un mal* de *dent.*
A gold watch, silk stockings;	*Une montre* d'*or, des bas* de *soie.*
Spanish wool, Burgundy wine;	*De la laine* d'*Espagne, du vin* de *Bourgogne.*

* Before French proper names of persons, preceded by the article *le*, the prepositions *de* and *à* are never contracted with that article; thus we say *les tableaux de le Brun*, and not *du Brun;* except *le Poussin, les tableaux du Poussin.*

The English often make a transposition of words, and place the genitive case the first; this transposition is not allowed in French, and the order must be reversed; thus we say,

The king's guards; *les gardes du roi.*
A chambermaid; *une fille de chambre.*
Diana's anger was the cause of Acteon's death;
La colère de Diane causa la mort d'Actéon.

RULE 18.—*The Preposition* de.

No article (but the preposition *de*) is used in French after words of quantity, measure, scarcity, or exclusion; as, *abondance,* plenty; *assez,* enough; *aune,* ell; *autant,* as much; *beaucoup,* much; *boisseau,* bushel; *combien,* how many; *livre,* pound; *nombre,* number; *jamais,* never; *moins,* less; *pas* or *point,* no; *peu,* little; *pinte,* pint; *pot,* pot; *plus,* more; *quantité,* quantity; *rien,* nothing; *tant,* so many; *trop,* too much; *verge,* yard, &c. Examples:

You have much wit;	*Vous avez beaucoup* d'*esprit.*
He has no prudence;	*Il n'a point* de *prudence.*
You make too much noise;	*Vous faites trop* de *bruit.*
I have but little money;	*Je n'ai que peu* d'*argent.*

Note 1. The words *que* and *quoi,* used in a sentence of admiration, are also followed by *de.* Example:

How many sorrows!	*Que* de *chagrins!*
What more sad!	*Quoi* de *plus triste!*

Note 2. The word *bien* is always followed by an article, and *beaucoup* is never.

He has a great many friends;
Il a bien des *amis, il a beaucoup* d'*amis.*

RULE 19.—*The Preposition* de.

No article (but the preposition *de*) is used in French, when the substantive is taken in a general sense.

1. After an adjective which governs the genitive case. Examples:

You are praise-worthy; *Vous êtes digne* de *louanges.*
Human life is full of disappointments;
La vie humaine est pleine de *revers.*

2. After the verbs and participles which are followed in English by the word *with.* Examples:

You are puffed up with pride; *Vous êtes bouffi* d'*orgueil.*
Fill up the bottle with wine; *Emplissez la bouteille* de *vin.*

But when the substantive is specified, the article must be used. Examples:

He deserves the praises which are given to him;
Il est digne des *louanges qu'on lui donne.*
His life was filled up with the most dreadful misfortunes;
Sa vie fut remplie des *plus affreux revers.*

RULE 20.—*Cases where no Article is used.*

1. No article is used in either language before nouns which form but one idea with the verb which precedes them; such may be discriminated by observing that they are, or could be expressed by one word in English, as in the following examples:

To pity the unfortunate; *Avoir pitié des malheureux.*
To envy the happiness of others;
Porter envie au bonheur d'autrui.
To visit a friend; *Rendre visite à un ami.*

2. The article is not used after the prepositions *sans, avec,* or *par,* when the noun following forms with them a kind of adverb. Examples:

You speak elegantly; *Vous parlez* avec *élégance.*
To vanquish without danger, is to triumph without glory;
A vaincre sans *péril, on triomphe* sans *gloire.*
I have travelled by land and by sea;
J'ai voyagé par *terre et* par *mer.*

3. The article is not used before the cardinal numbers, *un,* one; *deux,* two; *trois,* three, &c. Examples:

Lend me twenty pounds;	*Prêtez-moi vingt livres.*
I have six oranges;	*J'ai six oranges.*

Nevertheless, the definite article masculine, *(le, les,)* is used in French as in English before the cardinal numbers, when speaking of cards, of things which have a fixed number, of the date of the month, or of a particular number specified by a relative pronoun; thus we say, with an article in both languages, *le huit de cœur*, the eight of heart; *les quatre saisons*, the four seasons; *rendez-moi les vingt livres que je vous prêtai le dix de Mars*, return me the twenty pounds I lent you on the tenth of March.

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF SUBSTANTIVES.

RULE 21.—*Two Substantives in the same Case.*

When there is a conjunction between two nouns they must be put in the same case; and if a substantive is preceded by a preposition, that preposition is usually repeated in French before all other substantives governed by it. Examples:

Your advice pleased the king, the minister, and the parliament;

Votre conseil plut au *roi*, au *ministre, et* au *parlement.*

A man without religion is in a state of doubt and confusion, fear and distrust;

Un homme sans religion est dans un état de *doute et* de *confusion,* de *crainte et* de *défiance.*

RULE 22.—*The latter of two Substantives is put in the Genitive.*

The latter of two substantives relating to each other is generally put in the genitive case in French, whether it is in the genitive or dative in English. Examples:

Impious men are enemies *to* virtue;
Les impies sont ennemis de la *vertu.*
The dog is a friend to man; *Le chien est l'ami* de *l'homme.*

RULE 23.—Noun in the Dative.

When two substantives make a compound word in English, their order is inverted in French, and the preposition *à* intervenes, when the one expresses the use of the other; as

Gun-powder;	*De la poudre à canon.*
Fire-arms;	*Des armes à feu.*
A dining-room;	*Un salle à manger.*

It is preceded by *au*, *à la*, or *aux*, when it signifies something proper to drink, or to eat; as

Call the oyster-woman;	*Appelez la femme* aux *huîtres.*
Where is the rabbit-man?	*Où est l'homme* aux *lapins?*

RULE 24.—A Noun collective general.

A noun collective general (that is to say, representing the whole object,) such as the words *peuple, nation, armée, flotte,* &c. requires that the *adjectives, pronouns,* and *verbs* to which it has reference should be always in the singular. Examples:

The great French army was totally defeated;
La grande armée Françoise fut *entièrement* défaite.
The whole fleet is at sea, it set sail yesterday morning;
Toute la flotte est en mer, elle partit *hier matin.*

RULE 25.—A Noun collective partitive.

A noun collective partitive (that is, which represents only a part of the whole object,) such as *foule, nombre, multitude,* &c. followed by a genitive plural, governs the verb and the pronoun in the singular, if it is preceded by a definite article; but if not, it governs them in the plural. Examples:

The multitude of foreigners make bread dear;
La multitude des étrangers rend *le pain cher;*—singular.
A multitude of christians are led astray every day;
Une multitude de chrétiens s'égarent *tous les jours;*—plural

The reason of this difference is, that the collective is a substantive when preceded by *le, la, les,* and a kind of adjective when not: in the first case the verb agrees with the collective, and in the second with the substantive which comes after the collective.

N. B. The verb is always put in the plural after the words *la plupart, beaucoup, nombre,* unless they are followed by a substantive singular. Example: *la plupart le croient; la plupart du monde* le croit.

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES*.

This Chapter, for the sake of order and perspicuity, is divided into four sections. *The first* explains the concord and the right placing of adjectives; *the second* treats of their government; *the third* has for object the adjectives of dimension; and *the fourth* comprehends whatever concerns the construction of comparatives and superlatives.

SECTION THE FIRST.

Of the Concord and right Position of Adjectives.

RULE 26.—All Adjectives are declinable.

All adjectives are declinable in French, and agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they are

* For the formation of the feminine of adjectives, see pages 45 and 46; their plural is formed from the singular, like that of substantives, of which before, page 41.

joined; in English, on the contrary, they are all indeclinable. Examples:

A *pious* man; a *pious* woman; *pious* girls;
Un homme pieux. *une femme* pieuse. *des filles* pieuses.
This picture cost me dear, but it is *fine;*
Ce tableau me coûte cher, mais il est beau.
This house cost me dear, but it is *fine;*
Cette maison me coûte cher, mais elle est belle.

RULE 27.—*Adjectives agree with the last Substantive.*

When an adjective or a participle refers to several substantives of things, and is of the number of those which are placed after the substantives, it agrees with the last, if it is not separated from the substantives by any verb; but if the adjective were any of those mentioned in the rule 30, it must be repeated before every substantive, and agrees with each. Examples:

I have found the door and the window *shut;*
J'ai trouvé la porte et la fenêtre fermée;—singular.
He has an *absolute* power and authority;
Il a un pouvoir et une autorité absolue.
She has a *pretty* bird, and a *pretty* cage;
Elle a un joli *oiseau, et une* jolie *cage.*

RULE 28.—*Adjectives relating to Nouns of different Gender.*

When an adjective refers to several substantives of persons, or even to several substantives of things, but is separated from them, it is always put in the plural feminine, if the substantives are feminine, but if they are both masc. or of different genders it is put in the plural masculine. Examples:

He made his father and mother *happy;*
Il rendit son père et sa mère heureux.
His courage and boldness seem *astonishing* to me;
Son courage et sa hardiesse me paroissent étonnans;—pl.m.
Your mother and sister are *learned;*
Votre mère et votre sœur sont savantes;—pl. f.

My brother and sister are *dead;*
Mon frère et ma sœur sont morts; *(not sont mortes.)*

RULE 29.—Where Adjectives ought to be placed.

When two or more adjectives refer to the same substantive, they usually follow it in French. Examples:

An ingenious sensible man;	*Un homme ingénieux et sensible.*
A long tedious book;	*Un livre long et ennuyeux.*
A wise and virtuous woman;	*Une femme sage et vertueuse.*
A young liberal prince;	*Un prince jeune et libéral.*

RULE 30.—Adjectives placed before the Substantive.

The adjectives, ***beau***, fine; ***bon***, good, *grand*, great; *gros*, big; *jeune*, young; *mauvais*, bad; *méchant*, wicked; *meilleur*, better; *moindre*, less; *petit*, little; *saint*, holy; *vieux*, old; those of number, and all the *possessive*, *demonstrative*, or *indeterminate* pronouns (which some grammarians consider as mere adjectives,) precede in French as in English the substantive to which they are joined. Examples:

We have lost a *great* general in this war;
Nous avons perdu un grand *général dans cette guerre.*
Young men believe they shall live long;
Les jeunes *gens croient qu'ils vivront long-temps.*

Note 1. The adjective *cher*, dear, comes before the substantive, when it denotes affection, as *mon cher père, ma chère mère;* my dear father, my dear mother; it comes after when it denotes the price of a thing, as un livre *cher*, a dear book; une maison *chère*, a dear house.

Note 2. We say *un grand homme*, for a great man, and *un homme grand*, for a tall man; *une grosse femme*, for a fat woman; and *une femme grosse*, for a woman with child; *une sage-femme*, for a midwife; and *une femme sage*, for a modest or wise woman; *un galant homme*, for a man of honour, and *un homme galant*, for a courtier.

RULE.—Adjectives placed after the Substantive.

The adjectives not mentioned in the preceding rule are usually placed in French after the substantive which they

qualify; in English, on the contrary, they are always placed before. Examples:

Grateful people are like those *fruitful* lands which give more than they receive;

Les personnes reconnoissantes *ressemblent à des terres* fertiles, *qui donnent plus qu'elles ne reçoivent.*

Public good is preferable to *private* interest.

Le bien public *est préférable à l'intérêt* particulier.

Note. Adjectives which express some moral qualities, may sometimes be placed before or after the substantive; we may say, for instance, *un ami fidèle,* or *un fidèle ami,* a faithful friend; but this is not often the case, therefore I advise the learner to put them after.

Observe, We always put after the substantives, 1. The adjectives derived from verbs: as, *des idées embrouillées,* confused ideas. 2. Those of figure or colour, as *une table* ronde, a round table; *un habit* noir, a black coat. 3. Those which end in *ique, esque, ile, ule,* or *able, as un esprit* pacifique, a pacific mind; *une figure* grotesque, an odd figure; *une tâche* facile, an easy task; *une femme* crédule, a credulous woman. 4. Those of nations, as *la constitution* Angloise, the constitution of England. 5. Those which may be substantively used, and in general all those not mentioned in Rule 30.

SECTION THE SECOND.

Of the Government of Adjectives.

RULE 32.—*Adjectives which govern the Genitive Case.*

1. Adjectives and participles which denote *plenty* or *scarcity,* and in general all those which are followed in English by the prepositions *of, from, with,* or *by,* govern in French the genitive or ablative case. Examples:

I am deprived of every thing; *Je suis privé* de *tout.*

The queen is loaded with honour;
La reine est comblée d'*honneur*.
Your sisters are arrived from France;
Vos sœurs sont arrivées de *France*.

2. The following: *accusé, aisé, avide, capable, content, digne, fatigué, furieux, incapable, indigne, joyeux, las, libre, mécontent, plein, ravi, vide,* govern also the genitive case. Example: he is praise-worthy; *il est digne de louanges.*

RULE 33.—*Adjectives which govern the Dative.*

1. Adjectives which denote *aptness, fitness, inclination, ease, readiness,* or *any habit,* govern in French the noun in the dative case, and most commonly the verb in the infinitive with *à*. Examples:

He is fit for any thing; *il est propre* à *tout.*
That is easy to say; *Cela est facile* à *dire.*
A disturbed mind is not fit to discharge its duties;
Une esprit troublé n'est pas propre à *remplir son devoir.*

2. The following: *adroit, agréable, aisé, ardent, beau, bon, conforme, contraire, enclin, facile, habile, ingénieux, inutile, lent, prêt, propre, semblable, sujet, utile,* govern the noun in the dative case, and the verb in the infinitive with *à*; Example: he is liable to mistake; *il est sujet* à *se tromper.*

3. Some adjectives govern the dative in French, and the genitive in English, such are *attentif* à, heedful of; *sensible* à, sensible of; *insensible* à, insensible of. Example: I am sensible *of* your kindness; *je suis sensible* à *vos bontés.*

RULE 34.—*Adjectives followed by* à *or* envers.

Some adjectives are followed in French by the preposition *à*, and in English by the preposition *in*; such are, *curieux à*, curious in; *exact à*, precise in; *habile à*, skilful in; *patient à*, patient in; *zélé à*, zealous in. Examples:

You are skilful *in* doing every thing;
Vous êtes habile à *tout faire.*

I am precise *in* my engagements.
Je suis exact à *mes engagemens.*

Others are often followed in French by the preposition *envers*, and in English by the preposition *to*; such are, *affable envers*, affable to; *bon envers*, good to; *cruel envers*, cruel to; *poli envers*, civil to. Example:

We must be civil to every body.
Il faut être poli envers *tout le monde.*

SECTION THE THIRD.

Adjectives of Dimension.

RULE 35.—*de haut*, or *de hauteur*, high.

The adjectives of dimension can be rendered in French by an adjective, or by a substantive; thus, *high*, can be expressed by *de haut*, or *de hauteur*; *long*, by *de long*, or *de longeur*; *broad*, by *de large*, or *de largeur*; *deep* must be expressed by *de profondeur*, not by *de profond*, and in general the substantive is more elegantly used than the adjective.

It must be remembered always to put the preposition *de* before the words of dimension and number, if they are not preceded by a verb. Examples:

A tower two hundred feet high:
Une tour de *deux cents pieds* de *haut*, *or*, de *hauteur.*
A table six feet long;
Une table de *six pieds* de *long*, *or*, de *longueur*
A river twenty feet deep;
Une rivière de *vingt pieds* de *profondeur*, (*not* de *profond.*)

RULE 36.—avoir *instead of* to be, *before the Adjectives of Dimension.*

To express the *height*, *depth*, or *breadth* of an object, the English make use of the verb *to be*, and the French of the verb *avoir*, as they always do before a word of number.

N. B. The preposition *de,* is left out after the verb *avoir,* but it remains before the word of dimension. Examples:

This tower *is* two hundred feet high;
Cette tour a *deux cents pieds* de *hauteur.*
That table *is* six feet long;
Cette table a *six pieds* de *longueur.*
That river *is* twenty feet deep;
Cette rivière a *vingt pieds* de *profondeur.*

SECTION THE FOURTH.

*Of Comparatives and Superlatives**.

RULE 37.—as, *expressed by* que, *after a Comparative.*

The word *as,* used in English after a comparative of *equality* or *inferiority,* is always expressed in French by *que,* and never by *comme.* Examples:

You are as rich *as* I am; *Vous êtes aussi riche* que *moi.*
I am not so learned *as* you;
Je ne suis pas si savant que *vous.*
I have as many books *as* they have;
J'ai autant de livres qu'*eux.*
And not, *J'ai autant de livres* comme *eux;* nor *je ne suis pas si savant* comme *vous.*

N. B. The comparatives and superlatives agree in French in gender and number with the substantive, which they qualify in the same manner as adjectives. Example:

The most learned man; the most learned woman;
L'homme le plus savant; la femme la plus savante.

RULE 38.——by, *expressed by* de, *after a Comparative.*

The word *by,* which is often used after a comparative, to denote how much a thing exceeds another, is always expressed by *de,* and never by *par.* Examples:

* See page 47 for the different kinds of comparatives and superlatives, and the mode of forming them from adjectives.

I am taller than you by the whole head;
Je suis plus grand que vous de *toute la tête.* (not *par.*)
You are younger than I am *by* four years.
Vous êtes plus jeune que moi de *quatre ans.* (not *par.*)

RULE 39.—than, *expressed by* que *or* de, *after a Comparative.*

The word *than*, used after a comparative, is expressed by *que*, when it is followed by a noun or a pronoun. Examples:

Asia is greater *than* Europe;
L'Asie est plus grande que *l'Europe.*
He is more fortunate *than* you;
Il est plus heureux que *vous.*

The word *than* is always expressed by *de* before the cardinal numbers *un, deux, trois,* &c. instead of *que*, as in a comparison of objects. Examples:

I am more *than* fifteen years of age; *J'ai plus* de *quinze ans.*
You have more *than* a hundred guineas;
Vous avez plus de *cent guinées.*
Not *j'ai plus que quinze ans;* nor *vous avez plus que cent guinées.*

RULE 40.—than *expressed by* que de, *or* que ne, *after a Comparative.*

The word *than*, used in comparatives, is usually expressed by *que de* before an infinitive mood, and by *que ne* before a verb in the indicative. Examples:

It is more noble to forgive *than* to revenge;
Il est plus noble de pardonner que de *se venger.*
Riches are more dangerous *than* poverty is troublesome;
Les richesses sont plus dangereuses que *la pauvreté* n'*est commode.*

Note 1. If the first infinitive is preceded by the preposition *à*, then the word *than* is expressed by *qu'à*. Example:

He is more inclined to hurt *than* to oblige you;
Il est plus disposé à *vous nuire* qu'à *vous obliger.*

Note 2. The word *than* is expressed by *que* only, before an indicative mood, if there is a conjunction between the word *than* and the verb. Examples:

You learn better *than* when you were in France;
Vous apprenez mieux que *quand vous étiez en France.*
My brother recovers sooner *than* if he was in town;
Mon frère se rétablit plus tôt que *s'il étoit à la ville.*

RULE 41.—The more, *expressed by* plus, *and not by* le plus.

The English make use of the definite article before the comparatives of proportion, and the French never; thus, *the more* is expressed by *plus, the less,* by *moins,* and not by *le plus* or *le moins,* which are used only in superlatives. Examples:

The more you will study, *the more* you will improve;
Plus *vous étudierez,* plus *vous profiterez.* (not *le plus.*)
The more I know mankind, *the less* I value life;
Plus *je connois les hommes,* moins *j'estime la vie.*
Not *le plus je connois les hommes, le moins j'estime la vie.*

RULE 42.—The more, *expressed by* plus, *and* the less *by* moins.

If a comparative of proportion is made with two substantives or two adjectives, they are placed before the verb in English, and after in French.

The words of this sort of sentences are disposed in the following order: 1. We put *plus* or *moins.* 2. The nominative of the verb. 3. The verb. 4. The adjective or substantive; the rest as in English. Example:

The more difficult a thing is, *the more* honourable;
Plus *une chose est difficile,* plus *elle est honorable.*
The less money he gets, *the more* expenses he incurs.
Moins *il gagne d'argent,* plus *il fait de dépense.*

In these and the like sort of sentences, the substantive is preceded by *de,* and the adjective is not.

RULE 43.—*The Superlative governs the Genitive and the Subjunctive.*

The superlative always governs, in French, the noun following in the genitive case, and most commonly the verb in the subjunctive mood. See the Rule 155. Examples :

The navy of England is the most powerful *of the world ;*
La marine d'Angleterre est la plus puissante du monde —*gen.*
You are the most accomplished lady *I know.*
Vous êtes la dame la plus aimable que je connoisse—*subj.*

RULE 44.—*Of the Superlative.*

If the substantive precedes the superlative, both take the definite article, *le, la, les ;* but the superlative alone takes an article, if it precedes the substantive. Examples :

The most pleasing company is seldom the best company.
La compagnie la *plus agréable est rarement* la *meilleure compagnie.*
This is the most beautiful walk ;
Voilà la *plus belle promenade,* ou la *promenade* la *plus belle.*

Note 1. The comparatives and superlatives agree in gender and number with the substantive or pronoun to which they refer, as may be observed from the preceding examples.

Note 2. *Le* is indeclinable before *plus* and *moins* followed by an adverb, and also by an adjective, when there is no comparison of objects. Example :

Nous devons parler *le plus* clairement qu'il nous est possible ; and not *les plus clairement*—adv.

Nous ne pleurons pas toujours quand nous sommes *le plus* affligés ; and not *les plus affligés*—adj.

CHAPTER IV.

Of personal and Impersonal Pronouns.

This Chapter is divided into five sections: *the first* enumerates the circumstances in which the personal pronouns are conjunctive or disjunctive, and shews how to express them in both cases: *the second* treats of the impersonal pronouns *it, they, or them,* which are used in English with reference to animals or things: *the third* ascribes to the personal and impersonal pronouns, their proper place in a sentence, and explains the order in which they must be disposed, when they meet together: *the fourth* teaches when the pronouns are or are not to be repeated before the verb which they govern or are governed by: *the fifth* informs us when the pronouns must be expressed by *lui* or *soi,* and shews their difference with accuracy and precision.

SECTION THE FIRST.

When the Personal Pronouns are Conjunctive or Disjunctive.

RULE 45.—*How to express the Personal Pronouns in the Nominative Case.*

The personal pronouns *I, thou, he, she, we, you, they,* are *conjunctive,* and expressed by *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles,* when they are the nominative case of a verb, provided they are not joined to another noun or pronoun by a conjunction. Examples:

I read,	thou speakest,	he owes,	she comes,	we have, &c.
Je lis,	*tu parles,*	*il doit,*	*elle vient,*	*nous avons.*

Observe, to use always *il* or *ils,* with reference to a noun masculine, and *elle* or *elles* with reference to a feminine; thus, *they are rich,* is expressed in French by *ils sont riches,* speaking of men; and by *elles sont riches,* speaking of women.

The personal pronouns are *disjunctive*, and expressed by *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux*, or *elles*, under the following circumstances:

1. When they come before or after the words *qui, que*, or *seul*. Examples:

It is I who say so; *C'est* moi qui *le dis*, (not *c'est je.*)
He is more learned than I; *il est plus savant* que moi.
I am younger than he; *Je suis plus jeune* que lui.
They alone were present there; Eux seuls *y étoient présens.*

2. When they are used in an answer to a question. Examples:

Who has done that? I, he, they;
Qui a fait cela? C'est moi, *c'est* lui, *ce sont* eux.

3. When they are joined to a noun or a pronoun by a conjunction. Example:

We learn French, my brother and I;
Mon frère et moi *nous apprenons le François.*

4. When they come before a noun, or a verb used in opposition to, or distinction from the first. Example:

You will return to town, and *I* will go into the country;
Vous reviendrez à la ville et moi *j'irai à la campagne.*

Observe to repeat *nous* or *vous* before the verb, when it has two or more nominative cases which are not both of the third person, as, vous et moi *nous* irons. Vous et lui *vous* danserez ensemble.

RULE 46.—*How to express the Personal Pronouns in the Genitive Case.*

When the personal pronouns are in the genitive case, they are *disjunctive*, and expressed by *de moi, de toi, de lui, d'elle, de nous, de vous, d'eux, d'elles.* Examples:

He complains *of me*, I do not speak *of him;*
Il se plaint de moi, *je ne parle pas* de lui.

They are sometimes, but seldom *conjunctive*, and expressed by *en.* Examples.

You love my cousin, you speak often *of her;*
Vous aimez ma cousine, vous en *parlez souvent.*
Were you speaking of me? Yes, we were;
Parliez-vous de moi? Oui, nous en *parlions.*

RULE 47.—*How to express the Personal Pronouns in the Dative Case.*

When the personal pronouns are in the dative case, they are most commonly *conjunctive,* and expressed by *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur,* before the verb. Examples:

He pleases *me;* I will do *him* good; I will speak to *them;*
Il me *plaît.* *Je* lui *ferai du bien.* *Je* leur *parlerai.*

They are *disjunctive,* and expressed by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux, à elles,* after the verb, in three cases.

1. When they come after a noun or a pronoun to which they are joined by a conjunction. Example:

I speak to you as well as to *them;*
Je vous parle aussi-bien qu'à eux.

2. When they are governed by a reflected verb. Examples:

He applies *to me;* I do not trust *him;*
Il s'adresse à moi; *je ne me fie pas* à lui.
Not *il me s'adresse, je ne me lui fie pas.*

3. When they are governed by any of the following verbs: *aller,* to go; *courir,* to run; *accourir,* to run to; *boire,* to drink; *penser, songer,* to think; *venir,* to come. Examples:

He comes to us, go to him, I think of you;
Il vient à *nous, allez* à lui, *je pense* à vous.
And not *il nous vient, allez lui, je vous pense.*

RULE 48.—*Personal Pronouns in the Accusative Case.*

When the personal pronouns are governed by a verb in the accusative they are generally *conjunctive,* and expressed by *me, te, nous, vous, le, la, les.* Examples:

I know *him;* I will see *her;* I esteem *them;*
Je le *connois.* *Je* la *verrai.* *Je* les *estime.*
And not *je connois lui, je verrai elle, j'estime eux.*

N. B. When *le, la, les,* stand for the English word *the,* and come before a noun, they are articles, as, the father, mother, and children are dead; le *père,* la *mère, et* les *enfans sont morts:* but when *le, la, les,* stand for *him, her, them,* and come before a verb, they are personal pronouns, as, I know *him,* I know *her,* I know *them; je* le *connois, je* la *connois, je* les *connois.*

RULE 49.—*Personal Pronouns after a Preposition.*

When the personal pronouns are preceded by a preposition, they are always *disjunctive,* and expressed by *moi, toi, lui, elle,* &c. Examples:

As for *me,* I think so; *Pour* moi *je pense ainsi.*
You will speak after *them; Vous parlerez après* eux.
And not *pour me je pense ainsi; vous parlerez après les.*

SECTION THE SECOND.

Of the Pronouns, it, they, them.

RULE 50.—*The Pronouns,* it, they, *or* them.

The pronouns *it* or *they,* which the English use with reference to animals or things, are expressed in French by *il,* m. or *elle,* f. for the singular, and by *ils,* m. or *elles,* f. for the plural, when they are the nominative of a verb. *It* or *them* are expressed by *le,* m. *la,* f. *les,* pl. when they are governed by a verb in the accusative case: thus, speaking of a house, we say,

It is fine, I will not sell *it,* I will keep *it;*
Elle *est belle, je ne* la *vendrai pas, je* la *garderai.*

Observe, that these pronouns are expressed in French in

the same manner for the nominative and accusative as the personal pronouns, of which we have already treated; and that they also agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they have reference.

RULE 51.—en *used in the Genitive, for* it *or* them.

The pronouns *it* or *them*, used with reference to inanimate objects, are expressed by *en*, when the French verb governs the genitive case, whether they be preceded in English by the prepositions *of, from, with, about, for, upon*, or any other. Examples:

Do not speak any more *of it; N'*en *parlez plus.*
You have done me a service, I thank you *for it*,
Vous m'avez rendu service, je vous en *remercie.*
You have got a good place, I congratulate you *upon it;*
Vous avez obtenu une bonne place, je vous en *félicite.*

When the words *some* or *any* come after a verb, and refer to a substantive antecedent, they are also expressed by *en*. Examples:

I have some apples, will you have *any?* Give me a couple *of them.*
J'ai des pommes, en *voulez-vous? Donnez m'*en *une couple.*
Take *some* more. What shall I do *with them?* You will give *some* to your sisters.
*Prenez-*en *davantage. Qu'* en *ferai-je? Vous* en *donnerez à vos sœurs.*

RULE 52.—lui *or* y, *for* it *or* them, *in the Dative Case.*

The pronouns *it* or *them*, governed by a verb which requires the dative in French, are expressed by *lui* or *leur*, as the personal pronouns, when they refer to animals or plants, and usually by *y*, when they refer to other inanimate objects not personified. Examples:

Your horses are hungry, give *them* some oats;
*Vos chevaux ont faim, donnez-*leur *de l'avoine.*

This tree is fine, do not hurt *it;*
Cet arbre est beau, ne lui *faites point de mal*
There is a fine picture, put a frame *to it;*
*Voilà un beau tableau, mettez-*y *une bordure.*
It is a difficult undertaking, you will not succeed *in it;*
*C'est une entreprise difficile, vous n'*y *réussirez pas.*
And not *mettez-lui une bordure,* nor *vous ne lui réussirez pas.*

If, however, the impersonal pronouns are used for inanimate objects personified, or preceded by the verb *to owe,* or *to be indebted,* they should be expressed by *lui* or *leur* (and not by *y*). Thus *lui* and *y* may be said of the same object, joined to different verbs. Example:

This house is well situated, have some repairs done *to it,* you are indebted *to it* for your health;
Cette maison est bien située, faites y *faire des réparations, vous* lui *devez votre santé;* (not *vous* y *devez,* &c.

The words *en* and *y,* of which mention is made in the two preceding rules, are also two adverbs of place; *en* stands for the words *hence, from thence;* and *y* for *there,* or *thither.* Examples:

Will you go to London? No, I come from *thence;*
*Voulez-vous venir à Londres? Non, j'*en *viens.*
Have you been to France? No, I have never been *there;*
*Avez-vous été en France? Non, je n'*y *ai jamais été.*

RULE 53.—*When* it *or* them *come after a Preposition, they are not expressed in French.*

When the pronouns *it* or *them* are preceded by a preposition, they cannot be expressed by *lui* or *elle, eux* or *elles,* which in this case are said only of persons or personified objects; but they are usually left out, and the preposition used in English becomes an adverb when it conveys the idea sufficiently. Examples:

The king was for the war, but the parliament was *against it;*
Le roi étoit pour la guerre, mais le parlement fut contre.

Come near the fire; I am *near it;*
Approchez-vous du feu. Je suis tout auprès.

If the preposition cannot become an adverb, we must give the sentence another turn. Example:

At first the house was burnt, and *after it* the church;
D'abord la maison fut brulée, et ensuite *l'église.*

RULE 54.—Use of the supplementary Pronouns, le, la, les.

The supplementary pronouns *le, la, les,* are always used in French before the verb *être,* in answer to a question, though there be no pronoun expressed in English.

Le is indeclinable: 1. With reference to adjectives of both genders and numbers. Examples: Are your brothers learned? No, they are not; *Vos frères sont-ils savans? Non, ils ne* le *sont pas.* Are your sisters sick? Yes, they are; *Vos sœurs sont-elles malades? Oui, elles* le *sont.*

2. With reference to verbs. Example: Do you think they will come? Yes, we do; *Croyez vous qu'ils viennent? Oui, nous* le *croyons.*

3. With reference to substantives adjectively used. Example: *Mesdames, êtes-vous parentes? Oui, nous* le *sommes* *.

Le, indeclinable is also used with reference to adjectives or verbs, for the words *it* or *so,* sometimes expressed in English, but for the most part understood. Examples: You are happy, and I am not; *Vous êtes heureuse, et moi je ne* le *suis pas.* I said so, but you would not believe it; *Je* le *disois, mais vous ne vouliez pas* le *croire.*

But *le, la, les,* are declinable, and used according to the gender or number when they have reference to a substantive. Examples: Are you Peter's brother? Yes, I am; *Etes-vous le frère de Pierre? Oui, je* le *suis.* Are you Peter's wife? Yes I am; *Etes-vous la femme de*

* We may also answer, *oui, Monsieur; oui, Madame, &c.* without repeating the verb the question is asked by.

Pierre? Oui, je la *suis.* Are these your books? Yes, they are; *Sont-ce là vos livres? Oui, ce* les *sont.* Are these your houses? No, they are not;* *Sont-ce là vos maisons? Non, ce ne* les *sont pas.*

If the adjectives be substantively used, *la* should be used for the feminine singular, and *les* for the plural. Examples: *Etes-vous la malade pour laquelle on a fait venir le médecin? Oui, je* la *suis. Mesdemoiselles, êtes-vous les parentes de monsieur? Oui, nous les sommes.*

SECTION THE THIRD.

The right placing of Personal Pronouns.

RULE 55.—*Place of the Personal Pronouns.*

The personal pronouns, *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils,* or *elles,* usually precede the verb of which they are the nominative case. Example: *Je lis,* I read; *tu lis,* thou readest, &c.

They may be separated from it by the particle *ne,* and the governed pronouns, if there are any; but never by any adverb. Examples:

He has not seen them; I will not speak to them *of it;*
Il ne les *a pas vus.* *Je* ne leur en *parlerai pas.*
You always speak the truth; He often speaks of you;
Vous dites toujours *la vérité.* *Il parle* souvent *de vous.*
Not *vous toujours dites la vérité. Il souvent parle de vous.*

The personal pronouns, *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils,* or *elles,* are placed immediately after the verb, or its auxiliary, in three cases.

1. In an interrogative sentence. Examples:

* Ce is used in answer to a question asked by *est-ce là,* or *sont-ce là.* Example: *Est ce-là votre chapeau? Oui, ce l'est.*

Do you speak French? Have you learnt it long?
Parlez-vous *François? L'avez*-vous *appris long-temps?*

2. When they are the nominative case of the verbs *dire*, *répondre*, *répliquer*, *continuer*, *poursuivre*, or *s'écrier*, used in a sentence as by parenthesis. Examples:

You see, said he, the condition I am reduced to;
Vous voyez, dit-il, *l'état où je suis réduit.*
Why, did I answer him, have you not told it me before?
Pourquoi, lui répondis-je, *ne me l'avez vous pas dit plutôt?*

3. Most frequently when the verb is preceded by the conjunctions *au moins*, *aussi*, *ainsi*, *en vain*, *peut-être*, *à peine*, and some others. Examples:

In vain you seek for excuses; *Perhaps* he will come;
En vain *cherchez-vous des excuses.* Peut-être *viendra-t-il.*

RULE 56.——*The governed Pronouns placed after the Verb.*

When the verb is in the imperative affirmative, the governed pronouns are put after it in French as in English. Examples:

Speak *to them;* write *to him;* answer *us;* see *them.*
Parlez-leur; *écrivez*-lui; *répondez*-nous; *voyez*-les.

But if there are two imperatives joined by a conjunction, the governed pronouns are put after the first verb, and before the second. Examples:

Lend or sell it me; *prêtez* le-moi, *ou* me le *vendez.*
Forgive or punish them; *Pardonnez*-leur, *ou* les *punissez.*

If the verb which is in the imperative affirmative governs two pronouns the accusative goes first. Examples:

Give it me, sell it them; *donnez*-le-moi, *vendez*-le-leur.

When the pronouns *y* or *en*, meet with another pronoun,

they go last, as menez-*les-y*, menez-*nous-y*, donnez-*leur-en*, &c. however, *y* is placed before *moi*, and *m'en* is used instead of *moi en*. Examples:

Carry me thither; menez-*y-moi;* give me some; donnez-*m'en*.
(Not *menez-moi-s-y, donnez-moi-s-en,* as said incorrectly by some persons.)

But if the verb were in the imperative negative, the governed pronouns should go before it, as they do in all other tenses. Examples:

Do not sell it him; do not give it them;
Ne le lui *vendez pas; ne* le leur *donnez pas.*

RULE 57.—*The governed Pronouns placed before the Verb.*

When the verb is not in the imperative affirmative, the governed pronouns are always put immediately before it in a simple tense, and before its auxiliary in a compound one. Examples:

You do not know them; you have not seen them.
Vous ne les *connoissez pas; vous ne* les *avez pas vus.*

The governed pronouns do not precede any other verbs than those they are governed by, or their auxiliaries: thus we say:

I wanted to speak to them; he could do it;
Je voulois leur *parler; il pouvoit* le *faire.*
—(Not *je* leur *voulois parler;* nor *il* le *pouvoit faire.*)

RULE 58.—*Order in which Pronouns are put before the Verb.*

When two or more pronouns are governed by a verb, those of the first and second persons precede those of the third; and if they are both of the third person, the accusative is placed before the dative; *y* and *en* go the last; or what is the same, the governed pronouns are invariably placed before the verb, in the following order:

Me, te, se, nous, vous,	*go before every other.*
Le, la, les,	*go before* lui, leur, y *or* en.
Lui, leur,	*go before* y *or* en.
Y,	*goes before* en. Examples:

He gives it me, he has lent it you, he has sent them to us;
Il me le *donne, il* vous l'*a prêté, il* nous les *a envoyés.*
When he sends them to me, I shall bring them to you;
Quand il me les *enverra, je* vous les *porterai.*
He gives it to him, he will lend it to them, he has sent them to him;
Il le lui *donne, il* le leur *prêtera, ils* les lui *a envoyés.*
I will carry you some thither, I have carried some hither to them.
Je vous y en *porterai, je* leur y en *ai porté.*

SECTION THE FOURTH.

When the Pronouns are, or are not to be repeated in French.

RULE 59.—*The Personal Pronouns,* je, tu, il, *&c. repeated.*

The personal pronouns of the first and second persons, such as *je, tu, nous, vous,* are usually repeated in French before every verb of which they are the nominative case, whether they are repeated or not in English. Example:

You should love God with all your heart, forgive your enemies, and pray for those who persecute you:
Vous *aimerez Dieu de tout votre cœur;* vous *pardonnerez à vos ennemis et* vous *prierez pour vos persécuteurs.*

The pronouns of the third person are usually repeated. 1. When they belong to different tenses. 2. When the second is preceded by any other conjunction than *et, ni,* or *ou.* 3. When the first is affirmative and the second negative, or *vice versâ.* 4. When the second verb is separated from the preceding by many words. Examples:

1. She is and will always be modest, I am sure ;
Elle *est modeste, et* elle *le sera toujours, je suis sûr.*
2. They are lovely, since they please you ;
Elles *sont aimables, puisqu'* elles *vous plaisent.*
3. He says so, but he does not believe it ;
Il *le dit, mais* il *ne le croit pas.*
4. He spoke yesterday to his father about his sister's marriage and obtained his consent ;
Il *parla hier à son père du marriage de sa sœur, et* il *obtint son consentsment.*

In other circumstances, the pronouns *il* or *elle, ils* or *elles,* are not usually repeated before verbs which are in the same tense. Thus we say :

He took towns, conquered provinces, and subdued nations ;
Il *prit des villes, conquit des provinces, et subjugua des nations.*

RULE 60.——*The governed Pronouns are always repeated.*

The pronouns, *me, te, le, nous, vous, lui, leur, le, la, les,* are always repeated in French before every verb they are governed by, whether they are repeated or not in English. Examples :

A son well educated never rebels against his father; he loves, honours, and respects him ;
Un fils bien élevé ne s'arme jamais contre son père, il l'*aime,* l'*honore, et* le *respecte.*
I love him, and always shall, if he behave well ;
Je l'*aime et je* l'*aimerai toujour, s'il se conduit bien.*

SECTION THE FIFTH.

Distinction between lui, elle, se, *and* soi.

RULE 61.——himself, herself, *expressed by* se, lui, elle, *or* soi.

The compound pronouns, *himself, herself, themselves,* joined to a verb, are generally expressed by *se,* if it is re-

flected; but if not, *himself* is expressed by *lui même,* and *herself* by *elle-même;* *themselves* by *eux-mêmes,* for the masculine, by *elles-mêmes,* for the feminine. Examples:

He submits himself to your orders, but he is not satisfied;
Il se *soumet à vos ordres, mais il n'est pas content.*
She always speaks of herself, and never of others;
*Elle parle toujours d'*elle-même, *et jamais des autres.*
They are come of their own accord into the country;
*Ils sont venus d'*eux-mêmes *à la campagne.*

The compound pronouns *himself* and *herself*, are expresed by *soi,* speaking of persons in general, and after the indeterminate pronouns, *on, chacun, quelqu'un, quiconque, celui* or *celle qui.* Examples:

The man who loves nobody but *himself* is not fit for society;
L'homme qui n'aime que soi *n'est pas propre pour la société.*
Every one acts for *himself*, in this world;
Chacun agit pour soi *en ce monde.*
Whoever thinks only of *himself* is unworthy to live;
Quiconque ne pense qu'à soi *est indigne de vivre.*
The word *soi* is not used with reference to a noun plural.

RULE 62.—itself *is rendered by* lui *or* soi.

The impersonal pronoun *itself*, is usually expressed by *soi* and not by *lui,* when it has reference to a pronoun, or to a substantive singular taken in a general sense, which represents an inanimate object. Examples:

That is good in itself; *cela est bon en* soi.
Load-stone attracts iron to itself; *L'aimant attire le fer à* soi.

When *itself* has a reference to an animate object, it is expressed by *lui-même* or *elle-même.* It is also expressed by *lui-même, elle-même,* and not by *soi,* when it refers to an inanimate object taken in an individual sense. Example:

*La terre est fertile d'*elle-même: (not *de soi.*)
Earth is fruitful of itself.

CHAPTER V.

Of Possessive Pronouns.

RULE 63.—The Possessive Pronouns agree with and are repeated before all their Substantives.

The possessive pronouns are repeated in French before all their substantives, and agree with them in gender and number; they are indeclinable in English and need not to be repeated. Example:

My father, mother, and brothers are in the country:
Mon père, ma *mère, et* mes *frères sont à la campagne*

We nevertheless use the pronouns *mon, ton, son,* masc. before a noun feminine which begins with a vowel or an *h* mute, in order to avoid the *hiatus* which would result from the meeting of two vowels. Examples:

Mon âme, f. *ton* ambition, f. *son* humeur, f.
(Not *ma* âme, *ta* ambition, *sa* humeur.)

The English make the pronouns *his* and *her* agree with the noun antecedent; the French, on the contrary, make always *son, sa, ses,* agree with the noun which follows. Examples:

Her husband is young; *His* wife is handsome;
Son époux est jeune; *Sa* femme est belle.

RULE 64.—The Possessive Pronouns are used in speaking to one's Relations.

When we speak to our relations or friends, we use, in French, the possessive pronouns *mon, ma, mes* before the words *fils, fille, frère, sœur, père, mère, oncle, tante,* &c. though they are not used in English. Examples:

Where are you, daughter? *Où êtes-vous,* ma *fille?*
Here I am, father; *Me voici,* mon *père.*
Brother, will you come with me? Yes, sister.
Mon *frère, voulez-vous venir avec moi? Oui,* ma *sœur.*

RULE 65.—*When the Qualifications of* Mr. *and* Mde. *&c. are used.*

When we speak to any person respecting their relations or friends, and we mean to pay them some respect, the qualifications of *Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle,* &c. are usually prefixed in French to the possessive pronouns *votre* or *vos.* Examples:

How does your uncle do?
Comment se porte Monsieur *votre oncle?*
Are your sisters at home?
Mesdemoiselles *vous sœurs sont-elles à la maison?*
I met with your mother, who told me that your father was not well;
J'ai rencontré Madame *votre mère, qui m'a dit que* Monsieur *votre père ne se portoit pas bien.*

Observe, The possessive pronouns, *mon, ma,* of which these words *monsieur, madame, mademoiselle,* are composed, are changed into *mes* for the plural; so we say, *messieurs, mesdames, mesdemoiselles.*

Monsieur and *Messieurs* are employed as substantives, and may be preceded by an article, or another pronoun, as *le* monsieur *que j'ai vu,* the gentleman I have seen; *je parlerai à* ces messieurs, I will speak to these gentlemen. But the possessive pronoun is always left out before *dame, demoiselle;* used substantively; *cette* dame, or *cette* demoiselle, *est belle;* that lady is handsome; and not *cette madame, cette mademoiselle.*

RULE* 66.—*When the Possessive Pronouns are rendered by the Personal.

The possessive pronouns *(my, thy, his, her,* &c.) are expressed in French by the personal pronouns *me, te, se, nous,*

vous, lui, leur, in the dative; and not by *mon, ton, son, &c.* when the verb which relates to them denotes an action over any part of the body; and in this case an article definite takes the ordinary place of the pronoun. Examples:

You have broke his arm;	*Vous* lui *avez rompu le bras.*
He has cut his finger;	*Il* s'*est coupé le doigt.*
You tread upon their feet;	*Vous* leur *marchez sur le pied.*
You hurt my hand;	*Vous* me *blessez la main.*

As if it were: you *to him* have broken the arm; *he to him* has cut the finger; you *to them* tread upon the feet; you *to me* hurt the hand: and so on for all other like sentences.

Observe, to express *his, her,* and *their,* by *se,* when the verb is reflected; and by *lui,* or *leur,* when it is not.

RULE 67.—When the Possessive Pronouns are, or are not to be left out in French.

If the verb does not express an action over any part of the body, the possessive pronouns (*my, thy, his, her,* &c.) are expressed by *mon, ton, son,* &c. when the sentence is meant to express a direct distinction between any one person's arm, &c. and another's. Examples:

I see that my arm swells; *Je vois que* mon *bras enfle.*
Do you think my hand will ever be cured?
Pensez-vous que ma *main se guérisse jamais?*

But these pronouns are left out in French, and the definite article *le, la, les,* used instead of them, if no such direct distinction is intended. Examples:

I have a pain in my side;	*J'ai mal* au *côté.*
His eyes are sore;	*Il* a *mal* aux *yeux.*

Observe, I put *mon bras, ma main,* in the first sentences, because I can see another person's arm swelling as well as mine; but I put *au côté, aux yeux,* not *à mon côté, à ses yeux,* because I cannot feel pains in any other side than mine, nor can he have other eyes sore than his own. This distinction is a nice point, and must be particularly attended to.

RULE 68.—*When* its *or* their *are to be expressed by* son, *and* when *by* en.

When the possessive pronouns *its* or *their* are used with reference to an inanimate object, they are expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur,* or by *en,* according to the following distinction:

They are expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur,* or *leurs,* 1. when they relate to the nominative of the preceding verb. 2. when they are in the genitive or dative, or preceded by any preposition whatsoever. 3. when being in the nominative they are joined to a substantive qualified by an adjective or specified by some other words. 4. when in the nominative, the next verb or its government is immediately, or may be followed by the preposition *de.* Examples:

1. London has *its* beauties; *Londres a* ses *beautés.*
2. I admire the size of *its* streets;
   J'admire la grandeur de ses *rues.*
3. *Its regular buildings* please at the first sight;
   Ses bâtimens réguliers *plaisent au premier coup d'œil.*
4. *Its* trade produces immense resources;
   Son *commerce produit* d'*immenses ressources.*
   Its ships bring the riches *of* all the countries;
   Ses *vaisseaux apportent les richesses* de *tous les pays.*

Except on these occasions, *its* or *their* are expressed by *en* before the verb, and the article *le, la, les,* before the substantive. So we should say speaking still of London:

Its residence is agreeable;
Le *séjour* en *est agréable.*
Its squares appear to me beautiful;
Les *places m'*en *paroissent superbes.*
I particularly admire *its* rich warehouses;
*J'*en *admire surtout* les *riches magasins.*

When *its* or *their* have reference to an animate object, they are always expressed by *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs.* Example:

Your horse lost *its* shoes; *Votre cheval a perdu* son *fer.*

RULE 69.—Of the Possessive Pronouns mine, thine, &c.

The possessive pronouns (*mine, thine, his, hers,* &c. agree in French, both in gender and number, with the substantive antecedent to which they have reference, and are always preceded by the definite article, *le, la, les.* Example:

Many houses have been destroyed during the siege; *yours* and *mine* have been burnt, but *theirs* has not suffered; *Beaucoup de maisons ont été détruites pendent le siége;* la vôtre *et* la mienne *ont été brûlées, mais* la leur *n'a point souffert.*

RULE 70.—mine *is sometimes expressed by* mes.

When the possessive pronouns (*mine, thine, his, hers,* &c.) preceded by *of,* are placed after a substantive to which they relate, they are expressed in French by *mes, tes, ses, nos, vos, leurs,* placed before the substantive, and not by *le mien, le tien, le sien,* &c. Examples:

A friend of mine; *Un de* mes *amis;* (not *un ami des miens.*)
A book of yours; *Un de* vos *livres;* (not *un livre des vôtres.*)

As if it were: one *of my* friends; one *of your* books: and in the same way all sentences of this sort.

RULE 71.—mine, thine, *expressed by* à moi, à toi.

The disjunctive *mine, thine,* &c. are expressed by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux,* or *à elles,* when they come after the verb *to be,* which has for its nominative case a substantive, or a personal pronoun. Examples:

That book is mine; *Ce livre est* à moi.
It is not your's, I think; *Il n'est pas* à vous, *je crois.*

If, however, the verb *être* is preceded by *ce;* then *mine, thine,* &c. should be expressed by *le mien, le tien, le sien,* &c. Example:

Is that your watch? Yes, it is mine;
Est-ce là votre montre? Oui, c'est la mienne.

N. B. If a substantive come after or a relative pronoun come before the verb *être*, signifying *to belong*, they are put in the dative case in French, and in the genitive in English. Examples:

This horse is my father's; *Ce cheval est* à mon père.
Whose house is that? A qui *est cette maison*.

CHAPTER VI.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE 72.—*ce, cet, cette,* that; *ces,* those.

The demonstrative pronouns (*this* and *that*) are expressed in French by *ce* before a substantive singular and masculine, when it begins with a consonant or *h* aspirated; as *ce jardin*, this garden; *ce héros*, that hero; and by *cet* when it begins with a vowel or *h* mute; as *cet oiseau*, this bird; *cet homme*, this man; by *cette* before a substantive feminine; as *cette maison*, that house: *these* and *those* are expressed by *ces*, before a substantive plural of both genders; as *ces hommes*, these men; *ces femmes*, these women.

The demonstrative pronouns are repeated before every substantive, and agree with each in gender and number. Example:

This garden, this tree, this house, and all this furniture are not worth three hundred guineas.
Ce *jardin*, cet *arbre*, cette *maison*, *et tous* ces *meubles*, *ne valent pas trois cens guinées*.

To determine more precisely the subject we are speaking of, we add often in French the particle *ci* or *là* to the substantive preceded by *ce, cet, cette,* or *ces*. Examples:

That man is a rogue; *Cet homme*-là *est un coquin*.
These pens are good for nothing;
Ces plumes-ci *ne valent rien*.

RULE 73.—*ceci, cela,* this, that.

The demonstrative pronouns (*this* and *that*) are expressed in French by *ceci* and *cela,* when they are used to point at some object, without specifying what it is; when *ceci* and *cela* meet in the same sentence, *ceci* denotes the nearest object and *cela* the most distant. Examples:

This is good, that is bad; Ceci *est bon,* cela *est mauvais.*
You always ask what is this for, what is that for;
Vous demandez toujours pourquoi ceci, *pourquoi* cela.
Why did you do that without my leave?
Pourquoi avez-vous fait cela *sans ma permission?*

RULE 74.—*ce qui,* or *ce que;* what *or* that which.

The pronouns *that which* or *what,* signifying *that thing which,* are expressed in French by *ce qui,* for the nominative case, *ce dont* for the genitive, *ce à quoi,* for the dative, and *ce que* for the accusative; which are always singular and masculine. Examples:

What is agreeable to the taste, is often prejudicial to the health;
Ce qui *est agréable au goût, est souvent contraire à la santé.*
I do not know *of what* he is accused;
Je ne sais pas ce dont *on l'accuse.*
You see *to what* you engage yourself;
Vous voyez ce à quoi *vous vous engagez.*
You give me *that which* you do not like;
Vous me donnez ce que *vous n'aimez point.*

N. B. When *ce qui* or *ce que* begins a sentence of two parts, the word *ce* is repeated before the auxiliary *être,* if it is followed by a substantive, a pronoun, or a verb. Examples:

What I fear most is treason;
Ce que *je crains le plus,* ce *sont les trahisons.*
What I wish for most, is that peace may be made;
Ce que *je désire le plus,* c'*est qu'on fasse la paix.*

The demonstrative *ce* must not be repeated, when the verb *être* is followed by an adjective without a substantive. Example:

What I have eaten was very good;
Ce que *j'ai mangé* étoit *excellent.* (not c'étoit *excellent.*)

RULE 75.—*celui-ci, celui-là;* this or that.

When the demonstrative pronouns have reference to several substantives, *this* and *these* refer to the objects nearest or last spoken of; and are expressed *this* by *celui-ci*, or *celle-ci; these* by *ceux-ci*, or *celles-ci; that* and *those* have reference to the most distant objects, and are expressed, *that* by *celui-là*, or *celle-là; those* by *ceux-là* or *celles-là;* according to the gender and number of the substantive to which they have reference. Examples:

The body perishes, the soul is immortal: however we neglect *this*, and sacrifice every thing for *that;*
Le corps périt, l'âme est immortelle; cependant nous négligeons celle-ci, *et nous sacrifions tout pour* celui-là.
Here are good books; which do you like best, *these* or *those?*
Voici de bons livres; lesquels aimez-vous le mieux, de ceux-ci, *ou de* ceux-là?

N. B. *The former* is also expressed by *celui-là* or *celle-là;* and *the latter* by *celui-ci* or *celle-ci.*

RULE 76.—*celui de* or *celle de,* &c. that of; *celui qui,* that which.

When the demonstrative pronouns are followed immediately by the preposition *of,* they are expressed, *that of* by *celui de* or *celle de,* and *those of* by *ceux de* or *celles de.* Examples:

He spends all his fortune and *that of* his wife,
Il dépense tout son bien et celui de *sa femme.*
Take these horses, or *those of* my son;
Prenez ces chevaux, ou ceux de *mon fils.*

When the demonstrative pronouns are followed by *which*, expressed or understood, they are expressed, *that* by *celui* or *celle*, *those* by *ceux* or *celles*, and *which* by the relative pronoun *qui*. Examples:

This house is larger than *that which* I have sold;
Cette maison est plus grande que celle *que j'ai vendue.*
These books are better than *those* you have lent me;
Ces livres valent mieux que ceux *que vous m'avez prêtés.*

When the word *which* is used in answer to a question, it is also expressed by *celui*, or *celle qui*, if the question is asked by the word *which*. Example:

Which of these oranges will you have; *Which* you please.
Laquelle de ces oranges voulez-vous? Celle qu'*il vous plaira.*

Observe, In this and the two following rules the relative pronoun *qui*, is changed into *dont*, for the genitive, *à qui* or *auquel*, for the dative, and *que*, for the accusative, according to the case governed by the following verb.

After a preposition, *qui* or *que* are only used when speaking of persons; See the next Chapter.

RULE 77.— he who *expressed in French by* celui qui.

When the personal pronouns *(he, she, they,* or *those) are* the antecedent of *who, that,* or *which*, they are not expressed by *il* or *elle*, as before; but *he who* is rendered by *celui qui*, *she who* by *celle qui*, *they who* by *cella qui*, or *celles qui*. Examples:

He who cannot keep a secret, is incapable of governing;
Celui qui *ne sauroit garder un secret, est incapable de gouverner.*
They whom you protect, betray you with indignity;
Ceux que *vous protégez, vous trahissent indignement.*

RULE 78.—celui qui, he who, *must be joined in French.*

When in an English sentence the pronouns *he, she,* or

they, are separated from the relative pronouns, *who* or *which*, they must be joined in French, and the second part of the sentence is expressed the first. Examples:

He is a bad citizen *who* rebels against his country;
Celui qui *se révolte contre sa patrie est un mauvais citoyen.*
Those are mistaken *who* believe that kings are happy;
Ceux qui *croient que les rois sont heureux, se trompent.*

These pronouns can however be separated as in English by adding the particle *là* to *celui* or *celle*. Examples:

He is a bad citizen *who* rebels against his country;
Celui-là *est un mauvais citoyen* qui *se révolte contre as patrie.*
They are mistaken *who* think that kings are happy;
Ceux-là *se trompent* qui *croient que les rois sont heureux.*

CHAPTER VII.

OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.*

RULE 79.—*qui, que,* who, that, *or* which.

The relative pronouns, *who, that,* or *which,* are expressed by *qui,* for all sorts of objects, when they are in the nominative case; and by *que* when they are in the accusative. Examples:

The man *who* speaks;	The book *which* is on the table;
L'homme qui *parle.*	*Le livre* qui *est sur la table.*
The woman *whom* I have seen;	The lesson which I have learnt;
La femme que *j'ai vue.*	*La leçon* que *j'ai apprise.*

N. B. The word to which the relative pronouns have reference is called the *antecedent.*

* See the definition and declension of relative pronouns, page 61.

RULE 80.——*dont* or *de qui,* of whom, whose, *or* of which.

The relative pronouns *whose, of whom,* or *of which,* are usually expressed by *dont* for all sorts of objects, when they follow immediately their antecedent. Examples:

I have seen the person *of whom* you speak;
J'ai vu la personne dont *vous parlez.*
It is an illness, the cause of which is unknown;
C'est une maladie dont *on ne connoît pas la cause.*

But if the relative pronouns be separated from their antecedent by another substantive, then *whose,* or *of whom* are expressed by *de qui,* and *of which* by *duquel, de laquelle, desquels,* or *desquelles,* according to the gender and number of the substantive to which they have reference. Examples:

He is a man to *whose* discretion I dare not trust;
C'est une personne à la discrétion de qui *je n'oserois me fier.*
It is an illness to the progress *of which* one cannot apply too quick remedies;
C'est une maladie aux progrès de laquelle *on ne peut apporter de trop promps remèdes.* not *aux progrès* de qui *or* dont.

N. B. The relative pronoun *from whom,* which answers, to the Latin ablative, is always expressed by *de qui,* and never by *dont.* Thus we say,

The man *from whom* I received a letter yesterday is sick;
L'homme de qui (*not* dont) *j'ai reçu hier une lettre est malade.*

RULE 81.—*qui* or *lequel, laquelle;* whom, which.

When the relative pronouns are in the dative case; or after any preposition; they are usually expressed by *qui,* speaking of persons, and always by *lequelle,* or *laquelle* singular, *lesquels,* or *lesquelles* plural, speaking of animals and things. Examples:

Your father is a man *to whom* I am much obliged;
Votre père est un homme à qui *j'ai beaucoup d'obligation.*
The glory *to which* Heroes sacrifice, is a false glory;
La gloire à laquelle *les Héros sacrifient est une fausse gloire.*
It is a reason *to which* there is no reply;
C'est une raison à laquelle *il n'y a point de réplique.*

RULE 82.—*When* où *can be used for* lequel.

When the relative pronouns are in the genitive, dative, ablative, or after a preposition, and refer to an inanimate object, they are almost indifferently expressed by *où* or by *lequel, laquelle,* &c. if the verb denotes some motion or rest, at least figuratively. Examples:

Avoid the faults *into which* I have fallen;
Evitez les fautes où (*or* dans lesquelles) *je suis tombé.*
I know the principle *from which* all your system is derived;
*Je connois le principe d'*où (*or* duquel) *découle tout votre systême.*

Note, *Où* and d'*où* are also verbs of place, and stand for the words *where* or *whence.* Examples:

Where are you going?	Où *allez-vous?*
From *whence* do you come?	*D'*où *venez-vous?*
Where have you passed?	*Par* où *avez-vous passé?*

RULE 83.—*The Relative Pronouns are never ommitted in French.*

The relative pronouns *who, whom, that,* or *which,* and also the conjunction *that;* are often understood in English; but *qui* or *que,* which answer to them, are never understood in French. Examples:

I think you are in the wrong;	*Je crois* que *vous avez tort.*
The man I was speaking to;	*L'homme* à qui *je parlois.*
The lesson I have learnt;	*La leçon* que *j'ai apprise.*
The book you read is mine;	*Le livre* que *vous lisez est à moi.*

RULE 84.—*Place and Concord of the Relative Pronouns.*

The relative pronouns are placed in French immediately after the nouns or pronouns to which they have reference; and agree with them in gender and number. Examples:

He rejected an *advice*, the utility *of which* he knew;
Il rejeta un avis dont *il connoissoit l'utilité.*
The *books for which* I have subscribed are very good;
Les livres *pour* lesquels *j'ai souscrit sont très-bons.*

CHAPTER VIII.

Of Interrogative Pronouns.

The interrogative pronouns are in English these three, *who*, *which*, and *what*; they are expressed in French as follows:

RULE 85.——*qui?* or *qui est*-ce *qui?* who?

The interrogative pronouns *who, whose, to whom,* &c. which are said of persons only, are expressed in French by *qui*, or *qui est-ce qui,* when they are the nominative case of a verb; they are expressed by *qui* in all other cases, and never by *que* or *dont,* as the relative pronouns, of which before. Examples:

Who is there? Qui *est là?* or qui est-ce qui *est là?*
Of whom do you speak? De qui *parlez-vous?* not *dont.*
With *whom* do you live? *Avec* qui *demeurez-vous?*
To whom do you write? A qui *écrivez-vous?*
Whom have you seen? Qui *avez-vous vu?*

RULE 86.——*lequel, laquelle,* &c. which.

When the word *which* is interrogatively used, it is always

expressed by *lequel* or *laquelle* for the singular, and by *lesquels* or *lesquelles* for the plural. Examples:

Which of my sisters will you marry?
Laquelle *de mes sœurs voulez-vous épouser?*
Which of these horses do you advise me to buy?
Lequel *de ces chevaux me conseillez-vous d'acheter?*
Which of your brothers learn French and Latin?
Lequel *de vos frères apprend le François et le Latin?*

RULE 87.—*quel, quelle?* what?

When the pronoun *what* is interrogatively used, it is expressed in French by *quel* m. or *quelle* f. before a substantive singular, and by *quels* m. or *quelles* f. before a substantive plural. Examples:

What crime has this man committed to punish him so?
Quel *crime cet homme a-t-il commis pour le punir ainsi?*
To *what* passion is he inclined? *A* quelle *passion est-il enclin?*
What game shall we play at? *A* quel *jeu jouerons-nous?*

RULE 88.—what, *expressed by* que, *or* qu'est-ce que.

When the interrogative pronoun *what*, signifies *what thing*, it is expressed in French by *que* or by *qu'est-ce qui* for the nominative, and by *que* or, *qu'est-ce que* for the accusative. Examples:

What has happened to you?
Que *vous est-il arrivé?* or, qu'est-ce qui *vous est arrivé?*
What do you blame in that work?
Que *blâmez-vous?* or, qu'est-ce que *vous blâmez dans cet ouvrage?*

RULE 89.—what *is expressed by* quoi *after a Preposition.*

When the pronoun *what* is in the genitive, dative, or after a preposition, and signifies *what things*, it is always expressed by *quoi*, whether the sentence be interrogative or not. Examples:

In *what* am I guilty? *En* quoi *suis-je coupable?*
I know of *what* he complains; *Je sais de* quoi *il se plaint.*
Of *what* do you accuse me? *De* quoi *m'accusez-vous*?
It is in *what* you are mistaken; *C'est en* quoi *vous vous trompez.*

CHAPTER IX.

On the different Sorts of Interrogations.

RULE 90.——*Interrogations made with* où, d'où, comment, &c.

Besides the interrogative pronouns, of which we have treated before; a question is often asked with the following adverbs, *combien,* how much, how many; *comment,* how; *pourquoi,* what for; *quand,* when; *où,* where; *d'où,* from whence; *par où,* through what place. Examples:

How many horses have you got?
Combien *avez-vous de chevaux?*
How does your father do to-day?
Comment *se porte Monsieur votre père aujourd'hui?*
Why do you not answer? Pourquoi *ne répondez-vous pas?*
When will you come to see us? Quand *viendrez vous nous voir?*
Where are you going? Où *allez-vous?*
From *whence* do you come? D'où *venez-vous?*

RULE 91.——*The Pronouns* je, tu, il, *&c. go after the Verb in an interrogation.*

When the following pronouns, *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles, ce,* or *on,* are the nominative case of a verb interrogatively used, they are placed immediately after it, or its auxiliary. Examples:

Are *you* sick?	Have *you* been sick to-day?
Etes-vous *malade?*	*Avez*-vous *été malade aujourd'hui?*
Do you learn French?	Have *you* learnt Italian?
Apprenez-vous *le François?*	*Avez*-vous *appris l'Italien?*
Is there any news?	Have *you* heard any news?
Dit-on *des nouvelles?*	*Vous* a-t-on *dit des nouvelles?*

In an interrogative sentence we put alway a hyphen (-) between the verb and the pronoun; as *parlez-vous? viendront-ils?* If the verb ends with a vowel, and the pronoun begins with another, we put between them a (-t-) with two hyphens, in order to avoid the hiatus which would result from the meeting of two vowels. Examples:

Does he speak?	Will he come?	Does she sing well?
Parle-t-il?	*Viendra*-t-il?	*Chante*-t-elle *bien?*

A verb which ends in *e* mute in the first person singular, takes an acute accent, when it is interrogatively used. Examples:

I speak,	do I speak?	I walk,	do I walk?
Je parle,	*Parlé-je?*	*Je me promène,*	*Me promené-je?*

N. B. When a verb interrogatively used has but one syllable in the first person singular of the present of the indicative mood, we ask the question with *est-ce-que.* Thus:

Do I lose?	Do I sleep?
Est-ce-que je perds?	*Est-ce-que je dors?*
not *perds-je?*	*dors-je?*

RULE 92.—*In an Interrogation the Substantive goes before the Verb.*

1 When a substantive, or any of the following pronouns, *ceci, cela, aucun, quelqu'un, personne,* or *rien,* are the nominative case of a verb interrogatively used, they begin the sentence in French, and the verb is always followed by *il* or *elle; ils* or *elles;* as if there was no nominative case before Examples:

Is the dinner ready? *Le dîner est*-il *prêt?*
Is that good to eat? *Cela est*-il *bon à manger?*
Did any body ask for me? *Quel qu'unm'a-t*-il *demandé?*
Is the company come? *La compagnie est*-elle *arrivée?*

As if it was: the dinner is *it* ready? that is *it* good to eat? and so on for all others.

2. However when the sentence begins by an interrogative expression, as who, *qui*, what, *que* or *quoi*, how much, *combien*, where, *où*, when, *quand*, &c. the pronouns *il, elle, ils, elles*, may be omitted, and the substantive should be placed after the verb, and even after the participle in the compound tenses. Examples:

Who is that man? Qui *est cet homme?*
What does your son do? Que *fait votre fils?*
Where is your uncle gone? Où *est allé votre oncle?*

RULE 93.—*est-ce là*, is that? *n'est-ce pas là*, is not that?

The English put the demonstrative pronouns *this* or *that* for the singular, and *these* or *those* for the plural before the possessive pronouns *my, his, your, their*, &c. when they ask to whom belongs such or such a thing. These sorts of interrogation are expressed in French by *est-ce là*, or *sont-ce là*, if the sentence is affirmative; and by *n'est-ce pas là*, or *ne sont-ce pas là*, if the sentence is negative. Examples:

Is that your house? Est-ce là, *votre maison?*
Are these your gardens? Sont-ce là, *vos jardins?*
Is not that your house? N'est-ce pas là *votre maison?*
Are not these your gardens? Ne sont-ce pas là *vos jardins?*

All sentences of this kind are expressed in the same manner.

RULE 94.——*Interrogations rendered by* est-ce que, *or* n'est-ce pas.

The English often ask a question less to be informed if such a thing is or is not, than to shew their surprise, that it

is so; these sorts of interrogations are expressed in French by *est-ce que.* Examples:

It does not rain, does it? Est-ce *qu'il pleut?*
Your brother is not dead, is he?
Est-ce *que votre frère est mort?*

If the question is negative, the first part of the sentence having positively affirmed that the thing in question is such or such, it is expressed in French by *n'est-ce pas que,* at the beginning of a sentence, or by *n'est-ce pas,* at the end. Example:

It is good weather, is it not?
N'est-ce pas qu'*il fait beau temps?* or *il fait beau temps;* n'est-ce pas?
We have seen the King, have we not?
N'est-ce pas que *nous avons vu le Roi?* or *nous avons vu le Roi;* n'est-ce pas?

CHAPTER X.

Different sorts of que.

There are in French five distinct sorts of *que,* called *(que)* relative, *(que)* interrogative, *(que)* admirative, *(que)* conditional, and *(que)* conjunctive. Having spoken at large of the two first in the seventh and eighth chapters, we will next treat of the remaining three.

RULE 95.—que *of Admiration,* how *or* how much.

The *que* of admiration expresses wonder or surprise; it answers to the English words *how, how much, how many.* Examples:

How happy you are! Que *vous êtes heureux!*

How wonderful are the works of God!
Que *les ouvrages de Dieu sont admirables!*
How I hate the impious! Que *je hais les impies!*
How much money you have! Que *vous avez* d'*argent!*
How many misfortunes he has experienced!
Que de *malheurs il a éprouvés!*

Observe, 1. That the adjective which follows *how* in English, is always put after the verb in French. Example:

How unhappy I am! *Que je suis malheureux!*

2. That if *how much,* or *how many,* are followed by a substantive, the *que* which answers to them is always followed by *de* in French. Example:

How much trouble you take for me!
Que de *peine vous prenez pour moi!*

N. B. If *how many* was preceded by the preposition *of, to,* or any other, it should be expressed by *combien de,* and not by *que.* Example:

To how many dangers have I not been exposed in France;
A combien de *dangers n'ai-je pas été exposé en France.*

RULE 96.—que *conditional,* whether, *or* if, *in English.*

The conditional *que* is used in the beginning of a sentence, for the word *whether,* and in the middle to avoid the repetition of *si:* in both cases it governs the subjunctive mood. Examples:

Whether he does it or not, I do not care;
Qu'*il le fasse ou non, je ne m'en soucie pas.*
If somebody comes and I am out, send for me;
S'il vient quelqu'un et que *je sois sorti, envoyez-moi chercher.*

RULE 97.—que *used for several Conjunctions.*

The *que* conjunctive may be used for many conjunctions, and particularly for the ten following:

1. Afin que, *that.*
2. A moins que, *unless.*
3. Avant que, *before.*
4. Cependant, *yet.*

5. De peur que, *for fear.*	8. Parce que, *because.*
6. Depuis que, *since.*	9. Quand, *when.*
7. Jusqu'à ce que, *till.*	10. Pourquoi, *why.*

Examples:

1. Come here, *that* I may speak to you;
   Venez-ici, que *je vous parle.*
2. I will not go and see him, *unless* he invites me;
   Je n'irai pas le voir qu'*il ne m'en prie.*
3. You shall not go out *before* it is light;
   Vous ne partirez pas qu'*il ne soit jour.*
4. Though he should have all the gold in the world, *yet* he would not be satisfied;
   Il auroit tout l'or du monde, qu'*il ne seroit pas content.*
5. Go out quickly, *for fear* the master should come;
   Sortez promptement que *le maître ne vienne.*
6. How long is it *since* your brother is dead;
   Combien y a-t-il que *votre frère est mort?*
7. Wait till the rain is over; *Attendez* qu'*il ne pleuve plus.*
8. If I did not come yesterday, it was *because* I had business;
   Si je ne vins pas hier, c'est que *j'avois des affairs.*
9. I was at London the day *when* he died;
   J'étois à Londres le jour qu'*il mourut.*
10. *Why* do you not answer when I speak to you?
    Que *ne répondez-vous quand je vous parle?*

Note. The conjunction *que* is placed between two verbs, and serves to particularise the sense of the first; this conjunction must be used in French every time the word *that* is or could be expressed in English. Examples:

I think one cannot be happy without practising virtue;
Je pense qu'*on ne peut être heureux sans pratiquer la vertu.*

I maintain he is in the right; it appears you are in the wrong;
Je maintiens qu'*il a raison; il paroît* que *vous avez tort.*

Observations.

The word *que* is also used, 1. To join the two terms of a comparison; as, *je suis plus jeune* que *vous;* I am younger *than* you. 2. To restrain a negative sentence, then it stands for *but* or *only;* as, *je n'ai* que *quinze ans;* I am *but* fifteen years of age. 3. To express a wish, a command, an imprecation or indignation; as, qu'*il périsse l'impie;* may the impious perish.

CHAPTER XI.

OF INDETERMINATE PRONOUNS.

RULE 98.—*Use of the Particle* on, *one.*

All vague and general reports expressed in English by *they say, we say, people say, one says, it is said, it is reported,* and such like, are rendered in French by *on,* with the verb in the third person singular. Examples:

People say, it is thought, they maintain every where that it is so;
On dit, on croit, on soutient partout que la chose est ainsi.
One is not always master of oue's passions.
On n'est pas toujours maître de ses passions.

The passive voice is seldom used in French, therefore, when the passive verb is not followed by a substantive and the preposition *by,* we often turn the passive into active, putting the pronoun *on* instead of the nominative used in English; thus *it is said, it is reported, &c.* are expressed by *on dit, on rapporte,* &c. Examples:

It is believed that peace will be made this year;
On *croit que la paix se fera cette année.*

Have letters been received from France to-day?
*A-t-*on *reçu des lettres de France aujourd'hui?*
A courier has been dispatched to Spain;
On *a envoyé un courier en Espagne.*

On must be repeated before every verb of which it is the nominative case. Example:

They praise, blame, threaten, punish, &c.
On *loue,* on *blâme,* on *menace,* on *punit,* &c.

Observe, The learner must take care not to express *they* by *on,* except when it is employed absolutely without any reference to a substantive plural; when *they* relates to a substantive plural, it is expressed by *ils* or *elles.*

RULE 99.—Cases where l'on *is used instead of* on.

On takes elegantly an *l'* after the words *et, si,* or *ou.* Examples:

If we would practise virtue, we should be happy in this world, and procure ourselves an eternal happiness;
Si l'on *pratiquoit la vertu, on seroit heureux sur la terre, et* l'on *se procureroit un bonheur éternel.*
You have been, or will be soon rewarded;
On *vous a récompensé, ou l'on vous récompensera bientôt.*

L'on is also used after *que,* when the next verb begins by *c,* or *q.* Examples:

We learn better what we understand, than what we do not:
On apprend mieux ce que l'on *comprend, que ce que* l'on *ne comprend pas.*
It seems they quarrel with the servants.
Il semble que l'on *querelle les domestiques.*

N. B. *L'on* sounds better than *on* in the above sentences, and is always used by good authors in such cases, provided it be not followed by *le, la, les,* in which case *on* never takes an *l.* Thus we could not say, *mettez là votre lettre, et l'on la lira;* but we must say, *et on la lira.*

RULE 100.—*Different Significations of* mème.

The words *the same* are expressed in French by *le* or *la méme* for the singular, and by *les mémes* for the plural, whether they be joined or relative to a substantive. Examples:

The same thing does not please every body;
La même *chose ne plaît pas à tout le monde.*
Customs are not *the same* in every country;
Les usages ne sont pas les mêmes *dans tous les pays.*

The word *méme* is often used in French to give more energy to the speech; in that case it comes after a substantive or a pronoun, and answers to the English expressions, *himself, herself, itself,* &c. Examples:

The king *himself* opposed it; *Le roi* même *s y opposa.*
Religion *itself* forbids it; *La religion* même *le défend.*

In this occasion we more generally place *lui, elle, eux, elles,* before *même,* as, *Le roi* lui-même *s'y opposa; la religion* elle-même *le défend.*

The word *même,* is sometimes an adverb; and answers then to the English words *also* or *even.* Example:

We must love every body, *even* our enemies;
Il faut aimer tout le monde, même *nos ennemis.*

RULE 101.—plusieurs, *many,* or *several.*

The words *many* and *several* are expressed by *plusieurs,* always plural of both genders. Examples:

Many deceive themselves when they want to deceive others;
Plusieurs *se trompent en voulant tromper les autres.*
Do not apply yourself to *several* things at once.
Ne vous appliquez pas à plusieurs *choses à la fois.*

RULE 102.—un autre, *pronoun and adjective,* another.

The indeterminate pronouns *other, another,* are expressed

by *un autre* for the singular, and by *les autres*, for the plural. These words are either pronouns or adjectives; when pronouns, they are always masculine; and when adjectives, they agree in gender and number with the substantive to which they have reference. Examples:

Another would not have forgiven you so easily as I did;
Un autre *ne vous auroit pas pardonné si facilement que moi.*
Do not speak ill of *others*, if you would not have *others* speak ill of you.
Ne parlez pas mal des autres, *si vous ne voulez pas que les* autres *parlent mal de vous.*

N. B. When the word *others* is in the genitive or dative cases, or preceded by a preposition, it is most commonly expressed in French by *autrui*. Examples:

We must not covet *other men's* goods;
Il ne faut point désirer le bien d'autrui.
Do not do by *others* what you would not be done by;
Ne faites point à autrui *ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fît.*
People often excuse in themselves what they condemn *in others*;
On excuse souvent en soi ce que l'on condamne en autrui.

RULE 103.—chacun, *always singular and masculine*, every one.

The indeterminate pronouns, *every one, every body*, are generally expressed by *chacun*, always *masculine* and *singular*. Examples.

God will reward *every body* according to his works;
Dieu rendra à chacun *selon ses œuvres.*
Every one lives after his own way;
Chacun *vit à sa manière.*

Nevertheless, if we speak to some ladies, we must employ *chacune* in the feminine. Example:

Every one will read in her turn;
Chacune *lira à son tour.*

The word *every* before a substantive is expressed by *chaque*, adjective singular. Examples:

Every science has its principles;
Chaque science a ses principes.
Every country has its customs;
Chaque pays a ses usages.

The word *each* employed with relation to a substantive plural expressed before, is always singular, and expressed by *chacun*, masc. *chacune*, fem. Examples:

Put these books *each* in its place;
Remettez ces livres chacun *à sa place.*
The pictures of great painters have *each* their merit;
Les tableaux des grands maîtres ont chacun *leur mérite.*
Those two sentences have *each* a different sense;
Ces deux phrases ont chacune *un sens différent.*

RULE 104.—quelqu'un, *sing. and masc.* somebody

The indeterminate pronouns *somebody, any body,* are expressed by *quelqu'un* singular and masculine. Examples:

Somebody will come to dine with us;
Quelqu'un *viendra dîner avec nous.*
Has ever *any body* doubted of the existence of God?
Quelqu'un *a-t-il jamais douté de l'existence de Dieu?*

The words *some* and *any* before a substantive are expressed by the partitive article *du, de la, des,* or *by quelque*. Examples:

Give me *some* ink, *some* paper, and *some* pens;
Donnez moi de *l'encre,* du *papier, et* des *plumes.*
There are *some* faults in this work;
Il y a des *défauts (or* quelques *défauts) dans cet ouvrage.*

When *some* or *any* are substantively used, they are expressed by *quelques-uns* or *quelques-unes*, always plural. Examples:

I will make use of *some* of your books;
Je me servirai de quelques-uns *de vos livres.*
Do you know *any* of these ladies?
Connoissez-vous quelques-unes *de ces dames*?

When *some* or *any* have reference to a substantive used in the preceding sentence, they are usually expressed by *en*, as we have seen before, rule 51. Example:

I have *some* oranges, will you have *any*?
J'ai des oranges, en *voulez-vous*?

Of tout *and its various Constructions.*

The word *tout* admits of a great diversity in the French language, being either a substantive, an adjective, a pronoun, or even an adverb, according to the following explanations.

RULE 105.——le tout, *substantive sing. and masc.* the whole.

When the English words *the whole* are not placed before a noun, they are substantives, and expressed by *le tout*, always singular and masculine. Examples:

The whole is greater than a part;
Le tout *est plus grand que la partie.*
I will take *the whole*; *Je prendrai* le tout.

The words *all* or *every thing*, followed by a verb, are also substantives, and expressed by *tout*, but without an article. Examples:

All is vanity in this world; Tout *est vanité en ce monde.*
Fortune, dignities, honour, *every thing* disappears when we die;
Biens, dignités, honneurs, tout *disparoît à la mort.*

RULE 106.——tout le, toute la, *adj.* all *or* the whole.

When the words ***all*** or ***the whole*** come before a substantive, they are adjectives, and expressed by ***tout le,*** or ***toute la,*** for the singular, and *by **tous les*** or ***toutes les*** for the plural.

I am with *all* the respect possible, Sir, &c.
Je suis avec tout le *respect possible, Monsieur, &c.*
The whole fleet is at sea; Toute la *flotte est en mer.*

Note. When ***tout*** stands for the word *every* placed before a substantive, it takes an article in the plural, but not in the singular. Examples:

Every man is mortal; Tout *homme est mortel.*
Come and see us *every* day; *Venez nous voir* tous les *jours.* (And not tout *l'homme est mortel;* nor *venez nous voir tous jours* *.)

RULE 107.—tout ce qui, tout ce que, *pronoun,* all that, every thing that.

The English words, ***all that, every thing that,*** and also *whatever,* signifying ***all that,*** are pronouns, and expressed in French by ***tout ce qui,*** or ***tout ce que,*** always singular and masculine. Examples:

All that you say is true; Tout ce que *vous dites est vrai.*
It is not *all* gold *that* glitters; Tout ce qui *brille n'est pas or.*
You have not seen *every thing that* was curious;
Vous n'avez pas vu tout ce qu*'il y avoit de curieux.*

RULE 108.——tout, *declinable and indeclinable,* quite.

When the word *tout* stands for the adverbs *quite, entirely, although,* or the first *as* of a sentence where that word is twice used, it is always indeclinable before an adjective or a participle masculine, singular or plural. Example:

* Except, however, *tout le monde,* for *every body,* and not *tout monde.*

Philosophers, *as* learned *as* they are, sometimes are mistaken; *Les philosophes* tout *savans qu'ils sont, se trompent quelquefois.*

It is also indeclinable before an adjective or a participle feminine of both numbers which begins with a vowel or *h* mute; but it is declinable before an adjective or a participle feminine which begins with a consonant, and agrees with it in gender and number. Examples:

Your mother is *quite* alarmed; your sisters are *quite* cast down;
Votre mère est tout *alarmée; vos sœurs sont* tout *abattues.*

Those above are indeclinable; the following are declinable:

Your mother was *quite* surprised at that news;
Votre mère fut toute *surprise à cette nouvelle.*
Your sisters, *as* rich and handsome *as* they are, do not marry;
Vos sœurs, toutes *riches et* toutes *belles qu'elles sont, ne se marient point.*

Three sorts of quelque.

There are three sorts of *quelque*, which must be carefully distinguished: the *first* comes before an adjective, and is always indeclinable; the *second* takes an *s* when it comes before a substantive plural; the *third* comes before the verb *être*, and is spelt in two words; thus, *quel que*, masculine singular; *quelle que*, feminine; *quels que*, masculine plural; *quelles que*, feminine. All of them govern the verb following in the subjunctive mood.

The three following rules will explain the arrangement of those sentences in which this word occurs, where the French construction is different from the English.

RULE 109.—quelque, *indeclinable*, however, howsoever.

When the English words, *however, howsoever, though*

ever so much, or *so little,* come before an adjective, or a participle, they are expressed in French by *quelque* indeclinable.

The construction of the sentence is as follows; 1. *quelque* is put the first; 2. the adjective; 3. *que*; 4. the verb in the subjunctive mood; 5. the substantive; the rest as in English. Examples:

Though his fault be ever so great, I will forgive him;
Quelque *grande que soit sa faute, je lui pardonnerai.*
However praise-worthy your conduct may be, it will be condemned;
Quelque *louable que soit votre conduite, elle sera condamnée.*

RULE 110.—quelque, *adj. and declinable,* whatever.

The English word *whatever,* followed by a substantive, and any other verb than *to be,* is an adjective, and expressed by *quelque* before a noun singular, and by *quelques,* with an *s* before a noun plural.

The construction is: 1. *quelque;* 2. the substantive; 3. *que;* 4. the verb in the subjunctive mood; the rest as in English. Examples:

Whatever faults he has committed, I will forgive him;
Quelques *fautes qu'il ait commises, je lui pardonnerai.*
Whatever fortune you have, you are never satisfied;
Quelques *biens que vous ayez, vous n'êtes jamais content.*

RULE 111.—quel que, quelle que, &c. *in two words.*

The English word *whatever,* followed by a substantive and the verb *to be,* is expressed in French by *quel que,* in two words, for the masculine singular, and by *quelle que,* for the feminine: by *quels que* for the masculine plural, and by *quelles que* for the feminine.

The construction is: 1. *quel* or *quelle*; 2. *que*; 3. the verb in the subjunctive mood; 4. the substantive; the rest as in English. Examples:

Whatever his fault may be, I will forgive him;
Quelle que *soit sa faute, je lui pardonnerai* *.
Whatever your talents may be, you will not succeed without application;
Quels que *soient vos talens, vous ne réussirez pas sans application.*

RULE 112.—quelque chose que, *or* quoi que ce soit, *whatever.*

The English words *whatever, whatsoever*, meaning *all things soever*, are usually expressed by *quelque chose que*, or *quoi que*, when they are placed at the beginning of the sentence, and by *quoi que ce soit*, when they are placed after a verb. They govern the next verb in the subjunctive mood. Examples:

Whatever you do for me, I will reward you for it;
Quelque chose que, *or* quoi que *vous* fassiez *pour moi, je vous en récompenserai.*
I complain of nothing *whatever*; I have seen nothing *whatever*;
Je ne me plains de quoi que ce soit; *je n'ai vu* quoi que ce soit.
I wish he would apply to any thing *whatever*;
Je désire qu'il s'applique à quoi que ce soit.

RULE 113.—quiconque, qui que ce soit, *whoever, whosoever.*

The indeterminate pronouns *whoever, whosoever*, are most usually expressed by *quiconque*, when they mean *all those who*. Examples:

* I have repeated the same sentence in these three rules, to render more obvious the difference between *quelque* indeclinable, *quelques* adjective, and *quel que* in two words.

Whoever abandons himself to his passions renders himself unhappy.
Quiconque *s'abandonne à ses passions, se rend malheureux.*
God will punish *whosoever* transgresses his laws;
Dieu punira quiconque *transgresse ses lois.*
I speak to *whoever* will hear me;
Je parle à quiconque *veut m'entendre.*

They are usually expressed by *qui que ce soit, qui* or *que* when they mean *whatever may be the person, who.* Examples:

Of *whomsoever* you speak, avoid slander;
De qui que ce soit *que vous parliez, évitez la médisance.*
Whosoever will ask for me, tell I am not at home;
Qui que ce soit qui *me demande, dites que je n'y suis pas.*
Whomsoever you meet with, do not say you have seen me;
Qui que ce soit que *vous rencontriez, ne dites pas que vous m'avez vu.*

N. B. Instead of *qui que ce soit,* we often more elegantly use *qui que,* except before *il* or *ils;* so in the preceding examples we could say: *de qui que vous parliez; qui que vous rencontriez;* but we never say *qui qui* in the nominative, for *qui que ce soit qui.*

The pronouns *any body whatever,* when the sentence expresses a doubt, and *nobody whatever,* are almost indifferently expressed by *qui que ce soit,* or *personne.* Examples:

I doubt whether that will please *any body whatever;*
Je doute que cela plaise à personne, or *à* qui que ce soit.
He trusts *nobody whatever;*
Il ne se fie à personne, or *à* qui que ce soit.
Nobody whatever has spoken to me against you;
Personne (or qui que ce soit) *ne m'a parlé contre vous.*

RULE 114.—l'un l'autre, *one another.*

The indeterminate pronouns *one another, each other,* are expressed in French by *l'un l'autre,* masc. *l'une l'autre,* fem.

with reference to a noun singular, and by *les uns les autres,* mas. *les unes les autres,* fem. with reference to a noun plural.

The first of these pronouns, is always in the nominative in French; thus, if they are preceded by a preposition in English, that preposition must come between them in French. Example:

My brother and your sister speak always *of one another,* they think *of one another,* they are made *for one another,* they cannot live without *one another;*
Mon frère et votre sœur parlent toujours l'un de *l'autre ils pensent l'un* à *l'autre, ils sont faits l'un* pour *l'autre, ils ne sauroient vivre l'un* sans *l'autre.*

RULE 115.—l'un et l'autre, *both.*

L'un et l'autre, &c.	*Both, one and another.*
L'un ou l'autre, &c.	*Either.*
Ni l'un ni l'autre, &c.	*Neither* *.

These pronouns agree in gender and number with the noun to which they have reference; if they are preceded by a preposition in English, that preposition must be repeated in French, before *l'un* and before *l'autre.* Examples:

I will do it *for* them both;
Je le ferai pour *l'un et* pour *l'autre.*
I will do it *for* either;
Je le ferai pour *l'un ou* pour *l'autre.*
I will do it *for* neither of them;
Je ne le ferai ni pour *l'un ni* pour *l'autre.*

N. B. The word *both* followed by a substantive is expressed by *les deux;* as, *je me sers* des deux *mains;* I use *both* hands. *Both* followed by *and* is a conjunction sometimes expressed by *et,* but oftener left out in French. Example:

He is happy *both* in peace and war;
Il est heureux et *en paix et en guerre,* or *il est heureux en paix et en guerre.*

* *Ni l'un ni l'autre* requires *ne* before the verb.

RULE 116.—personne, *nobody.*

The indeterminate pronoun *nobody,* is expressed by *personne,* masculine and singular. *Personne* requires *ne* before the verb. Examples:

Nobody knows whether he is worthy of love or hatred;
Personne *ne sait s'il est digne d'amour ou de haine.*
You please *nobody; Vous ne plaisez à* personne.

Personne is masculine as a pronoun, and feminine as a substantive; thus we say:

I know *nobody* so learned as you;
Je ne connois personne *si savant que vous.* masculine.
I know a *person* as learned as you are;
Je connois une personne *aussi savante que vous.* feminine.

RULE 117.—aucun, pas un, *none, not one.*

None is expressed by *aucun* or *aucune,* and *not one* by *pas un* or *pas une,* adj. both require *ne* before the verb Examples:

I had many friends, yet *not one* has relieved me;
J'avois bien des amis, cependant pas un *ne m'a secouru.*
None of you were there; Aucun *de vous n'y étoit.*
That gentleman had six daughters; *none* of them has married;
Cet homme a eu six filles; aucune, or pas une *ne s'est mariée.*

RULE 118.——rien, *nothing.*

The word *nothing* is expressed by *rien,* and requires *ne,* before the verb which agrees with it. Example:

Nothing is more rare than a true friend;
Il n'y a rien *de plus rare qu'un véritable ami.*
I have seen *nothing* finer; *Je n'ai* rien *vu de plus beau.*

N. B. *Rien* is always joined by the preposition *de* to the

following adjectives when they are not separated by the verbs *être, paroître, sembler*.

Aucun, personne, and *rien,* do not require *ne* before the verb in a sentence interrogative or of doubt; but then *aucun,* stands for *any, personne,* for *any body,* and *rien* for *any thing*. Examples:

Was there ever *any body* more eloquent than Cicero?
Y eut-il jamais personne *plus éloquent que Cicéron?*
Have you ever seen *any thing* more curious?
Avez-vous jamais rien *vu de plus curieux?*
I question if there is *any* author without a fault;
Je doute qu'il y ait aucun *auteur sans défaut.*

CHAPTER XII.

SEVERAL MODES OF NEGATION.

This chapter is divided into two sections: *the first* explains the mode of expressing in French the English negations; *the second* shews the several circumstances in which a negative expression is required in French, when there is none in English.

SECTION THE FIRST.

How to express in French the English Negations.

The English negations are these eight: 1. *nobody;* 2. *none* or *not one;* 3. *nothing;* 4. *neither;* 5. *never;* 6. *by no means;* 7. *no;* 8. *not*. As we have spoken in the preceding rules of the three first, it only remains to treat here of the five others.

RULE 119.—*ni* or *ni ne*, neither *and* nor.

The word *neither*, besides its being an indeterminate pronoun, (as we said before, rule 115,) is also a negative conjunction when it is followed by *nor*. When *neither* and *nor* come before two nouns, or two verbs in the infinitive mood, they are both expressed by *ni* and *ne* before the verb which is in the indicative mood. Examples:

Neither prayers *nor* threatenings could move him;
Ni *prières* ni *menaces* ne *purent l'attendrir*.
He knows *neither* how to read *nor* write;
Il ne *sait* ni *lire* ni *écrire*.

If these conjunctions come before two verbs in the indicative mood, *neither* is expressed by *ne* before the first, and *nor* by *ni ne* before the second. Examples:

I *neither* praise *nor* blame you;
Je ne *vous loue*, ni ne *vous blâme*.
He *neither* loves *nor* hates you;
Il ne *vous aime*, ni ne *vous hait*.

RULE 120.—ne *and* jamais, *never;* nullement, *by no means*.

The word *never* is rendered by *jamais; by no means* is expressed by *nullement; jamais* and *nullement* require *ne* before the verb, without *pas* after. Examples:

I have *never* seen the queen of England;
Je n'*ai* jamais *vu la reine d'Angleterre*.
I *by no means* approve of your conduct;
Je n'*approuve* nullement *votre conduite*.

RULE 121.—*aucun, aucune, point de,* or *non,* no.

The negative expression *no* before a substantive is expressed in French by *point de,* or by the adjective *aucun,* masculine, *aucune* feminine, before a noun singular, and by *aucuns* masculine, *aucunes* feminine, before a noun plural. Examples:

You have no good qualities;
Vous n'*avez* aucunes *bonnes qualités, (ou* point de *bonnes qualités.)*
He takes *no* care of his business;
Il n'*a* aucun *soin (ou* point de *soin) de ses affaires.*

When *no* is used in answer to a question, it is expressed in French by *non*. Examples:

Have you seen the king; *no,* sir;
Avez-vous vu le roi? non, *monsieur.*
Do you learn French? *no,* madam?
Apprenez-vous le François? non, *madame.*

RULE 122.—ne pas, non pas que, *or* non que, not.

The negative *not* is usually expressed by *ne* before the verb or its auxiliary, and by *pas* or *point* after. Examples:

Do *not* speak to him; have you not spoken to him?
Ne *lui parlez* pas; ne *lui avez-vous* pas *parlé?*

If the verb, negatively used, is in the present infinitive, *ne* and *pas* are usually both placed before it. Examples:

I go away, *not* to displease you;
Je m'en vais pour ne pas *vous déplaire.*
One must be a fool not to perceive that he is in the wrong.
Il faut être insensé pour ne pas *voir qu'il a tort.*

The word *not* followed by *that,* is expressed by *non que,* or *non pas que* with the following verb in the subjunctive. Example:

I will do it, *not that* I am obliged, but to have peace.
Je le ferai, non que, *(ou* non pas que) *j'y sois obligé, mais pour avoir la paix.*

RULE 123.——ne *without* pas, *before some verbs,* not.

The negative *not* is expressed by *ne,* without *pas* or *point,* with these four verbs *cesser,* to cease, *oser,* to dare: *pouvoir,* to be able, and *savoir,* used in the conditional, for, to be able. Examples:

He does not cease complaining; *Il* ne *cesse de se plaindre.*
I dare not speak to him; *Je* n'*ose lui parler.*
I cannot walk; *Je* ne *puis marcher.*
You cannot refuse him; *Vous* ne *sauriez le refuser.*

Note. The words *no more,* or *not any more,* are expressed by *ne* before the verb, and *pas plus* after, when *more* is followed by *than;* but they are expressed by *plus* without *pas,* when *more* is not followed by *than.* Examples:

I am *no more than* twenty years of age;
Je n'*ai* pas plus *de vingt ans.*
It is *no more than* a week since I saw your brother; you will see him *no more;*
Il n'*y a* pas plus *de huit jours que j'ai vu votre frère; vous ne le verrez* plus, (not *vous ne le verrez* pas plus.)

RULE 124.—*Distinction between* pas *and* point.

1. *Point* is more exclusive than *pas.* The first denies absolutely and signifies *not at all.* The second denies sometimes but in part. Examples:

All the accused persons are not guilty;
Tous ceux qu'on accuse ne sont point *coupables;*
Tous ceux qu'on accuse ne sont pas *coupables.*

The first sentence signifies that none of the accused are guilty; the second signifies only that the accused are not all guilty.

2. We make use of *point* in an interrogative sentence, when we doubt of the thing in question, and of *pas* when we are persuaded of it. Example:

Have you not seen my brother to-day?
N'avez-vous point *vu mon frère aujourd'hui?*
N'avez-vous pas *vu mon frère aujourd'hui?*

In the first sentence, I doubt whether you have seen my brother or not; in the second, I am persuaded you have seen him.

3. We make use of *point* to denote a thing that happens never or very seldom, and of *pas* to denote that it does not happen in the time we are speaking, though it may happen very often. Example:

You do not study;
Vous n'étudiez point; *Vous n'étudiez* pas.

The first sentence signifies, that habitually you do not study; and the second, that you do not study at present, though you may be very studious.

N. B. This distinction is very exact, and conformable to the practice of the best French authors; there are many circumstances however, in which they can be almost indifferently used.

SECTION THE SECOND.

Negative Expressions in French, and not in English.

RULE 125.——*Negation used in French, and not in English.*

The particle *ne* is used in French after a comparative, and after *autre, autrement*, otherwise: in all these cases there is no negative expression in English. Examples*:

Your brother is younger than I thought;
Votre frère est plus jeune *que je* ne *pensois.*
The affair is quite different from what it had been related to me;
L'affaire est tout autre *qu'on* ne *me l'avoit racontée.*

RULE 126.—*Negation used in French, and not in English.*

The particle *ne* is used after these four verbs, *appréhender*, to apprehend; *avoir peur*, to be afraid; *craindre*, to fear;

* *Ne* should be left out if the verb be in the infinitive mood, or if there be a conjunction between *que* and the verb, as we said before, in the second note of rule 40.

empêcher, to hinder; and *prendre garde*, to take care, when they are affirmatively used. Examples:

I will hinder him from doing you wrong;
J'empêcherai qu'il ne *vous fasse tort.*
I fear he will come; *Je crains qu'il* ne *vienne.*

Douter, to doubt, on the contrary, requires *ne* before the next verb, when negatively used. Example:

We do not doubt that he is come;
Nous ne *doutons* pas *qu'il* ne *soit arrivé.*

RULE 127.——*Negation used in French, and not in English.*

The five following conjunctions, *à moins que*, unless; *de crainte que*, for fear; *de peur de*, lest; *que*, used for unless, and *que*, for before or until; require the particle *ne* before the next verb. Examples:

I will not go there *unless* you come with me;
Je n'irai pas, à moins que *vous* ne *veniez avec moi.*
I will not give you a watch *until* you speak French;
Je ne vous donnerai pas de montre, que *vous ne parliez François.*

Observe, That all the verbs and conjunctions mentioned in these two rules govern the verb in the subjunctive mood, (*si* excepted.)

RULE 128.——ne *before the verb, and* que *after*, but *or* only.

When the words *but* or *only* after a verb, mean *no more*, *nothing else*, or *nobody else than*, they are expressed by *ne* before the verb, and *que* after, not by *mais*. Examples:

I have *but* twenty guineas; *Je* n'*ai* que *vingt guinées.*
I have *but* one true friend; *Je* n'*ai* qu'*un véritable ami.*

The word *only*, after a verb, is expressed by *seulement* in other circumstances. Example:

If you had *only* two friends, you would succeed;
Si vous aviez seulement *deux amis, vous réussiriez.*

When *but* begins the second part of a sentence, it is usually expressed by *mais*. Example:

I could wish to travel, *but* I have no money;
Je voudrois bien voyager, mais *je n'ai pas d'argent.*

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

The verb is a part of speech the most extensive, the most essential, and altogether the most difficult either to teach or to learn; therefore close attention must be given to the following pages, in which the construction of verbs is fully explained, and the different genius of the two languages is pointed out with accuracy and precision.

CHAPTER XIII.

Of the Government of Verbs.*

RULE 129.—*Verbs which govern the Genitive in French.*

1. Most of the reflected verbs not mentioned in the next rule govern the genitive in French, whatever case they govern in English. Examples:

To perceive a trick, *S'apercevoir* d'*un tour.*
To seize upon some thing, *S'emparer* de *quelque chose.*
To inquire about news, *S'enquérir* de *nouvelles.*
To remember an history, *Se ressouvenir* d'*une histoire.*

And so on for others.

* The alphabetical series of verbs at the end of the grammar having been carefully revised and corrected in this edition, the learner must have recourse to it, whenever he does not find the government of some verbs in the following rules.

2. The following, *abuser*, to abuse; *avoir besoin*, to want; *avoir pitié*, to pity; *être altéré*, to thirst after; *hériter*, to inherit; *jouir*, to enjoy; *manquer*, to want; *médire*, to traduce; *rendre raison*, to account for; *rougir*, to blush; *user*, to use; govern the genitive in French. Thus we say:

To want money,	*Avoir besoin* d'*argent*.
To pity the unfortunate,	*Avoir pitié* des *malheureux*.
To inherit a large fortune,	*Hériter* d'un *grand bien*.
To enjoy good health,	*Jouir* d'une *bonne santé*.
To traduce one's neighbour,	*Médire* de *son prochain*.

And so on with the rest.

3. The verbs passive followed in English by the prepositions *from* or *with*, govern the genitive case in French. Examples:

He is loaded *with* spoil, *Il est chargé* de *butin*.
This book is translated *from* the English;
Ce livre est traduit de *l'Anglois*.

4. The word *by*, which comes sometimes after a verb passive, is usually expressed by *de*, when the verb does not express any action of the body, and by *par* when it does. Thus we say:

Your brother has been killed *by* two thieves;
Votre frère a été tué par *deux voleurs*.
Your sister is esteemed *by* every body;
Votre sœur est estimée de *tout le monde*.

However, we make use of *par* to avoid the repetition of *de*, though the verb does not express any action of the body. Example:

Your work will be severely censured by the critics;
Votre ouvrage sera censuré d'une *manière sévère*, par *les critiques*, (not *des critiques*.)

RULE 130.—*Verbs which govern the Dative in French.*

1. The twenty-two following reflected verbs govern the dative.

S'abandonner,	*To abandon one's self.*
S'accoutumer,	*To accustom one's self.*
S'adonner,	*To addict one's self.*
S'amuser,	*To amuse one's self.*
S'appliquer,	*To apply one's self.*
S'apprêter,	*To dispose one's self.*
S'arrêter,	*To stop.*
S'attacher,	*To stick to.*
S'adresser,	*To apply one's self.*
Se déterminer,	*To resolve upon.*
Se disposer,	*To prepare one's self.*
S'endurcir,	*To inure one's self.*
S'engager,	*To engage.*
S'exposer,	*To expose one's self.*
Se fier,	*To trust.*
S'habituer,	*To accustom one's self.*
S'obstiner,	*To be determined.*
S'opiniâtrer,	*To be determined.*
S'occuper,	*To employ one's self.*
S'opposer,	*To oppose one's self.*
Se plaire,	*To take delight in.*
Se préparer,	*To prepare one's self.*

Examples:

Accustom yourself to study; *Accoutumez-vous* à *l'étude.*
I apply myselfto mathematics;
Je m'applique aux *mathématiques.*
Do not stop in London; *Ne vous arrêtez pas* à *Londres.*

2. The following verbs govern the dative in French whatever case they govern in English:

Consentir,	*to consent.*	Désobéir,	*to disobey.*
Contrevenir,	*to infringe.*	Nuire,	*to hurt.*
Contribuer,	*to contribute.*	Obéir,	*to obey.*
Déplaire,	*to displease.*	Obvier.	*to obviate.*

Pardonner,	*to forgive.*	Résister,	*to resist.*
Parvenir,	*to attain.*	Songer,	*to think of.*
Penser,	*to think of.*	Subvenir,	*to relieve.*
Plaire,	*to please.*	Succéder,	*to succeed.*
Remédier,	*to remedy.*	Survivre,	*to outlive.*
Resembler,	*to resemble.*		

Examples:

To displease one's master,	*Déplaire à son maître.*
Do not disobey your parents,	*Ne désobéissez pas à vos parens.*
I forgive my enemies,	*Je pardonne à mes ennemis.*
He pleases every body,	*Il plaît à tout le monde.*
I think of your business,	*Je pense à votre affaire.*

3. The following, *applaudir*, to applaud; *insulter*, to insult; *persuader*, to persuade; *renoncer*, to renounce; *rêver*, to dream; *travailler*, to work; sometimes govern the accusative case, but most frequently the dative. Thus we say:

Dat.	Acc.
You insult every body;	You insult my misfortune;
Vous insultez tout *le monde.*	*Vous insultez* à *ma misère.*

RULE 131.—*Verbs which govern the Accusative in French.*

All verbs which may be used in the passive voice govern the accusative in French. For instance, *aimer, estimer, punir, récompenser,* &c. govern the accusative, because we can say, *il est aimé, il est estimé, il est puni,* &c.

By the same rule the following verbs,

Abattre,	*to pull down.*	déchirer,	*to tear off.*
accepter,	*to accept of.*	demander,	*to ask for.*
admirer,	*to wonder at.*	dénoncer,	*to inform against.*
approuver,	*to approve of.*		
attendre,	*to wait for.*	déraciner,	*to root out.*
chercher,	*to look for.*	époudrer,	*to wipe off.*
critiquer,	*to cavil at.*	examiner,	*to examine into.*

huer,	*to hoot at.*	paraphraser,	*to comment upon.*
injurier,	*to rail at.*	regarder,	*to look at.*
juger,	*to judge of.*		
lorgner,	*to leer on.*		

And some others which are attended by a preposition in English, govern the accusative in French, because they may be used in the passive; we can say, for instance,

Your offer has been accepted; *Votre offre a été acceptée.*
This tree has been pulled down; *Cet arbre a été abattu.*
Your conduct has been approved;
Votre conduite a été approuvée.

And so on with the rest.

RULE 132.—*Verbs which govern the Accusative and Genitive Cases.*

When the following verbs govern two nouns or pronouns, not joined by a conjunction, the first is put in the accusative, and the second in the genitive case in French.

Absoudre,	*to absolve.*	détourner,	*to divert.*
accabler,	*to overwhelm.*	dissuader,	*to dissuade.*
accepter,	*to accept.*	emplir,	*to fill.*
accuser,	*to accuse.*	exclure,	*to exclude.*
avertir,	*to warn.*	expulser,	*to turn out.*
bannir,	*to banish.*	informer,	*to inform.*
blâmer,	*to blame.*	louer,	*to praise.*
chasser,	*to expel.*	menacer,	*to threaten.*
combler,	*to fill up.*	obtenir,	*to obtain.*
corriger,	*to correct.*	recevoir,	*to receive.*
débusquer,	*to drive out.*	priver,	*to deprive.*
dégoûter,	*to disgust.*	soupçonner,	*to suspect.*
délivrer,	*to free.*		

Examples:

To load an enemy with injuries;
Accabler une ennemi d'injures.

To accept the offers of a friend:
Accepter les offres d'un ami.
To fill a bottle with wine; *Emplir une bouteille de vin.*
To blame one's conduct; *Blâmer la conduite de quelqu'un.*
To exclude a liar from society;
Exclure un menteur de la société.

RULE 133.—*Verbs which govern the Accusative and the Dative.*

When the following verbs govern two nouns or pronouns, that which has reference to persons is to be put in the dative in French, and the other in the accusative. If they have both reference to persons, that before which the preposition *to* is or could be prefixed is put in the dative and the other in the accusative. No verb governs two accusative cases in French.

Accorder,	*to grant.*	expliquer,	*to explain.*
adresser,	*to direct.*	ôter,	*to take away.*
annoncer,	*to announce.*	pardonner,	*to forgive.*
apporter,	*to bring.*	prédire,	*to foretel.*
attribuer,	*to attribute.*	préférer,	*to prefer.*
avouer,	*to own.*	prendre,	*to take.*
communiquer,	*to communicate*	présenter,	*to present.*
confesser,	*to confess.*	prêter,	*to lend.*
confier,	*to trust.*	procurer,	*to procure.*
conseiller,	*to advise.*	promettre,	*to promise.*
déclarer,	*to declare.*	raconter,	*to relate.*
dédier,	*to dedicate.*	rapporter,	*to bring back.*
demander,	*to ask.*	refuser,	*to refuse.*
devoir,	*to owe.*	rendre,	*to return.*
dire,	*to tell.*	renvoyer,	*to send back.*
donner,	*to give.*	répéter,	*to repeat.*
écrire,	*to write.*	reprocher,	*to reproach.*
enseigner,	*to teach.*	répondre,	*to answer.*
envoyer,	*to send.*	révéler,	*to reveal.*
épargner,	*to spare.*	vendre,	*to sell.*

Examples:

Grant him that favour; *Accordez-lui cette grâce.*

Tell me the truth; *Dites-moi la vérité.*
To beg the master's leave;
Demander permission au maître.
To reproach one with a fault;
Reprocher une faute à quelqu'un.

Observations.

Jouer governs the genitive, when it signifies *to play* on some musical instrument; and the dative, when it signifies *to play* at some game. Examples:

You play well on the violin, but you do not play well at cards;
Vous jouez bien du *violon,* gen. *mais vous ne jouez pas bien* aux *cartes,* dat.

Some verbs are followed in French by a preposition different from that used in English; such are,

To spit *at* one; *Cracher* sur *quelqu'un.*
To fire *at* the enemy; *Faire feu* sur *l'ennemi.*
To intermeddle *with* other people's business;
S'ingérer dans *les affaires des autres.*
To struggle *with* death; *Lutter* contre *la mort.*
To shoot *at* a hare; *Tirer* sur *un lievre:* and some others.

Most verbs which govern the genitive or ablative in Latin, govern the genitive in French; and most of those which govern the accusative or dative in Latin, require the same case in French. This observation will be of great use to those who have learnt Latin.

CHAPTER XIV.

OF THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

As there are three tenses in the infinitive mood, called *present, gerund,* and *participle,* this chapter is naturally di-

vided into three sections: *the first* describes the circumstances in which a verb is used in the infinitive mood, without being preceded by any preposition; it explains also the cases in which it is preceded by *de*, by *a*, or by *pour*; *the second* teaches that a gerund is always indeclinable in French, and furnishes an easy method to distinguish it from a verbal adjective, which is always declinable; *the third* establishes two general rules, which explain when a participle is declinable or indeclinable.

SECTION THE FIRST.

Of the Infinitive Present.

The infinitive present is sometimes used in French without any preposition before it; it is sometimes preceded by *de*, sometimes by *à*, and sometimes by *pour*, according to the following rules:

RULE 134.—*Infinitive without Preposition.*

A verb in the infinitive present has no preposition before it.

1. When it is substantively used, and is the nominative case of another verb. Examples:

> To speak too much is dangerous;
> *Trop* parler *est dangereux.*
> To relieve the poor is a praise-worthy action;
> Secourir *les pauvres est une action digne de louange.*

2. When it is governed in the infinitive by any of the following verbs:

Aller,	*to go.*	déclarer,	*to declare.*
croire,	*to believe.*	devoir,	*to owe.*
daigner,	*to deign.*	entendre,	*to hear.*

envoyer,	*to send.*	pouvoir,	*to be able.*
espérer,	*to hope.*	savoir,	*to know.*
faire,	*to do.*	sembler,	*to appear.*
falloir,	*to be requisite.*	souhaiter,	*to wish.*
laisser,	*to let.*	soutenir,	*to maintain.*
nier,	*to deny.*	venir,	*to come.*
oser,	*to dare.*	voir,	*to see.*
paroître,	*to appear.*	vouloir,	*to be willing.*
prétendre,	*to pretend.*		

Examples:

Go and see your friend; *Allez* voir *votre ami.*
Do you believe you are in the right?
Croyez-vous avoir *raison?*
Deign to answer me; *Daignez me répondre.*
I will cause your orders to be executed;
Je fairai exécuter *vos ordres.*

And so on with the rest.

Note. The verb *faire* is used for *to do, to make, to cause,* and *to oblige;* in all cases it is immediately followed in French by the next verb, which it governs in the infinitive without a preposition. Examples: *je ferai* bâtir *une maison, je vous ferai* faire *votre thême.*

RULE 135.——*Infinitive with* de.

We place the preposition *de* before a verb in the *infinitive* mood.

1. After a substantive which governs a verb as to be inseparably connected. Examples:

It is time to set out; *Il est temps* de *partir.*
You have no cause to be angry with me;
Vous n'avez pas sujet d'*être fâché contre moi.*

2. The English preposition *for,* with a gerund after a substantive is generally expressed by *de* with the infinitive; Example:

I make you my compliment *for* having succeeded;
Je vous fais mon compliment d'*avoir réussi.*

3. After an adjective, whenever by inverting the sentence, the infinitive may serve as a nominative to this expression, is to be, *c'est être*, followed by the adjective, and likewise after *capable*, able, *incapable*, unable, *digne*, worthy, *indigne*, unworthy, and perhaps a few others. Examples:

You are very clever to have succeeded so well;
Vous êtes très-adroit d'*avoir si bien réussi.*

We may say: to have succeeded so well *is to be* very clever; *avoir si bien réussi*, c'est être *trés-adroit.*

He is worthy of being preferred for that employment;
Il est digne d'*être préféré pour cet emploi.*

4. After any adjective preceded by the impersonal verbs *il est*, it is, *il semble*, it seems, *il paroît*, it appears, and after several impersonal verbs which could be expressed by *il est*, with the adjectives derived from them, as *il convient, il importe, il suffit*, for *il est convenable, il est important, il est suffisant*. Examples:

It will be enough to speak to him;
Il suffira de *lui parler.*
It is dangerous to trust every body;
Il est dangereux de *se fier à tout le monde.*

5. Most commonly when it is governed by any other reflected verbs than those mentioned in the rule 130. Examples:

I am sorry I spoke of it, since that displeases you;
Je me repens d'*en avoir parlé puisque cela vous déplaît.*
He has a mind to go and see you to-morrow evening;
Il se propose d'*aller vous voir demain au soir.*

6. When it is governed in the infinitive by any of the following verbs:

Accuser,	*to accuse.*	menacer,	*to threaten.*
affecter,	*to affect.*	mériter,	*to deserve.*
avertir,	*to advise.*	négliger,	*to neglect.*
blâmer,	*to blame.*	offrir,	*to offer.*
cesser,	*to cease.*	omettre,	*to omit.*
commander,	*to command.*	ordonner,	*to order.*
conjurer,	*to intreat.*	oublier,	*to forget.*
conseiller,	*to advise.*	parler,	*to speak.*
craindre,	*to fear.*	permettre,	*to permit.*
détourner,	*to deter.*	persuader,	*to persuade.*
défendre,	*to forbid.*	plaindre,	*to pity.*
différer,	*to differ.*	presser,	*to urge.*
dire,	*to tell.*	préscrire,	*to prescribe.*
dispenser,	*to excuse.*	prier,	*to pray.*
dissuader,	*to dissuade.*	promettre,	*to promise.*
écrire,	*to write.*	proposer,	*to propose.*
empêcher,	*to hinder.*	refuser,	*to refuse.*
enjoindre,	*to enjoin.*	remercier,	*to thank.*
entreprendre,	*to undertake.*	résoudre,	*to resolve.*
essayer,	*to try.*	sommer,	*to summon.*
feindre,	*to feign.*	soupçonner,	*to suspect.*
finir,	*to finish.*	supplier,	*to beg.*

Examples:

He does not cease complaining; *Il ne cesse* de *se plaindre.*
I advise you to stay here; *Je vous conseille* de *rester ici.*
I beg of you to forgive him; *Je vous prie* de *lui pardonner.*

RULE 136.——*Infinitive with* à.

We place the preposition *à* before a verb in the infinitive mood:

1. After a substantive, when to express something to be done. Examples:

I have no time to lose; *Je n'ai point de temps* à *perdre.*
I know a house to be sold; *Je connois une maison* à *vendre.*

2. After a substantive, when the following verb is or may be expressed by *in* with the gerund. Example:

I have great pleasure to see you; *(in seeing you.)*
J'ai beaucoup de plaisir à *vous voir,* (en vous voyant.)

3. After any adjectives, except in the two cases mentioned in the preceding rule, or when the verb expresses a cause, a motive. Examples:

I am ready to go out; This fruit is good to eat;
Je suis prêt à *partir. Ce fruit est bon* à *manger.*

But we ought to say: I am glad to see you; *je suis aise de vous voir,* as the sentence means: I am glad *because* I see you.

4. The following verbs also govern the infinitive with *à.*

Accoutumer,	*to accustom.*	employer,	*to employ.*
admettre,	*to admit.*	encourager,	*to encourage.*
aider,	*to help.*	engager,	*to engage.*
aimer,	*to like.*	exhorter,	*to exhort.*
apprendre,	*to learn.*	inviter,	*to invite.*
autoriser,	*to authorise.*	penser,	*to think of.*
condamner,	*to condemn.*	persister,	*to persist in.*
chercher,	*to endeavour.*	porter,	*to induce to.*
consister,	*to consist.*	pousser,	*to excite to.*
disposer,	*to dispose to.*	rester,	*to stay.*
donner,	*to give.*	travailler,	*to work.*

and some others.

Example:

I learn to dance, I like to sing, &c.
J'apprends à *danser, J'aime* à *chanter,* &c.

5. The reflected verbs, *s'abandonner, s accoutumer, s'adonner,* and others mentioned before (rule 130), govern the infinitive with the preposition *à.* Example:

Prepare yourself to answer me;
Disposez-vous à *me répondre.*

RULE 137.—*Infinitive with* de *or* à.

The verb *manquer* usually governs the infinitive with *de*, when it is negatively used, and with *à* when affirmatively. Example:

I will not fail *to* punish you, if you neglect *to* do your exercise;
Je ne manquerai pas de *vous punir, si vous manquez* à *faire votre thème.*

Tâcher governs the infinitive with *de* when it means *to endeavour*, and with *à* when it means *to aim at*. Examples:

I will endeavour to satisfy you;
Je tâcherai de *vous satisfaire.*
He aims at doing me a prejudice;
Il tâche à *me porter préjudice.*

Tarder governs the infinitive with *de*, when it signifies *to long*, and with *à* when it signifies *to delay*. Example:

I long *to* see your brother, he delays a long time *to* come;
Il me tarde de *voir votre frère, il tarde bien* à *venir.*

Venir governs the infinitive without a preposition, when it signifies *to come;* it governs the infinitive with *de*, when it is to express a *thing just happened;* and with *à*, when it signifies *to happen*. Examples:

Come and see me to-morrow; *Venez me voir demain.*
My father is just gone out; *Mon père vient* de *sortir.*
If it happens *to* rain, you will be wet;
S'il vient à *pleuvoir, vous serez mouillé.*

The following, *commencer, continuer, contraindre, forcer, s'efforcer*, and *obliger*, govern the infinitive with *de* or *à* according as it sounds best.

RULE 138.——*Infinitive with* pour.

We use in French the preposition *pour* before an infinitive,

to express the *end*, the *design*, or the *cause* for which a thing is done, and, in general, every time the preposition *to* could be changed into *in order to*, without altering the sense of it. Examples:

I am come to see you; *Je suis venu* pour *vous voir.*
I will do every thing to oblige you;
Je ferai tout pour *vous obliger.*
Men are born to live in society;
Les hommes sont nés pour *vivre en société.*

The preposition *pour* is also used after the words, *assez*, enough; *trop*, too much; *suffire*, and *être suffisant*, to be sufficient. Example:

You are tall enough to be a soldier, but you are too great a coward to enlist;
Vous êtes assez *grand* pour *être soldat, mais vous êtes* trop *lâche* pour *vous engager.*

Note. When after a verb the preposition *for* comes before a gerund, it is expressed in French by *pour*, with the infinitive present, if the verb has reference to a present or future time, and with the compound of the present, if it refers to a past time. Examples:

How much do you ask for making me a suit of clothes?
Combien me demandez-vous pour *me faire un habit?*
He was hanged for robbing; *Il fut pendu* pour *avoir volé.*

RULE 139.—*Infinitive instead of the Gerund.*

We never put a gerund in French after any other preposition than *en.* Thus we put the present of the infinitive after the preposition *de, à, par, après, pour, sans,* and every other. Examples:

One cannot speak against the truth *without being* guilty;
On ne peut trahir la vérité sans se rendre *coupable.*
I must begin *by saying* my lessons;
Il faut que je commence par réciter *mes leçons.*

SECTION THE SECOND.

Of the Gerund.

All gerunds end in *ant* in French and are indeclinable; many adjectives derived from verbs end also in *ant*, and are declinable; the following rule teaches how to distinguish them invariably.

RULE 140.—*The Gerund is always indeclinable in French.*

A word ending in English in *ing*, and in *ant* in French, is an adjective when it precedes the substantive in English, and a gerund, when it comes after; in the first case it agrees in French with the substantive to which it is joined; it is always indeclinable in the second. Examples:

Declinable.

An obliging lady;	*Une dame* obligeante.
A convincing proof;	*Une preuve* convainquante.
Bleating sheep;	*Des brebis* bêlantes.
Surprising effects;	*Des effets* surprenans.

Indeclinable.

A lady obliging her friends;
Une dame obligeant *ses amis.* (not *obligeante.*)
A proof convincing every body;
Une preuve convainquant *tout le monde.* (for *qui convainc.*)

It will be observed from the preceding examples, that a word ending in *ant* in French, is an adjective when it qualifies the substantive to which it is joined, and a gerund when it governs a substantive after it.

RULE 141.—*When the English Gerund is rendered by the Indicative.*

When an English gerund has reference to a substantive which is not in the nominative case, it is rendered in French by a verb in the indicative mood. Example:

Alexander asked the physicians *standing* by him, if he should die of his illness;

Alexandre demanda aux médecins qui se tenoient *autour de lui, s'il mourroit de sa maladie.* (not *aux médecins* se tenant.)

RULE 142.——by, *expressed by* en.

An English gerund, preceded by the preposition *by*, is most commonly rendered in French by the gerund with *en*. Examples:

We have obtained peace *by making* great sacrifices;
Nous avons obtenu la paix en faisant *de grands sacrifices.*
More glory is acquired *by defending* than *by accusing* one's fellow citizens;
On acquiert plus de gloire en défendant *ses concitoyens, qu'*en *les* accusant.

Note 1. An English gerund, preceded by the prepositions *of, from, without, after, for,* &c. is rendered in French by the infinitive, with *de, à, pour,* or *sans,* (as we have seen before) and not by the gerund.

Note 2. An English gerund preceded by the verb *to be,* is expressed in French by the indicative of the principal verb only. Examples:

I am speaking; *Je parle.* I was dancing; *Je dansois.*
What are you doing here? *Que faites-vous ici?*

Note 3. An English gerund, preceded by the definite article *the,* is rendered by a substantive in French. Example:

The learning of languages is difficult;
L'étude des langues est difficile.

SECTION THE THIRD.

Of the Participle.

RULE 143.—*When the Participle is declinable in French.*

A participle is always declinable in French, and must agree in gender and number with the word to which it relates, as an adjective.

1. When it is joined immediately to a substantive. Examples:

A book well written; a letter well written;
Un livre bien écrit; *une lettre bien* écrite.

2. After the verbs *être,* to be, *paroître,* to appear, *sembler,* to seem, *avoir l'air,* to look. Examples:

My brother is tired; my sister is tired;
Mon frère est fatigué; *ma sœur est* fatiguée.
Your father appears afflicted; *Votre père paroît* affligé.
Your mother appears afflicted; *Votre mère paroît* affligée.
That tragedy seems to me well written;
Cette tragédie me semble bien écrite.
Your daughter looks very afflicted;
Votre fille a l'air très-affligée.

3. In the compound tenses of reflected verbs when the second pronouns *me, te, se, nous,* and *vous* are in the accusative, which is always the case when the reflected verb does not govern another accusative; so we must say:

She has wounded herself; *elle s'est* blessée;
because *se* is in the accusative; but we should say:

She has wounded her foot; *elle s'est* blessé *le pied;*
because *se* is in the dative, and stands for *à elle-même.*

4. After the verb *avoir,* when the noun or pronoun antecedent being in the accusative, is governed by the partici-

ple, which is known when, by giving the sentence another turn, it could be put immediately after. Examples:

The land which I have *sold* is good and fruitful;
La terre que *j'ai* vendue *est bonne et fertile.*
The books I have *bought* are new;
Les livres que *j'ai* achetés *sont neufs.*
The rules which I have explained are difficult;
Les règles que *j'ai* expliquées *sont* difficiles.
What affair have you undertaken?
Quelle affaire avez-vous entreprise?

The participle agrees in these examples with the nouns *terre, livres, règles,* and *affaire,* since they can be placed immediately after, by giving the sentence another turn; we may say for instance, *j'ai vendu une terre, j'ai acheté des livres, j'ai expliqué des règles, vous avez entrepris une affaire.*

RULE 144.—*When the Participle is indeclinable.*

The participle is indeclinable after the word *avoir* in two cases.

1. When the verb *avoir* is not preceded by any noun or pronoun in the accusative. Examples:

He has studied; She has sung; They have spoken to her;
Il a étudié; *Elle a* chanté; *Elles lui ont* parlé.
Your mother has seen the king;
Votre mère a vu *le Roi.*
Your sisters have learnt French;
Vos sœurs ont appris *le François.*

2. When the noun or pronoun antecedent is not governed by the participle, but by the verb following, which is known when, by giving the sentence another turn, the noun antecedent comes after the infinitive, and not after the participle. Examples:

The house which I have advised you to buy is a new one.
La maison que je vous ai conseillé *d acheter est neuve.*

The rules which I have *begun* to explain are easy.
Les règles que j'ai commencé *à expliquer sont faciles.*

The participles *conseillé* and *commencé* are indeclinable, because we could not say, *j'ai conseillé la maison d'acheter*, I have advised the house to buy; *j'ai commencé les règles à expliquer*, I have begun the rules to explain; but we must say, *j'ai conseillé d'acheter la maison*, I have advised to buy the house; *j'ai commencé à expliquer les règles*, I have begun to explain the rules.

N. B. The verbs *faire*, and *laisser*, followed by an infinitive, form with it a sort of compound verb, and the participle is indeclinable. Examples:

That woman whom you have put to death;
Cette femme que vous avez fait mourir.
The opportunity which you have suffered to escape ·
L'occasion que vous avez laissé échapper.

Concord of the Verb with its Nominative.

RULE 145.—*The Verb agrees with its Nominative*

All the personal verbs agree in number and person with their nominative case. Examples:

I give; *Je donne.*	We give; *Nous donnons, &c.*
My father is dead;	My brothers are dead;
Mon père est mort;	*Mes frères sont morts.*

A verb is put in the third person plural, in both languages, when it has for its nominative case two substantives singular, joined by a copulative conjunction. Examples:

Homer and Virgil are the princes of Poets;
Homère et Virgile sont *les princes des Poëtes.*
The paper and ink are good for nothing;
Le papier et l'encre ne valent *rien.*

RULE 146.——*The Verb with nominatives of different persons.*

When a verb has several nominative cases of different persons, it is put in the plural, and agrees with the first, in preference to the other two, and with the second in preference to the third, and then it is preceded by *nous*, if it be in the first person, and by *vous*, if in the second. Examples :

My brother and I will go to-night to the play;
Mon frère et moi, nous allons *ce soir à la comédie.*
You and your sister will stay at home;
Vous et votre sœur, vous resterez *à la maison.*

RULE 147—*The Verb when preceded by* qui, &c.

The pronoun *qui* requires the verb following in the same number and person as the substantive or pronoun antecedent. Examples :

It is I who have seen him;	*C'est moi qui l'*ai *vu.*
It is he who has done it;	*C'est lui qui l'*a *fait.*
It is you who have spoken of it;	*C'est vous qui* en avez *parlé.*
It is they who have taken it;	*Ce sont eux qui l'*ont *pris.*

Some useful Observations.

1. When the English address God, they put the pronoun and verb in the singular; the French on the contrary, have them in the second person plural in prose. Example :

Our father who *art* in heaven, hallowed be *thy* name, &c.
Notre père qui êtes *aux cieux*, votre *nom soit sanctifié, &c**.

2. The pronouns and verbs are usually put in the second person plural in both languages, when we speak to one person, but if an adjective follows, it remains in the singular. Example :

* Not *notre père qui* es *aux cieux*, ton *nom soit sanctifié*, as we find in some prayer-books printed in England.

Sir, you are very obliging;
Monsieur, vous êtes très-obligeant.

3. The third person is elegantly used instead of the second, when we speak to persons for whom we have some consideration. Example:

Madam, will you come to the park?
Madame, veut-elle *venir au parc?* for *voulez-vous, &c.*

4. The second person singular is often used in French between intimate friends, and also between brothers and sisters, husband and wife, &c. as viens-*ici, mon frère;* come here, brother, (for venez-ici.)

5. Poets and Orators use the second person singular when they address God, Heroes, or Sovereigns, as in the following Sonnet of *Desbarreaux.*

Grand Dieu! *tes* jugemens sont remplis d'équité:
Toujours *tu prends* plaisir à nous être propice;
Mais j'ai tant fait de mal, que jamais *ta* bonté
Ne me pardonnera, qu'en blessant *ta* justice.

Oui, Seigneur, la grandeur de mon impiété
Ne laisse à *ton* pouvoir que le choix du supplice
Ton intérêt s'oppose à ma félicité,
Et *ta* clémence même attend que je périsse.

Contente ton désir, puisqu'il *t'*est glorieux;
Offense-toi des pleurs qui coulent de mes yeux:
Tonne, frappe, il est temps, *rends*-moi guerre pour guerre.

J'adore en périssant la raison qui *t'*aigrit:
Mais dessus quel endroit tombera *ton* tonnerre,
Qui ne soit tout couvert du sang de Jésus-Christ?

CHAPTER XV.

Of the Indicative Mood.

RULE 148.—*When the present of the Indicative is used.*

The present of the indicative, as, *je parle,* I speak; *je fais,* I do; *je reçois,* I receive, &c. is used in French:

1. To express a thing which is present at the time we are speaking. Examples:

It rains, *il pleut.* I am sick, *Je suis malade.*

2. To express a thing which we do habitually, though not at the moment in which we are speaking. Examples:

I learn French; *J'apprends le François.*
You go often to the play;
Vous allez *souvent à la comédie.*

3. To express an eternal truth. Examples:

God is merciful; *Dieu* est *miséricordieux.*
Men are mortal; *Les hommes* sont *mortels.*

4. To express in a more lively and emphatical manner a thing happened in a time quite past. Example:

I have seen your son dragged by his horses; he called to them to stop; his cries frightened them; they ran on, till his body was but one wound;
J'ai vu votre fils entraîné par ses chevaux, il veut *les rappeler; sa voix les* effraie, *ils* courent, *tout son corps n'est qu'une plaie.*

5. To express a future time at no great distance, when some other word in the sentence denotes futurity. Examples:

I shall set out to-night for London;
Je pars *ce soir pour Londres;* for *je partirai.*
I shall be ready in a moment;
Je suis *prêt dans un moment.*

RULE 149.—*When the Imperfect of the Indicative is used.*

The imperfect of the indicative, as *je parlois, je recevois,* &c. is used in French.

1. To express a present with respect to something past, and then it exactly answers the English expressions, *I was doing.* Examples:

I was writing you a letter when I received yours;
Je vous écrivois *une lettre, quand je reçus la vôtre.*
We were dining when we learnt that sad news;
Nous dînions, *quand nous apprîmes cette fâcheuse nouvelle.*

2. To express something past, but habitual, during a time not specified, and then it answers the English expressions, *I used to do.* Examples:

The Romans cultivated the arts, encouraged sciences, and rewarded merit;
Les Romains cultivoient *les arts,* encourageoient *les sciences, et* récompensoient *le mérite.*
Our ancestors went a hunting every day, and lived upon game;
Nos ancêtres alloient *tous les jours à la chasse, et ne* vivoient *que de gibier.*
Cæsar was a great general; Cicero was a great orator;
César étoit *un grand général. Cicéron* étoit *un grand orateur.*
Lewis the sixteenth was a good king;
Louis seize étoit *un bon roi.*

RULE 150.——*When the Preterite of the Indicative is used.*

The preterite of the indicative (as *je parlai,* I spoke; *je fis,* I did; *je reçus,* I received, &c.) is used in French, to express a particular fact or event which has happened but once, or very seldom, and in a time quite past, and at the distance of at least a day. Examples:

The Romans expelled Tarquin from Rome;
Les Romains chassèrent *Tarquin de Rome*

Cæsar was killed in the senate;
César fut tué dans le sénat.
Cicero had his head cut off.
Cicéron eut *la tête tranchée.*
I went yesterday to see your father;
J'allai *hier voir votre père.*

Useful Observations.

From the three preceding rules it appears, that a verb which is in the preterite in English, may sometimes be put in three different tenses in French.

1. In the *imperfect*, when it expresses a thing habitual, or which was present when another thing happened. Examples:

When I was in the country, I walked often;
Quand j'étois à la campagne, je me promenois *souvent.*
I was sick when you came;
J'étois *malade quand vous êtes venu.*

2. In the *preterite* when it denotes a particular fact, which happened at a time quite past. A time is past when the pronouns *this* or *our* could not be prefixed to it. Examples:

I walked yesterday; *Je me* promenai *hier.*
I was sick last week; *Je* fus *malade la semaine dernière.*

3. In the *compound of the present*, when the time is not quite past. Exampies:

I walked this morning for two hours;
Je me suis promené *ce matin pendant deux heures.*
I was very sick this week;
J'ai été *bien malade cette semaine.*

Observe. I have repeated the same examples, to render more obvious the distinction between the imperfect, the preterite, and the compound of the present.

RULE 151.—*When the Future and the Conditional are used.*

The future (as *je parlerai, je ferai, je recevrai,* &c.) is used in French as in English, to express a future time. Example:

Our bodies will rise again in the day of judgment;
Nos corps ressusciteront *au jour du jugement.*

The English often use the present tense, or the compound of the present, after the conjunctions, *when, as soon as,* or *after,* when they want to express a thing to come; the future, however, must always be used in French instead of the present, and the compound of the future instead of the compound of the present. Examples:

When I am in the country, will you come to see me?
Quand je serai *à la campagne, voulez-vous venir me voir?*
You will play, when you have finished your exercise;
Vous jouerez, quand vous aurez *fini votre thême.*

The conditional tense (as *je parlerois,* I would speak; *je ferois,* I would do; *je recevrois,* I would receive, &c.) which some Grammarians improperly call the imperfect of the subjunctive, is used in French as in English, to express a conditional sentence. Examples:

We should be happy, if we knew how to fix our desires;
Nous serions *heureux, si nous savions fixer nos désirs;*
Though you should be rich, yet you would not be more happy;
Quand vous seriez *riche vous ne* seriez *pas plus heureux.*

RULE 152.—*No future nor conditional after* si.

When the conjunction *si* signifies *whether,* the future and conditional are used after it in French as in English. Examples:

I do not know *if* (or *whether*) it will be good weather to-morrow;
Je ne sais s'il sera *beau temps demain.*

I do not know *if* (or *whether*) my brother would come, should I desire him;
Je ne sais si mon frère viendroit, *si je l'en priois.*

But when the conjunction *si* signifies *suppose that,* the English future must be rendered in French by the present, and the conditional by the imperfect. Examples:

You will become a learned man, if you *will study* well;
Vous deviendrez savant, si vous étudiez *bien,* (not *si vous étudierez.*
I should become rich, if I *would continue* my trade;
Je deviendrois riche, si je continuois *mon commerce,* (not *si je continuerois.)*

RULE 153.—*When the Compound of the Present is used.*

The compound of the present (as *j'ai parlé,* I have spoken; *j'ai fait,* I have done; *j'ai reçu,* I have received, &c.) is used in French to express a thing past, but in a time not quite elapsed. A time is not elapsed when the pronoun *this* or *our* is, or could be, prefixed to the words *age, year, month, week* or *day,* mentioned in the sentence. Examples:

Our age has produced great men:
Notre siècle a produit *de grands hommes,* (not *produisit,* nor *produisoit;*
We had much company this winter;
Nous avons eu *beaucoup de campagnie cet hiver* (not *nous eûmes.*

RULE 154—*When the other Compound Tenses are used.*

The compound of the imperfect (as *j'avois parlé, j'avois fait, j'avois reçu,* &c.) is used in French to express a thing done before another, which is also past: but it is employed when the previous action was habitual, or when nothing points out the approximation of the two actions. Example:

The king *had named* an admiral, when he heard of you;
Le roi avoit nommé *un amiral, quand on lui parla de vous*

The compound of the preterite (as *j'eus parlé*, *j'eus fait*, *j'eus reçu*, &c.) is also used to express a thing done before another: but like the preterite, it cannot be employed but for a time entirely elapsed, and besides it points out the approximation of the two actions, and for this reason it is most commonly used after the conjunctions *quand*, *dès que*, *aussitôt que*, *après que*. Example:

As soon as the parliament *was assembled*, the riot ceased;
Dès que le parlement se fut assemblé, *l'émeute cessa.*

The compound of the future and conditional are generally used in French as in English, and as they offer no difficulty, they require no explanation.

CHAPTER XVI.

Of the Use of the Subjunctive Mood.

This chapter is divided into three sections. The *first* enumerates the adjectives, pronouns, verbs, and conjunctions, which always govern the subjunctive mood. The *second* treats of the verbs and conjunctions which govern the following verb, sometimes in the indicative, and sometimes in the subjunctive and points out in what circumstances each mood must be used. The *third* explains when the verbs, governed in the subjunctive, must be used in the present, when in the preterite, and when in the compound tenses.

SECTION THE FIRST.

Words which always govern the Subjunctive Mood.

RULE 155.—*The Subjunctive is used after a Superlative.*

A verb preceded by *qui* or *que* is put in the subjunctive.

1. After a superlative, as we have said before, rule 43. Examples:

The best guard a king can have, is the heart of his subjects;
La meilleure garde qu'un roi puisse avoir *est le cœur de ses sujets.*
You are the most learned man I know in this town;
Vous êtes le plus savant que je connoisse *dans cette ville.*

2. After these five indeterminate pronouns, *quelque*, whatever; *qui que ce soit*, whoever; *personne*, nobody; *pas un*, not one; *aucun*, none; *rien*, nothing, as we have said before, speaking of indeterminate pronouns rule 109, and following. Examples:

Of whomsoever you speak, avoid slander;
De qui que ce soit que vous parliez, *évitez la médisance.*
I know nobody who is so happy as you are;
Je ne connois personne qui soit *aussi heureux que vous.*
I have seen nothing reprehensible in your conduct;
Je n'ai rien vu qu'on puisse *blâmer dans votre conduite.*

3. After the ordinal numbers, as, *le premier*, the first; *le second*, the second; *le troisième*, the third; *le dernier*, the last, &c. when preceded by a verb. Example:

You are the first friend I have met with in London;
Vous êtes le premier ami que j'aie *rencontré à Londres.*

4. After these two words, *le seul*, and *l'unique*, the only one; Example:

My son is the only one upon whom I can rely;
Mon fils est le seul sur qui je puisse *compter.*

N. B. In the preceding rules *qui* and *que* do not govern the subjunctive when they are preceded by a genitive case to which they relate. Examples:

This is the best reason you have just given me;
Voilà la meilleure des raisons que vous venez *de me donner.*

I do not know any of the ladies who live in your house;
Je ne connois aucune des dames qui demeurent *chez vous.*
Do not say any thing of what I trust to you;
Ne dites rien de ce que je vous confie.
I have read the first volume of the work you had lent to me.
*J'ai lu le premier volume de l'ouvrage que vous m'*aviez *prêté.*

RULE 156.—*The Subjunctive, is used after Verbs of* fear *or* doubt.

A verb preceded by the conjunction *que* is always used in the subjunctive, after verbs which express any doubt, wish, command, order, fear, ignorance, or any affection of the mind, and particularly after the following:

Aimer,	*to like.*	nier,	*to deny.*
commander,	*to command.*	ordonner,	*to order.*
craindre,	*to fear.*	prier,	*to pray.*
defendre,	*to forbid.*	se réjouir,	*to rejoice.*
désirer,	*to wish.*	souhaiter,	*to wish.*
douter,	*to doubt.*	vouloir,	*to be willing.*
s'étonner,	*to wonder.*		

and likewise after *charmé,enchanté,* or *bien aise,* very glad, *étonné,* astonished, *content,* satisfied, *fâché,* sorry, *affligé,* afflicted, *surpris,* surprised, preceded by *être, paroître, sembler, avoir l'air.* Examples:

I fear my father is dead;
Je crains que mon père ne soit *mort.*
I wish you may succeed; *Je désire que vous* réussissiez.
I doubt that he is come; *Je doute qu'il* soit *arrivé.*
I wish they would make peace;
Je souhaite qu'on fasse *la paix.*
I will have him obey me; *Je veux qu'il* m'obéisse.
I am sorry they have deceived you;
Je suis fâché qu'on vous ait *trompé.*

And so on with the rest above mentioned.

RULE 157.—*The Subjunctive is used after some Impersonal Verbs.*

A verb preceded by *que* is always put in the subjunctive, after the impersonals, *il faut*, it must; *il est fâcheux*, it is sad; *il est juste*, it is just; *il est injuste*, it is unjust; *il convient*, it becomes; *il importe*, or *il est important*, it matters; and generally after all those not mentioned in the next section, rule 160. Examples:

It is necessary that there is a God, creator of the universe;
Il est nécessaire qu'il y ait *un Dieu, créateur de l'univers.*
I must go to town; *Il faut que* j'aille *en ville.*
It is just that he should see her; *Il est juste qu'il la* voie.

And so on with the rest.

RULE 158.—*The Subjunctive is used after some Conjunctions.*

A verb is always put in the subjunctive mood after the twenty following conjunctions:

Afin que,	*that.*	nonobstant que,	*for all that.*
à moins que,	*unless.*	non que, non pas que,	*not that.*
avant que,	*before.*		
bien que,	*though.*	posé que,	*suppose that.*
de crainte que,	*for fear.*	pour que,	*that.*
de peur que,	*lest.*	pourvu que,	*provided.*
en cas que,	*if.*	quoique,	*though.*
encore que,	*though.*	sans que,	*without.*
jusqu'à ce que,	*till.*	soit que,	*whether.*
loin que,	*far from.*	supposé que,	*suppose that.*
malgré que,	*for all that.*		

Examples:

Unless you come with me, I will not go out;
*A moins que vous ne m'*accompagniez, *je ne sortirai pas.*
Though he is lazy, yet he improves much;
Bien qu'il soit *paresseux, il fait beaucoup de progrès.*

Send me your book, that I may read it;
Envoyez moi votre livre, afin que je le lise.
I will be ready before they are come;
Je serai prêt avant qu'ils soient *venus.*

N.B. The subjunctive is always used in the beginning of a sentence, to express surprise, an imprecation, or an ardent desire. Examples:

May you be happy! Puissiez-*vous être heureux!*
May I rather die, than not revenge!
Que je meure, *si je ne me venge!*

SECTION THE SECOND.

Verbs and Conjunctions which govern sometimes the Indicative and sometimes the Subjunctive.

RULE 159.—*Verbs which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive.*

The following verbs:

Affirmer,	*to affirm.*	maintenir,	*to maintain.*
assurer,	*to assure.*	oublier,	*to forget.*
apercevoir,	*to perceive.*	penser,	*to think.*
avouer,	*to confess.*	prédire,	*to foretel.*
conclure,	*to conclude.*	prévoir,	*to foresee.*
convenir,	*to agree.*	promettre,	*to promise.*
croire,	*to believe.*	publier,	*to publish.*
déclarer,	*to declare.*	savoir,	*to know.*
dire,	*to say.*	songer,	*to think.*
espérer,	*to hope.*	soutenir,	*to maintain.*
juger,	*to judge.*	supposer,	*to suppose.*
jurer,	*to swear.*	voir,	*to see.*

And in general all those which express the intellectual faculties of the mind, govern the indicative, when they are affirmatively used, and most commonly the subjunctive when

they are used negatively, interrogatively, or are preceded by the conjunction *si.* Examples:

I believe he *is* in the right; do you believe he *is* in the right? I do not believe he is in the right;
Je crois qu'il a *raison,* indicative; *croyez-vous qu'il* ait *raison?* *je ne crois pas qu'il* ait *raison,* subjunctive.
I hope he *will come;* Do you hope he *will come?*
J'espère qu'il viendra, indicative; *Espérez-vous qu'il* vienne? subjunctive.
Let us go, if you think it *will be* fine weather;
Partons, si vous pensez qu'il fasse *beau temps,* subj.

If we ask a question, less to be informed of a thing than to inform others of it, the second verb is put in the indicative, and not in the subjunctive. Examples:

Have I told you that my father *is* dead?
Vous ai-je dit que mon père est *mort?* indicative.
Did you perceive they *wanted* to deceive me?
Vous aperçûtes-vous qu'on vouloit *me tromper?* indic.

RULE 160.—*Impersonal, which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive.*

The impersonal verbs denoting *evidence, certitude,* or *probability* of a thing (such as *il est clair,* it is clear; *il est certain,* it is certain; *il est vrai,* it is true; *il est probable,* it is probable, &c.) govern the next verb in the indicative, when they are affirmatively used, and most frequently in the subjunctive, when they are used interrogatively, negatively, or conditionally. Examples:

It is certain that you are in the wrong, but it is not certain I am in the right;
Il est certain que vous avez *tort,* indicative; *mais il n'est pas certain que* j'aie *raison,* subjunctive.
It is probable they will make peace this year. Is it probable they will make peace this year?
Il est probable qu'on fera *la paix cette année,* indicative; *Est-il probable qu'on* fasse *la paix cette année?* subj.

It is true that I may be deceived. If it were true that I might be deceived;

Il est vrai que je puis *me tromper*, indicative. *S'il étoit vrai que je* pusse *me tromper*, subjunctive.

RULE 161.—*Conjunctions which govern the Indicative and Subjunctive.*

The following conjunctions, *de manière que, de sorte que, tellement que,* so that, *sinon que,* except that, govern the indicative, when the sentence affirms positively that the thing in question is or will be, and the subjunctive when the thing is not certain, but rather wished for. Examples:

ind. { Your son behaves in such a manner, that he *is,* and *will* always *be,* loved by his masters;
Votre fils se comporte de manière qu'il est *et* sera *toujours aimé de ses maîtres.*

sub. { Behave in such a manner, that you *may be* loved and esteemed by your masters;
Comportez-vous de manière que vous soyez *aimé et estimé de vos maîtres.*

Note, The word *que,* used in the second part of a sentence to avoid the repetition of a conjunction occuring in the first, governs the same mood as the conjunction it stands for. Examples:

ind. { As soon as my brother writes to me, and I have the opportunity, I will let you know;
Aussitôt que mon frère m'écrira, *et que* j'aurai *des occasions, je vous donnerai de ses nouvelles.*

sub. { Unless you come or write to me, I will not do it;
A moins que vous ne veniez *ou que vous ne* m'écriviez, *je ne le ferai pas.*

The word *que,* used to avoid the repetition of *si,* governs the subjunctive. Example:

If somebody comes, and I am not at home, send for me.
S'il vient quelqu'un, et que *je ne* sois *pas à la maison, envoyez-moi chercher.*

SECTION THE THIRD.

Which tense of the Subjunctive must be used.

RULE 162.—*Which Tense of the Subjunctive mood must be used.*

A verb required to be in the subjunctive mood by any of the preceding rules, is usually put in the present, when the first verb is in the present or future of the indicative or in the imperative; and in the preterite, when the first verb is in any other tense. Examples:

I fear lest he should come;
Je crains qu'il ne vienne; present.
I feared lest you would come;
Je craignois que vous ne vinssiez; preterite.
I shall be obliged to do it; *Il faudra que je le* fasse.
I should be obliged to do it; *Il faudroit que je le* fisse.

RULE 163.—*Compound Tenses of the Subjunctive.*

The compound tenses of the subjunctive are used to express a past action, but prior to that expressed by the preceding verb; the compound of the present is used after the present or future of the indicative, or the imperative, and the compound of the preterite after any other tense. Examples:

I fear you have complained of me;
*Je crains que vous n'*ayez *fait des plaintes de moi.*
I feared you would have complained of me;
*Je craignois que vous n'*eussiez *fait des plaintes de moi.*
I do not believe he has learnt geography; I did not believe he had learnt geography;
Je ne crois pas qu'il ait *appris la géographie*; pres. *je ne croyois pas qu'il* eût *appris la géographie*; pret.

RULE 164.—*Preterite of the Subjunctive.*

Though the first verb be in the present or future, the second is put in the preterite subjunctive or in its compound,

when the sentence implies a condition, and particularly if the conjunction *si* is followed by a verb in the imperfect. Examples:

Do you think they would refuse me, if I requested it of them?
Croyez-vous qu'ils me refusassent, *si je les en priois?*
I do not think your brothers would have come, had it not been for me.
Je ne crois pas que sans moi vos frères fussent *venus.*

Sans moi is a conditional expression which signifies, if I had not persuaded them to come.

CHAPTER XVII.

OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

Would, could, should, and *might.*

The words *would, could, should,* and *might,* which we have hitherto considered only as the distinctive marks of tenses, and with which we have conjugated all our verbs regular and irregular, are also sometimes distinct verbs of themselves, and expressed in French by *vouloir, pouvoir,* or *devoir,* according to the following rules:

RULE 165.—1. *How to express* will *and* would.

When the words *will* and *would* are not joined to any verb, they are verbs of themselves, and must be expressed by *vouloir,* to be willing. Thus we say:

Why do you not do your exercise? because I *will* not, or I am not willing;
Pourquoi ne faites-vous pas votre thême? parce que je ne veux *pas.*

If I am not married, it is because I *would* not, or have not been willing;
Si je ne suis pas marié, c'est que je n'ai pas voulu

The words *will* and *would*, though followed by another verb, are also expressed by the verb *vouloir*, when they imply an explicit will. Examples:

I will be obeyed; *Je* veux *qu'on m'obéisse.*
He would have you beg his pardon:
Il vouloit *que vous lui demandassiez pardon.*

2. *Should.*

The word *should* is a verb, and must be expressed in French by some tense of the verb *devoir*, when it is used for *ought to*, denoting *necessity* or *duty*. Examples:

You *should* not do that, since religion forbids it;
Vous ne devez *pas le faire, puisque la religion le défend.*
If he wants money, he *should* ask me for some;
S'il a besoin d'argent, il devroit *m'en demander.*

3. *Could*, or *might*

The words *could* and *might* are verbs, when they denote *possibility*; they are both expressed in French by the verb *pouvoir*, to be able. Examples:

If I *could* do you that service, I would not refuse you.
Si je pouvois *vous rendre ce service, je ne vous refuserois pas.*
You *could* have done your exercise, if you had been willing.
Vous auriez pu *faire votre thême, si vous aviez* voulu.

The words *may* and *can* are usually verbs, and expressed in French by the present tense of the verb *pouvoir*. Example;

You *can* write your letter before dinner;
Vous pouvez *écrire votre lettre avant diner.*

N. B. The words *would, could,* or *might,* may sometimes be expressed indifferently, either as a verb, or as the mark of the conditional; thus we say, *je* pourrois *vous payer, si je voulois,* or *je vous payerois, si je voulois;* I could pay you if I would: but this being seldom the case, the foregoing explanation must be particularly attended to.

RULE 166—*In which tense* would *and* could *are to be put in French.*

When the irregular *would, could, should,* or *might,* are not followed by any verb, or by one only, they may be expressed by the *imperfect,* the *conditional,* the *preterite* of the indicative, or of the subjunctive, according as the sense requires it; thus, *I would,* may be rendered by *je voulois, je voulus, je voudrois,* or *je voulusse; I should,* by *je devois, je dus, je devrois, or je dusse;* and *I could,* by *je pouvois, je pus, je pourrois,* or *je pusse.* Examples:

I could do that yesterday;	*Je* pouvois *faire cela hier.*
I could do it formerly;	*Je* pus *le faire autrefois.*
I could do it if I would;	*Je le* pourrois *si je voulois.*
I do not think I could do it;	*Je ne crois pas que je le* pusse.

RULE 167.—would *and* could, *followed by two verbs.*

When the irregular *would, could, should,* or *might,* are followed by two verbs, of which the last is in the participle, they may be rendered in French:

1. By the imperfect, or the conditional of *avoir,* and the participle *voulu, pu,* or *du,* if you speak of a past time. Example:

You *should have* written to me, since you knew my direction?

Vous auriez dû *m'écrire, puisque vous saviez mon adresse.*

2. By the conditional of *vouloir, pouvoir* or *devoir,* and the verb *avoir* in the infinitive mood, if you speak of something not yet done. Examples:

I would I had done my exercise;
Je voudrois *avoir fait mon thême.*

These sentences, *I will have him pay me, He would have me betray my duty*, and others of the same sort, are rendered in French by *Je veux qu'il me paye, Il voudroit que je trahisse mon devoir;* as if it were, I will that he pay me, He would that I betray my duty.

Note, If you are at a loss in which tense to put the irregular *would, could, should*, or *might;* consider *would* as a tense of the verb *to be willing; should* as a tense of *to be obliged; could* as a tense of *to be able;* and then put the verbs *pouvoir, vouloir*, and *devoir*, into the same tense in French as the verb *to be* is in English, and you will never be mistaken.

CHAPTER XVIII.

Of the Impersonal Verbs.

We have already treated of the impersonal verbs, in rule 160. They are used in the third person only, and are generally construed in French as in English, except the following, *il faut, il y a, il est*, and *c'est*, which require particular attention.

RULE 168.——*Use of the Impersonal Verb* il faut, *it must.*

The verb *must* is always expressed by the impersonal *il faut*. The noun or pronoun, which in English is the nominative of *must*, becomes in French the nominative of the next verb, which is put in the subjunctive. Examples:

I must see him; *Il faut que je le voïe.*
You must come to-morrow; *Il faut que vous veniez demain*
Your brother must write to him;
Il faudra que votre frère lui écrive.

The verb *have*, which comes often after *must*, is sometimes put in the subjunctive; as *il faut que j'aie des livres*, I must *have* books; *Il faut que votre frère* ait *un chapeau*, your brother must *have* a hat; but it is more elegantly suppressed, and then the nominative of *must* is put in the dative case: thus, *il* me *faut des livres ; il faut un chapeau à* votre frère.

The verb *should*, coming at the end of a sentence, is also usually expressed by *il faut*. Example:

Your exercise is not done as it *should be ;*
Votre thême n'est pas fait comme il faut.

RULE 169.—*Use of the Impersonal* il y a, *there is.*

The verb *to be*, preceded by the adverb *there*, becomes impersonal, and is expressed by the third person of the verb *avoir*, for every tense, thus: *il y a*, there is, *or* there are; *il y avoit*, there was, *or* there were; *il y eut*, there were; *il y aura*, there shall be; *il y auroit*, there should be; *il y ait*, there may be; and *il y eût*, there might be. Examples:

There are many difficulties in your affair;
Il y a *beaucoup de difficultés dans votre affaire.*
There is no talent more shining than that of speaking;
Il *n'*y a *point de talent plus brillant que celui de la parole.*

The verb *to be*, preceded by the word *some* or *many*, is also often expressed by the impersonal *il y a, il y avoit*, with the partitive article, &c. as if it were *there are some*. Examples:

Some christians are unworthy of that name;
Il y a *des chrétiens qui sont indignes de ce nom.*
Many friends *are* false; Il y a *bien de faux amis.*

The impersonal *il y a, il y avoit*, &c. is also used in French in three circumstances, where *there is* is not used in English.

1. To ask the distance from one place to another, then it answers to the English word *how far*. Examples:

How far is it from Winchester to London?
Combien y a-t-il *de Winchester à Londres?*

2. To ask the number of a thing, in which case it answers to the word *how many*. Examples:

How many inhabitants *are there* in France?
Combien y a-t-il *d'habitans en France?*
How many kings *are there* in Europe?
Combien y a-t-il *de rois en Europe?*

3. To ask *how long* it is since a thing happened. Example:

How long has your father been dead?
Combien y a-t-il *que Mr. votre père est mort?*

When the question is made by *il y a, il y avoit*, &c. we generally answer by the same verb. Examples:

Combien y a-t-il *de Douvres à Calais?* Il y a *dix lieues.*
Combien y a-t-il *d'âmes en Angleterre?*
Il y en a *onze millions.*
Combien y a-t-il *que la guerre dure?* Il y a *quatre ans.*

RULE 170.—*Distinction between* il est *and* c'est, *it is.*

The impersonal *it is, it was, it will be*, &c. is expressed in French by *il est, il étoit, il sera*, &c. when it is followed by an adjective without reference to any thing expressed before, or by a substantive of time. Examples:

It is six o'clock; *it is* time to set out;
Il est *six heures;* il est *temps de partir.*
It is difficult to please every body;
Il est *difficile de plaire à tout le monde.*

C'est is sometimes used before an adjective, in sentences like these, *c'est bon, c'est mauvais,* &c. but then they have reference to something mentioned before.

It is expressed by *c'est, c'étoit, ce fut,* &c. when it is followed by a substantive which has not reference to time, by a pronoun, or by a verb in the infinitive mood. Examples:

It is not fortune which renders us happy, it is virtue;
Ce *n'*est *pas l'argent qui nous rend heureux,* c'*est la vertu.*
It is your turn to play; C'est *à vous à jouer.*
Not to punish the wicked is authorising vice;
C'est *autoriser le vice que de ne pas punir les méchans.*

RULE 171.—it is, *expressed by* c'est *and* ce sont.

The impersonal *it is, it was,* &c. followed by a substantive, or the pronoun *eux,* or *elles* in the nominative plural, is expressed by *ce sont,* and not by *c'est.* Examples:

It is they who have seen him; Ce sont *eux qui l'ont vu.*
It is your brothers who are in the right;
Ce sont *vos frères qui ont raison.*
(Not *c'est vos frères qui ont raison,* nor *c'est eux qui l'ont vu.)*

The impersonal, *it is, it was,* &c. is always expressed by *c'est* or *c'étoit,* in the singular, before the pronouns *moi, toi, nous, vous,* and also before the pronouns *eux, elles,* or a substantive plural, when they are not in the nominative case. Examples:

It is you who are in the wrong; C'est *vous qui avez tort.*
It is their turn to answer; C'est *à eux à répondre.*
It is of your brothers I complain;
C'est *de vos frères que je me plains.*

CHAPTER XIX.

Syntax of Adverbs.

RULE 172.—*Where the Adverbs are to be placed.*

Adverbs are usually placed after the verb in a simple tense, and between the auxiliary and the participle in a compound one; they are never put as in English, between the nominative and the verb. Examples:

I often think of you; *Je pense* souvent *à vous.*
I never speak ill of any body;
Je ne parle jamais mal *de personne.*
I never have spoken ill of any body;
Je n'ai jamais mal *parlé de personne.*
and not *je* souvent *pense à vous.*

RULE 173.——*Adverbs after the Participle.*

The adverbs which govern noun are always placed in French after the participle in a compound tense. Examples:

Your brother has acted conformably to his principles;
Votre frère a agi conformément *à ses principes.*
I have had much difficulty in persuading him;
J'ai eu beaucoup *de peine à le persuader.*

The following adverbs of time, *aujourd'hui,* to-day, *demain,* to-morrow, *hier,* yesterday, and those composed of two or three words, are usually placed after the participle in a compound tense. Examples:

It has rained to-day; *Il a plu* aujourd'hui.
I met with him by chance; *Je l'ai rencontré* par hasard.
And not, *Il a* aujourd'hui *plu; Je l'ai* par hasard *rencontré.*

Note 1. Many adverbs usually begin a sentence in French or a member of it; such are, *cependant*, mean while; *c'est pourquoi*, therefore; *comment?* how? *combien*, how much; *quand*, when; *où*, where, &c. Example:

When will you go to France? Quand *irez-vous en France?*

Note 2. The adverb *presque*, almost, is always placed before *toujours*, *jamais*, and *souvent* when they meet; and these three go before all others, when several meet together. Examples:

The king is scarcely ever well;
Le roi est presque toujours *malade.*
Your brother and mine are always together;
Votre frère et le mien sont toujours ensemble.

CHAPTER XX.

Syntax of Prepositions.

RULE 174.—*Prepositions are placed before the Word which they govern.*

Prepositions are placed in French before the word they govern, in English they are sometimes placed after. Examples:

The person you are interested *for;*
La personne pour *qui vous vous intéressez.*
Whom do you speak *to?* A *qui parlez-vous?*
What do you complain *of?* De *quoi vous plaignez-vous?*

RULE 175.—***How to express*** from ***followed by*** to.

The prepositions ***from*** and ***to***, used in the same sentence

before substantives of place, are expressed in French in three different manners.

1. To express the distance, or the going from one place specified, to another, *from* is rendered by *de*, and *to* by *à*. Examples:

I go in one day *from* Paris *to* Rouen;
Je vais en un jour de *Paris* à *Rouen.*
There is no great distance *from* his house *to* the church;
Il n'y a pas loin de *chez lui* à *l'église.*

2. When the same word is repeated after *from*, and after *to*, and also when they are placed before names of kingdoms, provinces and vast countries, *from* is rendered by *de*, and *to* by *en*. Examples:

I go *from* street *to* street, *from* town *to* town, *from* province *to* province;
Je vais de *rue* en *rue*, de *ville* en *ville*, de *province* en *province.*
My brother will go *to* Germany, and *from* Germany *to* France, *from* France *to* Italy, *from* Italy *to* Spain, and there he will embark for America;
Mon frère ira en *Allemagne, et* d'*Allemagne* en *France*, de *France* en *Italie*, d'*Italie* en *Espagne, et là il s'embarquera pour l'Amérique.*

3. *From* is rendered by *depuis*, and *to* by *jusqu'à*, when speaking of time. Example:

I will stay in the country *from* midsummer *to* Christmas;
Je resterai à la campagne depuis *la St. Jean* jusqu'à *Noël.*

When the preposition *to* signifies *so far as*, it is generally expressed by *jusqu'à*. Examples:

I have drunk the cup *to* the dregs;
J'ai bu le calice jusqu'à *la lie.*
I will prosecute him *to* the end;
Je le poursuivrai jusqu'à *la fin.*

RULE 176.——*Prepositions expressed several Ways.*

An English preposition has often several significations, and consequently must be variously expressed in French. Let us take, for instance, the preposition *about*. Examples:

I am come to speak to you *about* our affair;
Je suis venu pour vous parler touchant *notre affaire.*
I will go and see you *about* the end of the next month;
J'irai vous voir vers *la fin du mois prochain.*
Dinner was *about* over when he came;
Il arriva sur *la fin du dîner.*

RULE 177.—*When the Prepositions are to be repeated.*

The prepositions *de* and *à* are usually repeated before every noun, pronoun, or verb; others, such as *avec, contre, sans,* &c. are repeated before nouns or verbs of different signification, whether they are or are not repeated in English. Example:

The son of God is come on earth *to* redeem men, and *to* destroy the empire of the devil;
Le fils de Dieu est venu sur la terre pour *racheter les hommes, et* pour *détruire l'empire du démon.*

They are not usually repeated before words which have pretty near the same signification. Examples:

The son of God is come on earth to redeem men, and to free them from sin;
Le fils de Dieu est venu sur la terre pour *racheter les hommes, et les délivrer du péché* (not *et pour les délivrer,* because *racheter* and *délivrer* signify the same thing).
Our law judges nobody, without having heard and examined him;
Notre loi ne juge personne, sans *l'avoir entendu et examiné.*

But the preposition must be repeated before two verbs

even of the same signification, when they govern different nouns or pronouns. Example:

Our law judges nobody, *without* having heard him and examined his conduct;

Notre loi ne juge personne, sans *l'avoir entendu et* sans *avoir examiné sa conduite.*

Of Conjunctions and Interjections.

We have spoken at large of conjunctions, page 130 and following; their use and construction have been fully explained in the Syntax in rules 97, 158, and 161; and nothing further remains to be said of them.

The different species of interjections have been treated of in page 132; their construction is the same in French as in English, therefore they require no explanation.

CHAPTER XXI.

OF THE FRENCH IDIOMS.

Idioms are a mode of speaking peculiar to a language, and which cannot be literally translated into another.

The chapter of idioms is divided into three sections: the first explains the idiomatical expressions of the auxiliary verbs *to have* and *to be;* the second shews the idiomatical significations in which the verbs *aller, avoir, venir, donner, faire, jouer,* and *mourir,* may be taken; the third contains a series of the most remarkable French idioms.

SECTION THE FIRST.

Idiomatical Expressions of the Verbs to have *and* to be.

RULE 178.—*Cases in which the Verb* to be *is expressed by the Verb* avoir.

The verb *to be* is expressed in French by the same tense of the verb *avoir*, in the seven following cases:

1. When speaking of the dimension, or age, it is followed by a word of number, such as *one, two, three, four*, &c. Examples:

Our house *is* twenty feet broad;
Notre maison a *vingt pieds de large.* (not *est.*)
I *am* twenty-five years of age; J'ai *vingt-cinq ans.*

2. When it is used to ask the age of a person or an animal. Examples:

How old are you? *Quel âge* avez-*vous*? (not *êtes-vous.*)
How old is your dog? *Quel âge* a *votre chien?*

3. When it is followed by the words, *hungry, dry*, or *thirsty*. Examples:

Are you hungry, daughter? yes, mother, I *am* very hungry;
Avez-*vous faim, ma fille*? *oui, ma mère, j'*ai *grand faim*.
Are you dry? no, I *am* not dry at present;
Avez-*vous soif? non, je n'*ai *pas soif à présent.*

4. When it is followed by the words *hot, warm*, or *cold*. The part of the body referred to is preceded in French by *au* for the masculine, by *à la* for the feminine, and by *aux* for the plural, instead of the possessive pronouns *my, thy, his, her, our, your*, or *their*, used in English. Examples:

My feet *are* cold; *J'*ai *froid aux pieds.*
Are your hands warm? Avez-*vous chaud aux mains?*
Warm yourself, if you are cold;
Chauffez-vous, si vous avez *froid.*

5. When it is or might be followed by the adverb *there*, without altering the sense of the sentence, as we have said, rule 169. Example:

There are many poor people in England and France;
Il y a *beaucoup de pauvres en Angleterre et en France.*

6. When it is followed by the words *in the wrong*, *in the right*, or *afraid*. Examples:

You were in the right, and I was in the wrong;
Vous aviez *raison, et moi j'*avois *tort.*
Why are you afraid? *Pourquoi* avez-*vous peur?*

7. When *to be* is followed by *in vain*, it is commonly expressed by *avoir beau*. Examples:

It *is in vain* to wait for him, he will not come;
Vous avez beau *l'attendre, il ne viendra pas.*
It *was in vain* for me to advise him, he would not believe me;
*J'*avois beau *l'avertir, il ne vouloit pas me croire.*

RULE 179.—to be, *expressed by* faire.

The verb *to be* is expressed by *faire*, when applied to the state of the weather; and with the words *jour*, *nuit*, *soleil*, *vent*, &c. Examples:

It *is* fine weather to-day;	*Il* fait *beau temps aujourd'hui.*
It *was* bad weather yesterday;	*Il* faisoit *mauvais temps hier.*
It *will be* cold soon;	*Il* fera *froid dans peu.*
Is it hot in France?	Fait-*il chaud en France?*

If the word *weather* is the nominative case of the verb *to be*, then it should be expressed by *être*, and not by *faire*. Examples: the weather *is* fine; *le temps* est *beau;* the air *is* cold; *l'air* est *froid;* (not *le temps fait beau, l'air fait froid.*)

RULE 180.——*The Verb* to be, *expressed by the Verb* se porter.

The verbs *to be* and *to do*, used in English in inquiring or

speaking of a person's health are both expressed in French by the reflected verb *se porter*. Examples:

How do you *do?*	*Comment vous* portez-*vous?*
I *am* very well;	*Je me* porte *fort bien.*
Is your father well?	*Mr. votre père* se porte-t-il *bien?*
He *was* well yesterday.	*Il* se portoit *bien hier.*

RULE 181.—*Il en est de,* it is with.

The impersonal *it is, it was, it will be,* &c. followed by the preposition *with,* is expressed by *il en est de* for the present, *il en étoit de* for the imperfect, *il en fut de,* for the preterite, *il en sera de,* for the future, *il en seroit de,* for the conditional, *il en soit de,* for the pres. subj. *il en fût de,* for the preterite. Examples:

It is with you as with other men;
Il en est *de vous comme des autres hommes.*
I do not believe *it will be* with my son as with yours;
Je ne crois pas qu'il en soit de *mon fils comme du vôtre.*

N.B. The verb *to be* before an infinitive is sometimes expressed by the verb *devoir;* sometimes it is not expressed at all, and then the next verb is put in the future. Example:

I am to dine out to-day;
Je dois dîner, (ou *je* dînerai) *en ville aujourd'hui.*

RULE 182.——*The Verb* to have, *expressed by the Verb* être.

The verb *to have* is expressed by *être,* 1. in the compound tenses of all the reflected verbs. Examples:

I rose this morning at six o'clock;
Je me suis *levé ce matin à six heures.*
Have you perceived the trick?
Vous êtes-*vous aperçu du tour?*

2. In the compound tenses of the verbs *aller, arriver, dé-*

choir, décéder, entrer, mourir, naître, partir, tomber, also of *venir,* and its compounds, *devenir, disconvenir, intervenir, parvenir, revenir,* and *survenir.* Examples:

You *have* gone to London without my leave;
Vous êtes *allé à Londres sans ma permission.*
My brother died this morning at seven;
Mon frère est *mort ce matin à sept heures.*

RULE 183.—avoir mal à, *speaking of illness.*

We make use of *avoir mal à,* to ask or to express what part of the body is affected with some illness or pain. Examples:

Have you the head-ach?	*Avez-vous mal à la tête?*
My eyes are sore;	*J'ai mal aux yeux.*
Have you the tooth-ach?	*Avez-vous mal aux dents?*
I feel a pain in my side;	*J'ai mal au côté.*
His feet are sore;	*Il a mal aux pieds.*

SECTION THE SECOND.

Idiomatical Significations of aller.

The verb *aller,* besides its natural signification of *to go,* has many others, as may be seen in the following Examples:

Le commerce ne va *plus,*	Trade is dead.
Est-ce ainsi que vous y allez?	Is this your way of proceeding?
Comment va *la santé?*	How do you do?
Tout va *bien, tout* va *mal,*	All is well, all is bad.
Cet habit vous va *bien,*	That coat suits you well.
Mon frère va *partir,*	My brother is going out.
Aller *aux voix,*	To put to the vote.
Il va *pleuvoir, neiger,*	It will rain, snow.
Il y va *de la vie,*	Life is at stake.
Cela va *sans dire,*	That is understood.
Aller *pied à pied, pas à pas,*	To act deliberately.
Il y va *de mon honneur,*	My honour is concerned in it.

*Vous ne faites qu'*aller *et venir,*	You are ever running up and down.
Il va *venir,*	He is coming.
Allez-*vous sortir?*	Are you going out.

Idiomatical Significations of avoir*.

Avoir *besoin de quelque chose,*	To want something.
Avoir *bonne mine,*	To look well.
Avoir *mauvaise mine,*	To look ill.
Avoir *affaire de quelque chose,*	To have occasion for something.
Avoir *le cœur sur les lèvres,*	To be free and open
Avoir *des affaires par dessus les yeux.*	To be full of business.

Idiomatical Significations of donner.

The verb *donner*, besides its signification of *to give*, is used in many other senses, as appears by the following Examples:

Se donner *des airs,*	To take a great deal upon one's self.
Donner *dans le piége,*	To be caught in the snare.
En donner *à garder à quelqu'un,*	To make a fool of somebody.
Se donner *du bon temps,*	To pass one's time merrily.
Se donner *de garde de faire telle chose,*	To be sure not to do such a thing.
Donner *sur l'ennemi,*	To fall upon the enemy.
Ce vin donne *à la tête,*	That wine flies up to the head.
Ne savoir où donner *de la tête,*	To know not what way to turn.
Donner *carte blanche,*	To give full liberties.

Idiomatical Significations of faire.

Faire *grâce à quelqu'un,*	To forgive somebody.
Faire *le malade,*	To sham sickness.
Faire *fond sur quelqu'un,*	To rely upon somebody.
Faire *faire une montre,*	To bespeak a watch.
Faire *voile,* or *mettre à la voile,*	To set sail.

* The verbs used in the infinitive present, in some idiomatical significations, may be used in all other tenses and persons in the same sense

Se faire *des amis,*	To get friends.
Se faire *des affaires,*	To bring one's self into trouble
Se faire *à la fatigue,*	To inure one's self to hardships
Faire *bien ses affaires,*	To prosper.
Faire *des contes à dormir debout,*	To tell idle stories.
Faire *un pas de clerc,*	To take a false step.
Faire *des armes,*	To fence.
Faire *la sourde oreille.*	To give a deaf ear.
Faire *bonne mine à quelqu'un,*	To receive one kindly.
Faire *l'homme d'importance,*	To pretend to great matters.

Several Significations of jouer.

Jouer *des instrumens,*	To play upon instruments,
Jouer *à quelque jeu,*	To play at some game.
Jouer *une pièce de théatre,*	To act a play.
Jouer *un tour à quelqu'un,*	To serve one a trick.
Jouer *quite ou double,*	To run all chance.
Jouer *de son reste,*	To use one's last shifts.
Jouer *au plus fin,*	To vie in cunning.

Idiomatical Significations of mourir.

Mourir *de faim,*	To be starved.
Mourir *de soif,*	To be choked with thirst.
Mourir *de froid,*	To starve with cold.
Mourir *de chaud,*	To be extremely hot.
Mourir *de peur,*	To be frightened to death.
Mourir *de chagrin,*	To grieve one's self to death.
Mourir *de douleur,*	To have one's heart broken.

Idiomatical Significations of the Word main.

Donner la main à un malheureux,	*To relieve an unfortunate.*
Donner un coup de main,	*To help.*
Donner à pleines mains,	*To give largely.*
Donner de main en main,	*To handle about.*
Faire main basse sur l'ennemi,	*To put the enemy to the sword.*
Faire un coup de main,	*To do a bold action.*
Faire quelque chose sous main,	*To do something secretly.*

Mettre l'épée à la main,	*To draw the sword.*
Prendre à toutes mains,	*To catch every way.*
En venir aux mains,	*To fight.*

SECTION THE THIRD.

A Series of the most curious French Idioms.

Aller à bride abattue,	*To go full speed.*
Avoir la mort entre les dents,	*To have already one foot in the grave.*
Avoir la tête près du bonnet,	*To take fire presently.*
Boire le calice jusqu'à la lie,	*To drink the cup to the dregs.*
C'est la mer à boire,	*It is an endless business.*
Chercher à pied et à cheval,	*To look every where.*
Couper la parole à quelqu'un,	*To interrupt one who speaks.*
Decouvrir le pot aux roses,	*To find out the mystery.*
Dormir la grasse matinée,	*To sleep very late.*
Elever quelqu'un jusqu'aux nues.	*To praise one to excess.*
Etre à deux doigts de sa perte,	*To be on the brink of ruin.*
Etre tendre à la mouche,	*To be very captious.*
Jeter de la poudre aux yeux,	*To cast a mist before one's eyes.*
Jeter feu et flamme,	*To fret and fume.*
Manger son blé en herbe,	*To eat the calf in the cow's belly.*
Mettre de l'eau dans son vin,	*To allay one's passion.*
Mettre les fers au feu,	*To fall stoutly to work.*
Mettre une armée sur pied,	*To raise an army.*
Ne demander que plaie et bosses,	*To think the more mischief the better sport.*
Ne savoir sur quel pied danser,	*Not to know which way to turn*
Opiner du bonnet,	*To vote bluntly.*
Partager le gâteau,	*To share the profit.*
Passer quelqu'un au fil de l'épée,	*To put somebody to the sword.*
Prendre l'air du bureau,	*To feel people's pulse.*

Prendre quelqu'un au pied levé,	*To snap one up.*
Remuer ciel et terre,	*To leave nothing undisturbed.*
Risquer le tout pour le tout,	*To lay all at stake.*
River le clou à quelqu'un,	*To give one as good as he brings.*
Rompre la paille avec quelqu'un,	*To fall out with one.*
Tirer au court fétu,	*To draw cuts.*
Tirer son épingle du jeu,	*To slip one's neck out of the collar.*
Trouver chaussure à son pied,	*To be well fitted.*
Trouver son maître,	*To meet with one's match.*
Venir à bout de ses desseins,	*To succeed in one's designs.*

CHAPTER XXII.

A series of Proverbs most used in French.

Abondance de bien ne nuit pas,	*A store is no sore.*
A force de forger, on devient forgeron,	*Assiduity makes all things easy.*
A l'impossible nul n'est tenu,	*There is no fence against the flail.*
A méchant chien, court lien,	*A curst cur must be tied short.*
Ami au prêt, ennemi au rendre,	*I lose my money, and my friend.*
Apprenti n'est pas maître,	*You must spoil before you spin.*
Après la mort le médecin,	*After death comes the physician.*
A qui veut mal, mal arrive,	*Evil be to him that evil thinks.*
Argent comptant porte médecine,	*Ready money is a remedy.*
Aux grands maux les grands remèdes,	*A desperate disease must have a desperate cure.*

Beau parler n'écorche pas la langue,	*Fair words cost nothing.*
Beaucoup de bruit, et peu d'effet,	*Great cry, and little wool.*
Bon avocat, mauvais voisin,	*A good lawyer and evil neighbour.*
Bonne renommée vaut mieux que ceinture dorée,	*A good name is better than riches.*
Ce n'est pas pour vous que le four chauffe,	*There is nothing for you.*
Ce n'est pas l'habit qui fait le moine,	*It is not the cowl that makes the friar.*
Celui qui cherche le danger y périra,	*Harm watch, harm catch.*
Ce qui abonde ne vicie pas,	*Plenty makes dainties.*
Ce qui est différé n'est pas perdu,	*All is not lost that is delayed.*
C'est de la moutarde après dîné,	*After dinner comes mustard.*
C'est là où gît le lièvre,	*There is the point.*
Charité bien ordonnée commence par soi-même,	*Charity begins at home.*
Chien qui aboie ne mord pas,	*Barking dogs seldom bite.*
Dans les petits pots sont les bonnes épices,	*Short and sweet.*
De tout s'avise à qui pain faut,	*Necessity is the mother of invention.*
De deux maux il faut choisir le moindre,	*Of two evils choose the least.*
Faire d'une pierre deux coups,	*To kill two birds with one stone.*
Familiarité engendre mépris,	*Familiarity breeds contempt.*
Faute de parler, on meurt sans confession,	*Spare to speak and spare to speed.*
Faute d'un point Martin perdit son âne,	*A miss is as good as a mile.*
Fin contre fin n'est pas bon à faire doublure,	*Diamond cut diamond.*
Grands vanteurs, petits faiseurs,	*Great boast, little roast.*
Il a les yeux plus grands que le ventre,	*His eyes are bigger than his belly.*

Il a plus de bonheur qu'un honnête homme,	*He is more lucky than wise.*
Il a plus de peur que de mal,	*He is more afraid than hurt.*
Il est comme l'oiseau sur la branche,	*He is in a wavering situation.*
Il est comme le poisson dans l'eau,	*The dog's head is in the porridge pot.*
Il crie avant qu'on l'écorche,	*He halts before he is lame.*
Il en fait ses choux gras,	*He feathers his nest by it.*
Il ennuie à qui attend,	*Waiting is tedious.*
Il fait bon pêcher en eau trouble,	*It is good fishing in troubled waters.*
Il faut battre le fer quand il est chaud,	*Strike the iron while it is hot.*
Il faut faire vie qui dure,	*Old young and old long.*
Il ne faut pas juger des gens par la mine,	*One must not hang a man by his looks.*
Il n'a ni bouche ni éperon,	*He has neither wit nor courage.*
Il n'est sauce que d'appetit,	*Good stomach is the best sauce.*
Il n'est si bon charretier qui ne verse,	*That is a good horse that never stumbles.*
Il n'est pire eau que celle qui dort,	*Smooth water runs deep.*
Il n'est point de roses sans épines,	*No rose without a thorn.*
Il n'y a point de feu sans fumée,	*Where is the smoke, there is the fire.*
Il n'y a que la première peine qui coute,	*The first step over, the rest is easy.*
Il sent bien où le bât le blesse,	*He feels where the shoe pinches.*
Il vaut mieux faire envie que pitié,	*It is better to be envied than pitied.*
Il vaut mieux plier que de rompre,	*It is better to bend than break.*
Il vaut mieux tard que jamais,	*Better late than never.*
La clef d'or ouvre toutes les serrures,	*Bribe can get in without knocking.*
La faim chasse le loup du bois,	*Hunger will break through a stone wall.*
La fin couronne l'œuvre,	*All's well that ends well.*

La nécessité est la mère de l'industrie,	*Necessity is the mother of invention.*
La nuit tous chats sont gris,	*When candles are out, all cats are grey.*
La patience est un remède à tous maux,	*Patience is a plaster for all sores.*
Le bien mal acquis ne profite jamais,	*Ill gotten goods never prosper.*
Le jeu n'en vaut pas la chandelle,	*The business will not quit cost.*
Le renard prêche aux poulets,	*The devil rebukes sin.*
Le sage entend à demi mot,	*A word to the wise is enough.*
Les bons comptes font les bons amis,	*Short reckonings make long friends.*
Les honneurs changent les mœurs,	*Honour changes manners.*
Les petits ruisseaux font les grandes rivières,	*Many drops make a shower.*
Les plus courtes folies sont les meilleures,	*The shortest follies are the best.*
L'occasion fait le larron,	*Opportunity makes the thief.*
L'oisiveté est la mère de tous les vices,	*Idleness is the root of all evil.*
Marchand qui perd ne peut rire,	*Let him laugh that wins.*
Mauvais herbe croit toujours assez,	*Ill weeds grow apace.*
Marchandise qui plaît est à moitié vendu,	*Good wares make quick markets.*
Necessité n'a point de loi,	*Necessity has no law.*
Ne réveillez pas le chat qui dort,	*When sorrow is asleep awake it not.*
Nouveaux rois, nouvelles lois,	*New lords, new laws.*
On n'a jamais bon marché de mauvaise marchandise,	*The best the cheapest.*
On n'a rien sans peine,	*No pain, no profit.*
On ne fait pas marché du premier mot,	*More words than one go to the bargain.*
On ne sauroit faire boire un âne s'il n'a soif,	*A man may lead his horse to water, but he cannot make him drink, unless he lists.*

Où il n'y a rien, le roi perd ses droits,	*Where nothing is to be had, the king loses his right.*
Paris n'a pas été fait dans un jour,	*Rome was not built in one day.*
Parmi les aveugles les borgnes sont rois,	*Among the blind one-eyed is a king.*
Pas à pas on va bien loin,	*Fair and soft goes fast.*
Point d'argent point de Suisse,	*No money no paternoster.*
Promettre et tenir sont deux,	*It is one thing to promise, and another to perform.*
Porter de l'eau à la mer,	*To carry coals to Newcastle.*
Quand on emprunte on ne choisit pas,	*Beggars must not be choosers.*
Quand on parle du loup, on en voit la queue,	*Talk of the devil and his horns appear.*
Qui aime Bertrand, aime son chien,	*Love me, love my dog.*
Qui fera bien, bien trouvera,	*Do well, and have well.*
Qui menace a souvent peur,	*Swaggerers are great cowards.*
Qui répond paye,	*The bail must pay.*
Qui ne hasarde rien n'a rien,	*Nothing venture nothing have.*
Qui trop embrasse mal étreint,	*Covet all, lose all.*
Qui se fait brebis, le loup le mange,	*Who makes himself a sheep, him the wolf eateth.*
Selon ta bourse gouverne ta bouche,	*Cut your coat according to your cloth.*
Si vous n'êtes pas content, prenez des cartes,	*If you do not like it, turn your buckles behind.*
Tirer d'un sac deux moutures,	*To take double fees.*
Toujours pêche qui en prend un,	*Still he fishes that catches one.*
Tout ce qui brille n'est pas or,	*All is not gold that glitters.*
Toute vérité n'est pas bonne à dire,	*Truth is not to be spoken at all times.*
Un bon chien chasse de race,	*Cat after kind.*
Un chien regarde bien un évêque,	*A cat may look upon a king.*
Un honnête homme n'a que sa parole,	*An honest man is as good as his word.*
Un malheur ne vient jamais seul,	*One misfortune comes on the neck of another.*

Une souris qui n'a qu'un trou est bientôt prise,	*It is good to have two strings to one's bow*
Un tiens vaut mieux que deux tu l'auras,	*A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.*

CHAPTER XXIII.

OF THE CONCORD, DISPOSITION, AND REPETITION OF WORDS IN A SENTENCE.

SECTION THE FIRST.

What Parts of Speech agree together in French.

1. *Articles.*

The three articles, *definite*, *indefinite*, and *partitive*, agree in gender and number with their substantive. Examples:

The father, mother, and children are in the country;
Le *père*, la *mère et* les *enfans sont à la campagne.*
I have a good garden and a fine house near London;
J'ai un *bon jardin, et* une *belle maison près de Londres.*
Give me some bread, some meat, and some eggs.
Donnez-moi du *pain,* de la *viande, et* des *œufs.*

2. *Adjectives.*

All adjectives agree in gender and number with the substantives to which they are united or related. Examples:

A learned man; a learned woman; learned girls.
Un homme savant; *une femme* savante; *des filles* savantes.

3. *Pronouns.*

All pronouns, *personal, possessive, demonstrative, relative,* and *interrogative,* agree in gender and number with their substantive. Examples:

1. My brother wishes to marry your sister, yet I think he does not know her;
   Mon frère veut épouser votre sœur, cependant je crois qu'il ne la *connoît pas.*
2. His son, daughter, and sisters, will come here to-night;
   Son *fils,* sa *fille, et* ses *sœurs viendront ici ce soir.*
3. This book is new, this house is old, these pens are good;
   Ce livre est neuf, cette *maison est vieille,* ces *plumes sont bonnes.*
4. The vice against which I speak; the reasons I rely upon are without reply;
   Le vice contre lequel *je parle; les raisons sur* lesquelles *je me fonde, sont sans réplique.*
5. What is his crime, and what is his excuse?
   Quel *est son crime, et* quelle *est son excuse?*

4. *Verbs.*

All personal verbs agree in number and person with their nominative case. Examples:

I speak, we speak; *Je parle, nous parlons.*
Man is mortal, men are mortal;
L'homme est *mortel, les hommes* sont *mortels.*
He says the truth, they say the truth.
Il dit *la vérité, ils* disent *la vérité.*

SECTION THE SECOND.

Of Collocation.

The Order in which the Words of a Sentence must be placed.

RULE 1. The articles, the possessive, demonstrative, and interrogative pronouns, always precede in French, as in

English, the substantive to which they are joined; as may be observed in the examples of the preceding section.

RULE 2. The adjectives of number, as *un, deux, trois, quatre,* &c. and also the following, *beau, bon, grand, gros, jeune, mauvais, méchant, meilleur, moindre,* and *petit,* precede their substantive, but others are usually placed after; as *un* bon *homme, un* grand *homme;* a good man, a great man.

RULE 3. The relative pronouns, *qui, que, dont, lequel,* &c. come immediately after the noun or pronoun to which they have reference. Example: Do not reject advice, the utility of which you know; *Ne rejetez pas un avis* dont *vous connoissez l'utilité.*

RULE 4. The prepositions always come before the word which they govern. Example: What do you complain of? De *quoi vous plaignez-vous?*

RULE 5. The adverb is usually put after the verb, in a simple tense; as, he answers well, *il répond* bien; and after the auxiliary in a compound one; as he has well answered, *il a* bien *répondu.*

RULE 6. The nominative of a verb precedes it in an affirmative sentence; as, my father is come, he has given me some money; mon père *est venu, il m'a donné de l'argent.*

If the sentence be interrogative, and the nominative of the verb be any of the following pronouns, *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles, ce,* or *on,* it is placed after the verb when it is a simple tense, and after the auxiliary when it is a compound one. Examples: *Parle-t-*il? *A-t-*il *parlé? Dit-*on? *A-t-*on *dit?*

If the nominative be a substantive, or any other pronoun than those before-mentioned, it precedes the verb in an interrogative sentence, but then the personal pronouns *il* or *elle, ils* or *elles,* must be used after the verb or its auxiliary. Examples: Is your father come? Is your mother at home? *Votre père est-*il *venu? Votre mère est-*elle *à la maison?*

RULE 7. The personal pronouns are placed immediately after the verb they are governed by, when it is in the imperative affirmative; as, give it me, *donnez*-le-moi; sell it us, *vendez*-le-nous.

When the verb is not in the imperative affirmative, the governed pronouns are put immediately before it in a simple tense, and immediately before the auxiliaries *avoir* or *étre*, in a compound one; as he will give them to you; *il* vous les *donnera;* he has sold them to us, *il* nous les *a vendus;* he has promised them to me, *il* me les *a promis;* do not return it to him, *ne* le lui *rendez pas*, &c.

If a verb governs two or more pronouns, they are placed before it in this order: *me, te, se, nous, vous,* go before *le, la, les; le, la, les,* go before *lui* and *leur; lui* and *leur* go before *y* and *en,* and *y* goes before *en.* Examples: he will lend them to you, *il* vous les *prêtera;* he will lend them to him, *il* les lui *prêtera;* I will send you some there, *je* vous y en *enverrai;* I have sent them some there, *je* leur y en *ai envoyé;* he will carry some thither, *il* y en *portera.*

RULE 8. If the sentence is negative, *ne* precedes the verb and the governed pronouns; the other word of negation, such as *pas, jamais, rien,* &c. usually comes after the verb in a simple tense, and after its auxiliary in a compound one. Examples: I will never believe it; *je* ne *le croirai* jamais; he has not seen them, *il* ne *les a* pas *vus;* there is nothing finer, *il* n'*y a* rien *de plus beau.*

If the verb be in the infinitive, both the negative words go before it, and even before the governed pronouns; the preposition, if there be any, precedes the negation and the pronouns. Example: I will do it not to displease you, *je le ferai, pour* ne pas *vous déplaire.*

The other parts of speech not mentioned in these eight rules usually follow the same order in French as in English.

SECTION THE THIRD.

What words must be repeated in a Sentence.

1. *Articles repeated.*

The article must be repeated in French before every substantive. Example:

The heart, the mind, and manners, are formed by education;
Le *cœur, l'esprit, et* les *mœurs se forment par l'éducation.*

2. *Pronouns repeated.*

The possessive and demonstrative pronouns are repeated in French before every noun, though they are not repeated in English. Examples:

We must govern *our* taste, expences and pleasures;
Il faut régler son *goût,* sa *dépense, et ses plaisirs.*
This man and woman are very unfortunate;
Cet *homme et* cette *femme sont très-malheureux.*

The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are generally repeated before every verb of which they are the nominative case; those of the third are also repeated before verbs which are in various tenses, and when the first is affirmative and the other negative, or *vice versâ.* Examples:

I say, and will always say, that you were in the wrong;
Je *dis, et* je *dirai toujours que vous aviez tort.*
He says so, but he does not believe it, I assure you;
Il *le dit, mais* il *ne le croit pas, je vous assure.*

All personal pronouns must be repeated in French, before every verb they are governed by, though they are not in English. Example:

My brother esteems and honours you,
Mon frère vous *estime et* vous *honore.*

3. *Verbs repeated.*

A verb is repeated in a sentence of two parts, if one is negative and the other affirmative. Example:

We must expect every thing from God, and nothing from men;
Il faut tout attendre *de Dieu, et ne rien* attendre *des hommes.*

In answer to a question, we often repeat the same verb the question is asked by; the English repeat only the auxiliary. Example:

Have you seen the king? yes, sir, I have;
Avez-vous vu *le roi? oui, monsieur, je l'ai* vu.

4. *Prepositions repeated.*

The prepositions *de, à,* and *pour,* are usually repeated before every noun or every verb they relate to. Example.

Brazil produces a great quantity of indigo, sugar, pepper and saltpetre;
Le Brésil produit une grande quantité d'*indigo,* de *sucre,* de *poivre, et* de *salpêtre.*

The prepositions *avec, contre, sans,* &c. are repeated before nouns of different significations. Example:

He is angry with you, but not with your money;
Il est fâché contre *vous, mais non pas* contre *votre argent.*

SECTION THE FOURTH.

Words which may be elegantly repeated.

1. *Substantives elegantly repeated.*

La vue *de l'esprit a plus d'étendue que la* vue *du corps.*
BOSSUET

Ce qui sert à la vanité *n'est que* vanité, *tout ce qui n'a que* le monde *pour fondement, se dissipe et s'évanouit avec* le monde. FLECHIER.

C'est le privilége de Mr. de Turenne d'avoir pu vaincre l'envie; le mérite *l'avoit fait naître;* le mérite *la fit mourir.* FLECHIER.

Romains, souffrirez-vous qu'on vous immole un homme
Sans qui *Rome* aujourd'hui cesseroit d'être *Rome?*
Dis, Valère, dis-nous, puisqu'il faut qu'il périsse,
Où penses-tu choisir un lieu pour son supplice?
Sera-ce entre ces *murs* que mille et mille voix
Font résonner encore du bruit de ses exploits?
Sera-ce hors des *murs*, au milieu de ces places,
Qu'on voit fumer encor du sang des Curiaces?

CORNEILLE.

2. *Adjectives elegantly repeated.*

Il y a une infinité de choses, qui ne dépendent que d'une lumière humaine, *d'une expérience* humaine, *d'une pénétration* humaine.

Dès qu'on sort de la nature, tout devient faux *dans l'éloquence; la chaleur de ses mouvemens les plus passionnés n'est qu'une* fausse *chaleur? l'éclat de ses figures n'est qu'un* faux *éclat.*

L'amour propre est plus habile *que le plus* habile *homme du monde.*

3. *The Verb elegantly repeated.*

*J'*oublie *que je suis malheureux, quand je songe que vous ne m'avez pas* oublié;
La reine sanctifia *sa cour en se* sanctifiant *elle-même.* FLECHIER.

Il s'est efforcé de connoître *Dieu, qui par sa grandeur est* inconnu *aux hommes, et de* connoître *l'homme, qui par sa vanité est* inconnu *à lui-même.* FLECHIER.

En quittant *le monde, on ne* quitte *le plus souvent ni les erreurs, ni les folles passions du monde.*

BOURDALOUE.

The following verses of Lusignan to Zaïre contain several repetitions of substantives and verbs:

Ma fille, tendre objet de mes dernières peines,
Songe au moins, songe au sang qui coule dans tes veines;
C'est le sang de vingt rois, tous chrétiens comme moi;
C'est le sang des héros défenseurs de ma loi;
C'est le sang des martyrs.—O fille encor trop chère!
Connois-tu ton destin? sais-tu quelle est ta mère?
Sais-tu bien qu'à l'instant que son flanc mit au jour
Ce triste et dernier fruit d'un malheureux amour,
Je la vis massacrer par la *main* forcenée,
Par la *main* des brigands à qui tu t'es donnée?
Tes frères, ces martyrs égorgés à mes yeux,
T'ouvrent leurs bras sanglans, tendus du haut des cieux:
Ton Dieu que tu trahis, ton Dieu que tu blasphêmes,
Pour toi, pour tes péchés est mort en *ces lieux* mêmes,
En *ces lieux* où mon bras le servit tant de fois,
En *ces lieux* où son sang te parle par ma voix.
Vois ces murs, *vois* ce temple envahi par tes maîtres;
Tout annonce le Dieu qu'ont vengé tes ancêtres.
Tourne les yeux; sa tombe est près de ce palais;
C'est ici la montagne où, lavant nos forfaits,
Il voulut expirer sous les coups de l'impie;
C'est là que de sa tombe il rappela sa vie;
Tu ne saurois marcher dans cet auguste lieu,
Tu n'y *peux* faire un pas, sans y trouver ton Dieu;
Et tu n'y *peux* rester sans renier ton père,
Ton honneur qui te parle, et ton Dieu qui t'éclaire.

VOLTAIRE.

CHAPTER XXIV.

Distinction in French between many Words which are ex pressed in the same Manner in English.

1. AN,——ANNÉE,——*Year.*

The word *year* is expressed by *année* when it is considered as the regular course of the twelve months, and by *an* when we mean only to express a space of twelve months, or about, at whatever part of the year it may begin. Examples:

It is two years since my father died; My father died the first year of this century;
Il y a deux ans *que mon père est mort*; and, *Mon père mourut la premère* année *de ce siècle-ci.*
The whole year has been cold; *Toute* l'année *a été froide.*
I go every year to France;
Je vais tous les ans *en France.*
Every year of his life have been marked by some misfortune;
Toutes les années de sa vie ont été marquées par quelque malheur.

2. Jour, · · · · Journée, · · · · *Day.*
3. Matin, · · Matinée, · · · · *Morning.*
4. Soir, · · · · Soirée, · · · · · · *Evening.*

The word *day* is expressed by *jour; morning* by *matin*; and *evening* by *soir*, when we speak of any part of them; they are expressed by *journée, matinée,* and *soirée,* when we express their whole duration. Examples:

2. I have been sick all the *day* long;
J'ai été malade toute la journée.
The *days* are short now; *les* jours *sont courts à present.*

3. { I go a hunting every *morning ;*
Je vais à la chasse tous les matins.
It has rained all the *morning ;*
Il a plu toute la matinée. }

4. { I will go and see you to-morrow *evening ;*
J'irai vous voir demain au soir.
I will spend the *evening* with you;
Je passerai la soirée *avec vous.* }

5. BATTRE,——FRAPPER,——*to Beat.*

The verb *to beat*, is rendered by *frapper*, in speaking of single blow, and by *battre* when several are implied; thus, *on peut frapper sans battre, mais on ne peut battre sans frapper.*

6. COMBAT,——BATAILLE,——*Battle.*

The word *battle* is expressed in French by *combat*, when it denotes a partial action, such as happens at the passage of a river, at the intercepting of a convoy, &c. It is expressed by *bataille*, when it denotes a general action of two armies, such as *la bataille de Pharsale, la bataille de Fontenoi, la bataille de Jemmapes*, &c.

7. CASSER,——ROMPRE,——*to Break.*

The verb *to break* is expressed by *casser*, when we speak of something brittle, and by *rompre*, when the object is not brittle; thus we say:

You have *broke* my glass, you have *broke* my stick;
Vous avez cassé *mon verre, vous avez* rompu *mon bâton.*
(Not *vous avez* rompu *mon verre &* cassé *mon bâton.)*

8. CONNOITRE,——SAVOIR,——*to Know.*

The verb *to know*, is always expressed by *connoître*, when it signifies *to be acquainted with*, and most commonly, by *savoir*, in all other circumstances; thus way say:

Do you *know* that lady? Connoissez-*vous cette dame-là*?

Do you *know* your lesson? Savez-*vous votre leçon?*

9. MARCHER,——SE PROMENER,——*to Walk.*

The verb *to walk*, is expressed in French by *marcher*, when we walk for business, and by *se promener*, when we walk for pleasure; thus we say:

I have been obliged *to walk* much to-day;
J'ai été obligé de marcher *beaucoup aujourd'hui.*
I have *been walking* in the garden with my brother;
Je me suis promené *dans le jardin avec mon frère.*

N.B. It must be observed that the French verb *se promener*, does not mean properly *to walk*, though it be often translated so in English, but *to take a diversion* either by walking, or riding, or in a boat, &c. So we say *se promener à cheval, en carrosse, sur un âne, en batteau, dans une gandole, en mer*, all expressions which would be ridiculous, if translated by *to walk*.

10. AMENER,——APPORTER,——*to Bring.*

The verb *to bring*, is expressed in French by *amener* when the object can walk, and by *porter*, when it cannot; thus we say:

Bring your wife with you; amenez *votre épouse avec vous*
Bring me my books; Apportez-*moi mes livres.*

11. MENER,——PORTER,——*to Carry.*

The verb *to carry*, is expressed in French by *mener*, when the object can walk, and by *porter*, when it cannot; thus we say:

Carry that dog to the stable; Menez *ce chien à l'écurie.*
Carry that hat to your brother;
Portez *ce chapeau à votre frère.*

12. NEUF,—— NOUVEAU,—— *New.*

The word *new*, is most commonly expressed by *neuf* or

neuve, when we speak of something which has been recently made, or has not been used since it is made; and by *nouveau* or *nouvelle*, when we speak of something of a new kind, a new shape, a new fashion, or different from another used before; thus we say:

He lives in a new house,
Il demeure dans une maison neuve; if we mean a new built house.
Il demeure dans une nouvelle maison; if we mean that a person has removed, and lives in another house.

13. Avant,——Devant,——*Before*.

The word *before*, is expressed in French by *avant*, when it denotes a priority, and by *devant*, when it signifies in presence of. Examples:

I shall have done *before* noon; *J'aurai fini* avant *midi*.
I dared not to appear *before* you;
Je n'osois paroître devant *vous*.

14. Dans,——En,——*In*.

The preposition *in*, when speaking of a place, is rendered in French by *dans*, when we mean to express in a definite manner the inclusion, and by *en*, when we express in a vague manner the situation. Thus we say:

He lives *in* a furnished house, near St. James's palace;
Il demeure dans *une maison garnie, près le palais de St. James*.
t is more convenient for me to live *in* a furnished lodging;
Il est plus commode pour moi de vivre en *chambre garnie*.

When speaking of time, *dans* expresses the epocha, and *en* the duration. Example:

Death arrives *in* the moment we think less of it, and we pass *in* an instant from this world into the next;
La mort arrive dans *le moment qu'on y pense le moins, et l'on passe* en *un instant de ce monde à l'autre*.

When speaking of the state or qualification, *dans* is used in a particularized sense, and *en* in a general sense. Thus we say:

To live *in* liberty, to be *in* a fury, to fall *in* lethargy;
Vivre en *liberté, être* en *fureur, tomber* en *léthargie.*
To live *in* an entire liberty;
Vivre dans *une entière liberté.*
To be *in* an extreme fury;
Etre dans *une extrême fureur.*
To fall *in* a profound lethargy;
Tomber dans *une profonde léthargie.*

15. Plus,——Davantage,——*More.*

The word *more* is always expressed by *plus,* when it is not at the end of a sentence, and by *davantage* when it is at the end of a sentence affirmative. Examples:

I am younger than you;
Je suis plus *jeune que vous,* (not *davantage jeune.)*
You have no bread, will you have some more?
Vous n'avez pas de pain, en voulez-vous davantage? (not *en voulez-vous* plus.)

When the word *more* is at the end of a sentence negative, it is often indifferently expressed by *plus,* or by *pas davantage.* Example:

I will not eat any more;
Je ne mangerai plus, or, *je ne mangerai* pas davantage.

16. Pour,——Pendant,——*For.*

The word *for* is expressed in French by *pendant,* when it is followed by a word which denotes a certain duration of time, and when it could be expressed by *during.* It is expressed by *pour* in other circumstances. Example:

I study for two hours every day; (*or* during two hours.)
J'étudie pendant *deux heures tous les jours;* (not *pour deux heures.)*

I lend it you for two hours;
Je vous le prête pour *deux heures;* (not *pendant deux heures.)*

17. SUR,——DESSUS,——*Upon.*
18. SOUS,——DESSOUS,——*Under.*

When the words *upon* and *under* are followed by a noun, they are prepositions, and expressed, *upon* by *sur*, and *under* by *sous*. Examples:

Your book is *upon* the table; *Votre livre est* sur la *table.*
Your shoes are *under* the bed; *Vos souliers sont* sous *le lit.*

When the words *upon* and *under* are not followed by a noun, they are adverbs, and expressed, *upon* by *dessus*, and *under* by *dessous*. Examples:

You thought the dog *under* the bed, and he was *upon* it;
Vous croyiez le chien sous *le lit, et il étoit* dessus.
Your handkerchief is not *upon* the chair, but it is *under* it;
Votre mouchoir n'est pas sur *la chaise, mais* dessous.

19. EN CAMPAGNE,——À LA CAMPAGNE.

We make use of *en campagne*, only when we speak of the army, or the motion of troops, as

L'armée se mettra bientôt *en campagne.*

We must make use of *à la campagne*, when we speak of going or living in the country. Example:

Venez nous voir *à la campagne.*

Explanation of the Marks and Abbreviations made use of in the following Series of Verbs.

(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12,)——mark the twelve regular conjugation: all the verbs preceded by any of

these figures are regular. Those preceded by number 1, are conjugated after *parler*, page 73; those preceded by number 2, are conjugated after *agir;* and so on with the rest.

(ir.)——denotes an irregular verb, which is conjugated in the grammar, page 100, and following.

(Se or *s')*——denote that the verb is reflected in French, and must be conjugated with two pronouns: thus, *je me* is used in the first person singular; *tu te* in the second; *il se* in the third: *nous nous* in the first person plural; *vous vous* in the second; and *ils se* in the third, as the verb *se lever;* see page 94.

(*)——denotes a neutral verb conjugated with the auxiliary verb *être* in its compound tenses.

(ge. da. ac.)——denote the cases which the verb most commonly govern in French; *ge.* denotes the genitive; *da.* the dative, and *ac.* the accusative *.

(de, à, pour)——are the French prepositions which are required before the next verb, when it is to be put in the infinitive. Those followed by *(o)* govern the infinitive without prepositions.

(Subj.)——denotes that the next verb must always be put in the subjunctive in French, when the infinitive is not required.

N. B. The following series of verbs points out, 1. what verbs are regular, and what irregular; 2. the case they govern; 3. what preposition they require before the infinitive: and 4. those which govern the subjunctive: thus by this useful vocabulary four great difficulties of the French language will be removed.

* When two cases are placed after a verb, it denotes that the verb may govern two substantives at once, for instance, one in the accusative, the other in the genitive or dative; but if the two cases be separated by the conjunction *or*, it denotes that the same substantive may be put in one of the two cases, almost indifferently.

AN ALPHABETICAL SERIES

OF THE

FRENCH VERBS,

REGULAR AND IRREGULAR.

ALL regular Verbs are conjugated according to one of the twelve following, which are themselves conjugated at full length in the page mentioned after each verb.

1. Parler, ...*to speak*, see page 73.
2. Agir, ...*to act*, ...76.
3. Sentir, ...*to smell*, ...78.
4. Ouvrir, ...*to open*, ...80.
5. Tenir, ...*to hold*, ...81.
6. Recevoir, ...*to receive*, ...83.
7. Plaire, ...*to please*, ...84.
8. Craindre, ...*to fear*, ...86.
9. Connoître, ...*to know*, ...88.
10. Instruire, ...*to instruct*, ...89.
11. Vendre, ...*to sell*, ...91.
12. Ecrire, ...*to write*, ...92.

A

Conjugations.		Cases.			Infinitive.
1	Abaisser,	ac.		*to bring down.*	
1	s'abaisser,		da.	*to stoop,* — —	à.
1	abandonner,	ac.	da.	*to abandon.*	
ir	abattre,	ac.		*to pull down.*	
1	abdiquer,	ac.		*to abdicate.*	
1	abhorrer,	ac.		*to abhor,* — —	de.
1	abîmer,	ac.		*to destroy entirely.*	

N. B. When the verbs are taken in a different sense, they govern different *cases* and *prepositions;* as they could not have been all inserted without confusion, those only have been mentioned which they govern most commonly.

1	abjurer,	ac.		*to abjure.*		
2	abolir,	ac.		*to abolish.*		
1	abonder en,			*to abound with.*		
1	s'abonner,		da.	*to compound,*	—	pour.
2	abonnir,	ac.		*to better.*		
1	aborder,	ac.		*to come up with.*		
			ge.	*to go near.*		
			da.	*to land.*		
1	s'aboucher avec,			*to confer with,*	—	pour.
2	aboutir,		da.	*to end.*	— —	à
1	aboyer,			*to bark.*		
1	abréger,	ac.		*to abridge.*		
1	abreuver,	ac.	ge.	*to water.*		
1	abroger,	ac.		*to abrogate.*		
2	abrutir,	ac.		*to stupify.*		
1	s'absenter,		ge.	*to absent one's self.*		
1	absorber,	ac.		*to absorb.*		
ir.	absoudre,	ac.	ge.	*to absolve,*	—	de.
5	s'abstenir,		ge.	*to forbear,*	—	de.
ir.	abstraire,	ac.	ge.	*to abstract,*		
1	abuser,		ge.	*to abuse.*		
1	accabler,	ac.	ge.	*to overwhelm.*		
1	accaparer,	ac.		*to monopolize.*		
1	accéder,		da.	*to accede.*		
1	accélerer,	ac.		*to accelerate.*		
1	accentuer,	ac.		*to accent.*		
1	accepter,	ac.	ge.	*to accept,*	—	de.
1	accommoder,	ac.	da.	*to accomodate.*		
1	accompagner,	ac.	da.	*to accompany.*		
2	accomplir,	ac.		*to accomplish.*		
1	accorder,	ac.	da.	*to grant,*	—	de.
1	s'accorder,			*to agree,*	—	à.
1	accoster,	ac.		*to accost.*		
1	accoucher,	*	ge.	*to be delivered.*		
		ac.		*to deliver a woman.*		
1	s'accouder sur,			*to lean upon.*		
2	accourcir,	ac.		*to shorten.*		
ir.	accourir,		da.	*to run to.*		
1	accoutumer,	ac.	da.	*to accustom,*	—	à.
1	s'accoutumer,		da.	*to use one's self,*	—	à.
1	accréditer,	ac.		*to give credit.*		

1	accrocher,	ac.	da.	*to hang upon a hook.*		
9	accroître,	ac.		*to increase.*		
ir.	accueillir,	ac.		*to welcome.*		
1	accumuler,	ac.		*to heap up.*		
1	accuser,	ac.	ge.	*to accuse,*	—	de.
1	acérer,	ac.		*to steel.*		
1	s'acharner,		da.	*to be eager at,*	—	à.
1	s'acheminer vers,			*to set forward.*		
1	acheter,	ac.	ge.	*to buy.*		
1	achever,	ac.		*to finish,*	—	de.
ir.	acquérir,	ac.		*to acquire.*		
1	acquiescér,		da.	*to yield.*		
1	s'acquitter,		ge.	*to discharge.*		
1	adapter,	ac.	da.	*to adapt.*		
1	additionner,	ac.		*to make an addition.*		
1	adhérer,		da.	*to adhere to.*		
8	adjoindre,	ac.	da.	*to associate.*		
1	adjuger,	ac.	da.	*to adjudge.*		
ir.	admettre,	ac.	da.	*to admit,*	—	a.
1	administrer,	ac.	da.	*to administer.*		
1	admirer,	ac.		*to admire,*	— (subj.)	de.
1	s'adonner,		da.	*to apply one's self to,*		à.
1	adopter,	ac.		*to adopt.*		
1	adorer,	ac.		*to adore.*		
2	adoucir,	ac.		*to soften.*		
1	adresser,	ac.	da.	*to direct.*		
1	s'adresser,		da.	*to apply to,*	—	pour.
1	affamer,	ac.		*to starve.*		
1	affecter,	ac.	da.	*to appropriate.*		
		ac.		*to affect,*	—	de.
1	affectionner,	ac.		*to love,*		
1	affermer,	ac.		*to let.*		
2	affermir,	ac.		*to strengthen.*		
1	afficher,	ac.	da.	*to post up.*		
1	affiler,	ac.		*to sharpen.*		
1	affilier,	ac.	da.	*to adopt.*		
1	affirmer,	ac.	da.	*to assert,*	—	o.
1	affliger,	ac.		*to afflict,*	—	de.
1	affluer,			*to abound.*		
2	affoiblir,	ac.		*to weaken.*		
2	affranchir,	ac.	ge.	*to set free.*		

1	affronter,	ac.		*to encounter.*		
1	affubler,	ac.	ge.	*to muffle up.*		
1	s'agenouiller,			*to kneel down.*		
1	aggraver,	ac.		*to aggravate.*		
1	agioter,			*to stock-job.*		
2	agir,			*to act.*		
1	agiter,	ac.		*to agitate.*		
2	agrandir,	ac.		*to enlarge.*		
1	agréer,	ac.	ge.	*to accept,*	—	(subj.)
1	agréger,	ac.	da.	*to aggregate.*		
2	s'aguerrir,		da.	*to inure one's self,*	—	à.
1	aider,	ac. *or* da.		*to help,*	—	à.
2	aigrir,	ac.		*to exasperate.*		
1	aiguilloner	ac.		*to stir up.*		
1	aiguiser,	ac.		*to sharpen.*		
1	aimer,	ac.		*to love,*	—	à.
1	aimer mieux,	ac.		*to like better,*	—	o.
1	ajourner,	ac.		*to summon,*	—	à.
1	ajouter,	ac.	da.	*to alarm.*		
1	ajuster,	ac.	da.	*to add.*		
1	alarmer,	ac.		*to fit, to adjust.*		
1	aliéner,	ac.		*to alienate.*		
1	aligner,	ac.		*to lay out straight.*		
1	allaiter,	ac.		*to suckle.*		
1	alléger,	ac.		*to alleviate.*		
1	alléguer,	ac.	da.	*to allege.*		
ir.	aller *,	ac.	da.	*to go,*	—	o.
1	allier,	ac.	da.	*to allay.*		
1	s'allier,		da.	*to make an alliance.*		
1	allumer,	ac.	da.	*to light.*		
1	allonger,	ac.		*to lengthen.*		
1	altérer,	ac.		*to adulterate.*		
1	amasser,	ac.	da.	*to heap up,*	—	à.
1	ambitionner,	ac.		*to pursue ambitiously,*		de.
1	améliorer,	ac.		*to improve.*		
1	s'amender,			*to grow better.*		
1	amener,	ac.	da.	*to bring,*	—	à
1	ameuter,	ac.		*to raise a mob.*		
2	amollir.	ac.		*to molify.*		
1	amonceler,	ac.		*to heap up.*		
1	amorcer,	ac.		*to allure.*		

2	amortir,	ac.		*to quench.*		
1	amplifier,	ac.		*to amplify.*		
1	s'amuser,	ac.	da.	*to amuse one's self,*		à.
2	anéantir,	ac.		*to annihilate.*		
1	animer,	ac.	da.	*to animate,*	—	à.
1	annoncer,	ac.	da.	*to announce,*	—	o.
1	annuller,	ac.		*to abrogate.*		
2	anoblir,	ac.		*to ennoble.*		
1	anticiper,	ac.		*to anticipate.*		
6	apercevoir,	ac.		*to perceive,*	—	o.
6	s'apercevoir,		ge.	*to perceive.*		
1	apetisser,			*to diminish.*		
1	s'apetisser,			*to grow short.*		
2	aplanir,	ac.		*to level.*		
2	aplatir,	ac.		*to make flat.*		
1	appaiser,	ac.		*to appease.*		
1	appareiller,	ac.		*to match.*		
5	appartenir,		da.	*to belong,*	—	de.
2	s'appauvrir,			*to grow poor,*	—	à.
1	appeler,	ac.		*to call,*	—	à.
11	appendre,	ac.	da.	*to append.*		
2	appesantir,	ac.		*to make heavy.*		
2	applaudir,	ac. *or*	da.	*to applaud,*	—	de.
1	appliquer,	ac.	da.	*to apply.*		
1	s'appliquer,		da.	*to apply one's self,*		à.
1	apporter,	ac.	da.	*to bring.*		
1	apposer,	ac.	da.	*to set.*		
1	apprécier,	ac.	da.	*to appraise.*		
1	appréhender,	ac.	ge.	*to fear,*	(subj.)	de.
ir.	apprendre,	ac.	da.	*to learn,*	—	à.
1	apprêter,	ac.	da.	*to prepare,*	—	à.
1	apprivoiser,	ac.		*to tame.*		
1	approcher,	ac.	ge.	*to approach.*		
2	approfondir,	ac.		*to examine into.*		
1	approprier,	ac.	da.	*to appropriate.*		
1	s'approprier,	ac.		*to usurp.*		
1	approuver,	ac.		*to approve,*	—	de.
1	appuyer,	ac.		*to prop.*		
1	s'appuyer sur,			*to lean upon.*		
1	arborer	ac.		*to set up.*		
1	argumenter,	ge.	da.	*to infer.*		

1	armer,	ac.	ge.	*to arm.*		
1	arpenter,	ac.		*to survey land.*		
1	arracher,	ac.ge. *or* da.		*to pull out.*		
1	arranger,	ac.		*to set in order.*		
1	arrêter,	ac.		*to stop, to determine,*		de.
1	s'arrêter,		da.	*to stay,*	—	à.
1	arriver,*		da.	*to come to, to happen,*		de.
1	s'arroger,	ac.		*to claim to one's self,*		de.
2	arrondir,	ac.		*to make round.*		
1	arroser,	ac.		*to water.*		
1	articuler,	ac.		*to articulate.*		
1	asperger,	ac.	ge.	*to besprinkle.*		
1	aspirer,		da.	*to aim at.*	—	à.
1	assaisonner,	ac.	ge.	*to season.*		
1	assassiner,	ac.		*to assassinate.*		
1	assembler,	ac.	da.	*to bring together.*		
ir.	asseoir,	ac.		*to sit.*		
1	assiéger,	ac.		*to besiege.*		
1	assigner,	ac.	da.	*to assign,*	—	à.
1	assimiler,	ac.	da.	*to assimilate.*		
1	assister,	ac.	ge.	*to relieve.*		
1	associer,	ac.	da.	*to associate.*		
1	assommer,	ac.	ge.	*to knock down.*		
2	assortir,	ac.	da.	*to match.*		
2	assoupir,	ac.		*to make drowsy.*		
2	s'assoupir,		da.	*to fall asleep.*		
2	assouvir,	ac.	ge.	*to glut.*		
2	assujettir,	ac.	da.	*to subdue,*	—	à.
1	assurer,	ac.	da.	*to affirm.*	—	o.
8	astreindre,	ac.	da.	*to subject,*	—	à.
1	s'attabler,			*to sit down at table.*		
1	attacher,	ac.	da.	*to bind.*		
1	s'attacher,		da.	*to stick,*	—	à.
1	attaquer,	ac.	ge.	*to attack.*		
1	s'attaquer,		da.	*to stand up against.*		
8	atteindre,	ac. *or* da.		*to reach.*		
1	atteler,	ac.	da.	*to put horses to a coach.*		
11	attendre,	ac.		*to expect,*	—	à.
11	s'attendre,		da.	*to hope for,*	—	à.
2	attendrir,	ac.		*to soften.*		
2	s'attendrir,			*to be moved.*		

1	attenter,		da.	*to attempt.*		
1	atténuer,	ac.		*to attenuate.*		
1	atterrer,	ac.		*to strike down.*		
1	attester,	ac.	da.	*to attest,*	—	o.
2	attiédir,	ac.		*to cool.*		
1	attirer,	ac.	da.	*to attract.*		
1	s'attirer,	ac.		*to draw upon one's self.*		
1	attiser,	ac.		*to stir up.*		
ir.	attraire,	ac.		*to allure.*		
1	attraper,	ac.		*to catch.*		
1	attribuer,	ac.	da.	*to ascribe,*	—	de.
1	s'attrister,		ge.	*to be sorrowful,*		de.
1	attrouper,	ac.		*to assemble.*		
1	s'attrouper,		da.	*to troop.*		
1	augmenter,	ac.	ge.	*to increase.*		
1	augurer,	ac.	ge.	*to augurate.*		
1	auner,	ac.		*to measure by the ell.*		
1	autoriser,	ac.	da.	*to authorise,*	—	à.
1	avaler,	ac.		*to swallow.*		
1	avancer,	ac.	da.	*to advance.*		
1	s'avancer,			*to go so far as,*		
2	avertir,	ac.	ge.	*to warn,*	—	de.
1	aveugler,	ac.		*to blind.*		
2	avilir,	ac.		*to disgrace.*		
1	s'aviser,		ge.	*to bethink one's self,*		de.
ir.	avoir,	ac.		*to have,*	—	à.
1	avouer,	ac.	da.	*to confess,*	—	o.

B

1	Babiller,			*to prattle.*		
1	badiner,			*to joke.*		
1	se baigner,			*to bathe.*		
1	bâiller,			*to yawn.*		
1	baiser,	ac.		*to kiss.*		
1	baisser,	ac.		*to let down.*		
1	se baisser,			*to stoop.*		
1	balancer,	ac.		*to balance.*		
1	balayer,	ac.		*to sweep.*		
1	balotter,	ac.		*to toss.*		
1	bander,	ac.		*to bend.*		

2	bannir,	ac.	ge.	*to banish.*
1	baptiser,	ac.		*to baptise.*
1	barbouiller,	ac.	ge.	*to daub.*
1	barrer,	ac.	da.	*to bar.*
1	barricader,	ac.		*to barricade.*
1	bassiner,	ac.		*to warm a bed.*
1	bâter,	ac.		*to saddle.*
2	bâtir,	ac.		*to build.*
ir.	battre,	ac.		*to beat.*
1	bégayer,			*to stammer.*
1	bêler,			*to bleat.*
2	bénir,	ac.		*to bless.*
1	bercer,	ac.	ge.	*to lull asleep.*
1	biaiser,			*to use evasions.*
1	biffer,	ac.	ge.	*to blot out.*
1	blâmer,	ac.	ge.	*to blame,*
2	blanchir,	ac.		*to whiten.*
1	blasphémer,	ac.		*to blaspheme.*
1	blesser,	ac.		*to wound.*
1	bloquer,	ac.		*to block up.*
ir.	boire,	ac.		*to drink.*
1	boiser,	ac.		*to wainscot.*
1	bombarder,	ac.		*to bombard.*
2	bondir,			*to jump about.*
1	border,	ac.	ge.	*to border.*
1	borner,	ac.	da.	*to limit,*
1	boucher,	ac.		*to stop up.*
1	bouder,			*to pout.*
ir.	bouillir,			*to boil.*
1	boulanger,	ac.		*to bake.*
1	bouleverser,	ac.		*to overthrow.*
1	bourdonner,	ac.	da.	*to buzz.*
1	boutonner,	ac.		*to button.*
1	branler,	ac.		*to shake.*
1	brasser,	ac.		*to brew.*
1	braver,	ac.		*to affront.*
1	brider,	ac.		*to bridle.*
1	briguer,	ac.		*to sue for an office.*
1	briller,		da.	*to shine.*
1	briser,	ac.		*to break.*
1	broder,	ac.		*to embroider.*

1	broncher,			*to stumble.*		
1	brosser,	ac.		*to brush.*		
1	brouiller,	ac.		*to confound.*		
1	broyer,	ac.		*to grind.*		
1	brûler,	ac.		*to burn.*		
2	brunir,	ac.		*to burnish.*		
1	brusquer,	ac.		*to blunt.*		
1	butiner,	ac.		*lo plunder.*		

C

1	Cabaler,			*to cabal.*		
1	cacher,	ac.	da.	*to hide.*		
1	cacheter,	ac.		*to seal up.*		
1	calciner,	ac.		*to calcinate.*		
1	calculer,	ac.		*to calculate.*		
1	calmer,	ac.		*to calm.*		
1	calomnier,	ac.		*to slander.*		
1	camper,	ac.		*to encamp.*		
1	canoner,	ac.		*to storm.*		
1	se cantonner,			*to canton.*		
1	capituler,			*to capitulate.*		
1	caractériser,	ac.		*to characterise.*		
1	caresser,	ac.		*to caress.*		
1	carrer,	ac.		*to square.*		
1	casser,	ac.	da.	*to break.*		
1	cathéchiser,	ac.		*to instruct.*		
1	causer,			*to prattle.*		
1	cautionner,	ac.		*to bail.*		
1	céder,	ac.	da.	*to yield.*		
1	célébrer,	ac.		*to celebrate.*		
1	céler	ac.	da.	*to conceal.*		
1	censurer,	ac.	ge.	*to censure.*		
1	certifier,	ac.	da.	*to certify.*	—	o.
1	cesser,	ac.		*to cease,*	—	de.
1	chagriner,	ac.		*to vex,*	—	de.
1	chanceler,			*to stagger.*		
1	changer,	ac.		*to change.*		
1	chanter,	ac.		*to sing.*		
1	charger,	ac.	ge.	*to charge,*	—	de.
1	charmer,	ac.		*to charm,*	—	de.

1	chasser,	ac.	ge.	*to expel.*		
1	chauffer,	ac.		*to warm.*		
1	cheminer,			*to walk.*		
1	chercher,	ac.		*to look for,*	—	c.
1	chiffrer,	ac.		*to number.*		
2	choisir	ac.		*to chuse,*	—	de.
1	choquer,	ac.		*to offend,*	—	de.
1	cicatriser,	ac.		*to cicatrise.*		
1	cimenter,	ac.		*to cement.*		
12	circonscrire,	ac.		*to circumscribe.*		
1	circonstancier,	ac.		*to describe minutely.*		
1	circuler,	ac.		*to circulate.*		
1	citer,	ac.		*to summon,*	—	à.
1	civiliser,	ac.		*to civilize.*		
1	clarifier,	ac.		*to clarify.*		
1	coaguler,	ac.		*to coagulate.*		
1	coller,	ac.	da.	*to glue.*		
1	colorer,	ac.		*to colour.*		
ir.	combattre,	ac.		*to fight.*		
1	combler,	ac.	ge.	*to fill up.*		
1	commander,	ac.	da.	*to command,*	subj.	de.
1	commencer,	ac.		*to begin,*	—	à.
1	commenter,	ac.		*to comment.*		
1	commercer,			*to trade.*		
ir.	commettre,	ac.	da.	*to commit,*	—	à.
1	communiquer,	ac.	da.	*to communicate*		
1	comparer,	ac.	da.	*to compare.*		
2	compatir,		da.	*to compassionate.*		
1	compenser,	ac.		*to compensate.*		
7	se complaire,		da.	*to please,*	—	à.
1	complimenter,	ac.	ge.	*to compliment.*		
1	composer,	ac.		*to compose.*		
ir.	comprendre,	ac.	da.	*to understand.*		
1	comprimer,	ac.		*to squeeze.*		
ir.	se compromettre,			*to expose one's self.*		
1	compter,	ac.		*to count,*	—	o
1	concentrer,	ac.		*to concenter.*		
1	concerner,	ac.		*to concern.*		
6	concevoir,	ac.		*to conceive.*		
1	concilier,	ac.		*to conciliate*		
ir.	conclure,	ac.		*to conclude.*		

ir.	concourir,		da.	*to concur,*	—	à.
1	condamner,	ac.	da.	*to condemn,*	—	à.
11	condescendre,		da.	*to condescend,*	—	à.
10	conduire,	ac.	da.	*to conduct,*	—	à.
1	conférer,	ac.	da.	*to confer.*		
1	confesser,	ac.	da.	*to confess,*	—	o.
1	confier,	ac.	da.	*to trust.*		
1	confiner,	ac.		*to confine.*		
ir.	confire,	ac.		*to pickle.*		
1	confirmer,	ac.	da.	*to confirm.*		
1	confisquer,	ac.		*to confiscate.*		
11	confondre,	ac.		*to confound.*		
1	conformer,	ac.	da.	*to conform.*		
1	comforter,	ac.		*to comfort.*		
1	confronter,	ac.		*to compare.*		
1	congédier,	ac.	ge.	*to dismiss.*		
1	conjecturer,		ge.	*to guess.*		
8	conjoindre,	ac.		*to conjoin.*		
1	conjuguer	ac.		*to conjugate.*		
1	conjurer,	ac.	ge.	*to intreat.*	(subj.)	de.
1	conniver,		da.	*to connive.*		
9	connoître,	ac.		*to know.*	—	o.
ir.	conquérir,	ac.		*to conquer.*		
1	consacrer,	ac.	da.	*to consecrate.*		
1	conseiller,	ac.	da.	*to advise,*	(subj.)	de.
3	consentir,		da.	*to consent,*	(subj.)	à.
1	conserver,	ac.		*to preserve.*		
1	considérer,	ac.		*to consider.*		
1	consigner,	ac.	da.	*to consign.*	—	de.
1	consister,			*to consist,*	—	à.
1	consoler,	ac.	ge.	*to comfort,*	—	de.
1	consolider,	ac.		*to consolidate.*		
1	consommer,	ac.		*to consummate.*		
1	conspirer,	ac.		*to complot.*	—	de.
1	consterner,	ac.		*to dispirit.*		
1	constiper,	ac.		*to make costive.*		
1	constituer,	ac.		*to appoint.*		
10	construire,	ac.		*to build.*		
1	consulter,	ac.		*to consult.*		
1	consumer,	ac.		*to consume.*		
1	contempler,	ac.		*to contemplate.*		

5	contenir,	ac.	*to comprehend.*	
1	contenter,	ac.	*to satisfy.*	
1	conter,	ac. da.	*to relate.*	
1	contester,	ac. da.	*to contest,*	— (subj.)
1	continuer,	ac.	*to go on,*	— de *or* à.
1	contracter,	ac.	*to contract.*	
8	contraindre,	ac.	*to compel,*	— de *or* à.
1	contrarier,	ac.	*to contradict.*	
1	contre-balancer,	ac.	*to counterpoise.*	
ir.	contredire,	ac.	*to contradict.*	
ir.	contrefaire,	ac.	*to counterfeit.*	
1	contre-mander,	ac.	*to countermand.*	
1	contre-miner,	ac.	*to countermine.*	
1	contre-signer,	ac.	*to countersign.*	
5	contrevenir,	da.	*to infringe.*	
1	contribuer,	da.	*to contribute.*	— à.
1	contrôler,	ac.	*to controul.*	
ir.	convaincre,	ac. ge.	*to convince,*	— de.
5	convenir,*	ge.	*to agree,*	— de.
1	converser avec,		*to converse.*	
2	convertir,	ac.	*to convert.*	
1	coopérer,	da.	*to co-operate.*	
1	copier,	ac.	*to transcribe.*	
1	corder,	ac.	*to twist.*	
11	correspondre,	da.	*to correspond.*	
1	corriger,	ac.	*to correct.*	
1	corroborer,	ac.	*to strengthen.*	
ir.	corrompre,	ac.	*to corrupt.*	
1	cotoyer,	ac.	*to coast along.*	
1	coucher,	ac.	*to put to bed.*	
1	se coucher,		*to go to bed.*	
ir.	coudre,	ac.	*to sew.*	
1	couler,		*to flow.*	
1	couper,	ac. da.	*to cut.*	
1	courber,	ac.	*to bend.*	
ir.	courir,	da.	*to run.*	
1	couronner,	ac. ge.	*to crown.*	
1	courtiser,	ac.	*to court.*	
1	coûter,	da.	*to cost.*	
1	couver,	ac.	*to brood.*	
4	couvrir,	ac. ge.	*to cover*	

1	cracher,	ac.	da.	*to spit.*	
8	craindre,	ac.	ge.	*to fear,*	— (subj.) de:
1	crayonner,	ac.		*to draw.*	
1	créer,	ac.		*to create.*	
1	creuser,	ac.		*to dig.*	
1	crever,		ge.	*to burst out.*	
1	crier,		da.	*to cry.*	
1	critiquer,	ac.		*to cavil.*	
ir.	croire,	ac.		*to believe,*	— o.
	croiser,	ac.		*to cross.*	
9	crîotre,			*to increase.*	
1	croquer,	ac.		*to scranch.*	
1	crotter,	ac.		*to dirt.*	
2	croupir,			*to stagnate.*	
1	crucifier,	ac.		*to crucify.*	
ir.	cueillir,	ac.		*to gather.*	
10	cuire,	ac.		*to cook.*	
1	cultiver,	ac.		*to cultivate.*	
1	curer,	ac.		*to cleanse.*	

D

1	Daigner,			*to deign,*	— o.
1	damner,	ac.		*to damn.*	
1	danser,	ac.		*to dance.*	
1	débander,	ac.		*to untie.*	
1	débarquer,	ac.		*to disembark.*	
1	débarrasser,	ac.	ge.	*to disengage.*	
1	débarrer,	ac.		*to unbar.*	
ir.	débattre,	ac.		*to debate.*	
ir.	se débattre,			*to struggle.*	
1	débaucher,	ac.		*to debauch.*	
1	débiter,	ac.		*to sell.*	
1	déborder,	ac.		*to unborder.*	
1	se déborder,			*to overflow.*	
1	débotter,	ac.		*to pull off one's boots.*	
1	déboucher,	ac.		*to unstop.*	
1	débourser,	ac.		*to disburse.*	
1	déboutonner,	ac.		*to unbutton.*	
1	débrider,	ac.		*to unbridle.*	
1	débrouiller,	ac.		*to clear.*	

1	débusquer,	ac. ge.	*to drive out.*	
1	décacheter,	ac.	*to unseal.*	
1	décamper,	ge.	*to run away.*	
1	décapiter,	ac.	*to behead.*	
1	décéder,		*to die.*	
1	déceler,	ac.	*to detect.*	
1	décerner,	ac. da.	*to decree.*	
6	décevoir,	ac.	*to deceive.*	
1	déchaîner,	ac.	*to let loose.*	
1	se déchaîner contre,		*to inveigh against.*	
1	décharger,	ac. ge.	*to unload.*	
1	décharner,	ac.	*to pull off the flesh.*	
1	dechausser,	ac.	*to pull the stockings off.*	
1	déchiffrer,	ac.	*to decypher.*	
1	déchiqueter,	ac.	*to cut.*	
1	déchirer,	ac.	*to tear off.*	
ir.	déchoir,	ge.	*to decay.*	
1	décider,	ac.	*to decide,*	— de *or* à
1	décimer,	ac.	*to decimate.*	
1	déclamer contre,		*to inveigh against.*	
1	déclarer,	ac. da.	*to declare,*	— e.
1	décliner,	}	*to decay.*	
		} ac.	*to decline.*	
1	décoiffer,	ac.	*to put off the head dress.*	
1	decoller,	ac.	*to unglue.*	
1	décolorer,	ac.	*to discolour.*	
1	décomposer,	ac.	*to dissolve.*	
1	décompter,	ac.	*to discount.*	
1	déconcerter,	ac.	*to put out,*	— de.
1	décorder,	ac.	*to untwist.*	
1	décorer,	ac. ge.	*to adorn.*	
ir.	découdre,	ac.	*to unsew.*	
1	découler,	ge.	*to flow.*	
1	découper,	ac.	*to cut.*	
1	découpler,	ac.	*to uncouple.*	
1	décourager,	ac.	*to discourage,*	— de.
4	découvrir,	ac. da.	*to discover.*	
1	décrediter,	ac.	*to discredit.*	
1	décréter,	ac.	*to decree,*	— de.
1	décrier,	ac.	*to discredit.*	
12	décrire,	ac.	*to describe.*	

9	décroitre,	ac.		*to decrease.*		
1	décrotter,	ac.		*to rub off the dirt.*		
1	dédaigner,	ac.		*to despise,*	—	de.
1	dédier,	ac.	da.	*to dedicate.*		
ir.	dédire,	ac.	ge.	*to unsay.*		
1	dédommager,	ac.	ge.	*to indemnify.*	—	de.
10	déduire,	ac.	ge.	*to subtract.*		
ir.	défaire,	ac.		*to undo.*		
11	défendre,	ac.	da.	*to forbid,*	—	(subj.) de.
1	déférer,	ac.	da.	*to yield.*		
1	défier,	ac.		*to challenge,*	—	de.
1	se défier,		ge.	*to distrust.*		
1	défigurer,	ac.		*to disform.*		
1	défiler,	ac.		*to unstring.*		
2	définir,	ac.		*to define.*		
2	défleurir,	ac.		*to let fall its blossoms.*		
1	défoncer,	ac.		*to stave a cask.*		
1	déformer,	ac.		*to put out of form.*		
1	défrayer,	ac.	ge.	*to defray.*		
1	défricher,	ac.		*to clear.*		
1	défriser,	ac.		*to uncurl.*		
1	dégager,	ac.	ge.	*to disengage.*		
1	dégaîner,	ac.		*to unsheath a sword.*		
2	dégarnir,	ac.		*to unfurnish.*		
1	dégeler,			*to thaw.*		
1	dégénérer,			*to degenerate.*		
2	dégourdir,	ac.		*to revive.*		
1	dégoûter,	ac.	ge.	*to disgust,*	—	de.
1	se dégoûter,		ge.	*to be weary,*	—	de.
1	dégoutter,			*to trickle down.*		
1	dégrader,	ac.		*to degrade.*		
1	dégraisser,	ac.		*to take away the fat.*		
1	déguiser,	ac.		*to dissemble.*		
1	déjeûner,			*to breakfast.*		
8	déjoindre,	ac.		*to disjoin.*		
1	délacer,	ac.		*to unlace.*		
1	délaisser,	ac.		*to abandon.*		
1	délasser,	ac.		*to unweary.*		
1	délayer,	ac.		*to delute.*		
1	déléguer,	ac.		*to delegate.*		
1	délibérer sur,			*to deliberate.*		

1	délier,	ac.	ge.	*to untie.*		
1	délivrer,	ac.	ge.	*to rescue.*		
1	déloger,	ac.		*to remove.*		
1	demander,	ac.	da.	*to ask for,*	(subj.)	à *or* de.
1	démanger,			*to itch.*		
1	démâter,	ac.		*to unmast.*		
1	démêler,	ac.		*to disentangle.*		
3	démentir,	ac.		*to give the lie.*		
ir.	se démettre,		ge.	*to resign.*		
1	démeubler,	ac.		*to unfurnish.*		
1	demeurer,			*to live,* or *to stay.*		
2	démolir,	ac.		*to demolish.*		
1	démonter,	ac.		*to dismount.*		
1	démontrer,	ac.	da.	*to demonstrate.*		
1	dénier,	ac.		*to deny.*		
1	dénommer,	ac.		*to name.*		
1	dénoncer,	ac.	da.	*to denounce.*		
1	dénoter,	ac.		*to denote.*		
1	dénouer,	ac.		*to untie.*		
1	dépaqueter,	ac.		*to undo a bundle.*		
1	dépaver,	ac.		*to unpave.*		
1	dépêcher,	ac.	da.	*to dispatch.*		
1	se dépêcher,			*to make haste,*	—	de.
8	dépeindre,	ac.	da.	*to describe.*		
11	dépendre,		ge.	*to depend,*	—	de.
1	dépenser,	ac.		*to spend,*	—	à.
1	dépeupler,	ac.	ge.	*to depopulate.*		
1	déplacer,	ac.		*to displace.*		
7	déplaire,		da.	*to displease,*	(subj.)	de.
1	déplanter,	ac.		*to displant.*		
1	déplier,	ac.		*to unfold.*		
1	déplisser,	ac.		*to unplait.*		
1	déplorer,	ac.		*to lament.*		
1	déplumer,	ac.		*to take out the feathers.*		
2	dépolir,	ac.		*to unpolish.*		
1	déposer,	ac.		*to depose,*	—	o.
1	déposséder,	ac.	ge.	*to dispossess.*		
1	dépouiller,	ac.	ge.	*to strip.*		
1	dépraver,	ac.		*to deprave.*		
1	déprimer,	ac.		*to depress.*		
1	députer,	ac.	da.	*to depute.*		

1	déraciner,	ac.		*to root out.*	
1	déraisonner,			*to talk nonsense.*	
1	déranger,	ac.	ge.	*to disorder.*	
1	dérégler,	ac.		*to disorder.*	
1	dériver,	ac.	ge.	*to derive.*	
1	dérober,	ac.	da.	*to steal.*	
1	déroger,		da.	*to derogate.*	
1	dérouiller,	ac.		*to get out the rust.*	
1	désabuser,	ac.	ge.	*to undeceive.*	
ir.	désapprendre,	ac.		*to unlearn,*	— à.
1	désapprouver,	ac.		*to disapprove,*	— (subj.)
1	désarmer,	ac.		*to disarm.*	
1	désavouer,	ac.		*to disown,*	— (subj.) o.
11	descendre,	{ ac.		*to take down.*	
		*	da.	*to go down,*	— o.
1	désennuyer,	ac.		*to divert.*	
1	déserter,	ac. *or*	ge.	*to desert.*	
1	désespérer,	ac.		*to despair,*	— (subj.) de.
1	déshabiller,	ac.		*to undress.*	
1	se déshabituer,		ge.	*to break off one's custom,*	de.
1	déshonorer,	ac.		*to dishonour.*	
1	désigner,	ac.	da.	*to appoint.*	
1	désirer,	ac.	ge.	*to long for,*	(subj.) o *or* de.
1	se désister,		ge.	*to give over.*	
2	désobéir,		da.	*to disobey.*	
1	désobliger,	ac.		*to displease.*	
1	désoler,	ac.		*to desolate,*	— de.
1	désorienter,	ac.		*to put one out.*	
1	désosser,	ac.		*to unbone.*	
2	désaisir,		ge.	*to let a thing go.*	
1	dessaler,	ac.		*to unsalt.*	
1	dessécher,	ac.		*to dry up.*	
1	desseller,	ac.		*to unsaddle.*	
3	desservir,	ac,		*to clear up.*	
1	dessiner,	ac.		*to sketch.*	
1	dessouder,	ac.		*to unsolder.*	
1	destiner,	ac.	da.	*to design,*	— à.
2	désunir,	ac.		*to disunite,*	
1	détacher,	ac.	ge.	*to untie.*	
8	déteindre,	ac.		*to discolour.*	
11	détendre,	ac.		*to unbend.*	

1	déterminer,	ac.		to determine,	—	à.
1	se déterminer,		da.	to resolve upon,	—	à.
1	détester,	ac.		to abhor.		
11	détordre,	ac.		to untwist.		
1	détourner,	ac.	ge.	to divert,	—	de.
1	détremper,	ac.		to dilute.		
1	detromper,	ac.		to undeceive.		
1	détrôner,	ac.		to dethrone.		
10	détruire,	ac.		to destroy.		
1	dévaliser,	ac.		to strip.		
1	devancer,	ac.		to out-run.		
1	développer,	ac.		to unfold.		
5	devenir *,	ac.		to become.		
1	déverrouiller,	ac.		to unbolt.		
1	dévider,	ac.		to wind into a skain.		
1	deviner,	ac.		to guess.		
1	dévoiler,	ac.	da.	to unveil.		
6	devoir,	ac.	da.	to owe,	—	o.
1	dévorer,	ac.	da.	to devour.		
1	dévouer,	ac.	da.	to dedicate.		
1	dicter,	ac.	da.	to dictate.		
1	diffamer,	ac.		to defame.		
1	différer,	ac.		to differ,	—	de.
1	digérer,	ac.		to digest.		
1	dilater,	ac.		to dilate.		
1	dîmer,	ac.		to tithe.		
1	diminuer,	ac.		to decrease.		
1	dîner,			to dine.		
ir.	dire,	ac.	da.	to say,	—	de.
1	diriger,	ac.		to direct.		
1	discerner,	ac.		to discern.		
1	discipliner,	ac.		to discipline.		
1	discontinuer,	ac.		to cease,	—	de.
5	disconvenir *,		ge.	to disagree,	(subj)	de.
ir.	discourir,		ge.	to discourse.		
1	disculper,	ac.	ge.	to justify,	—	de.
1	discuter,	ac.		to discuss.		
1	disgracier,	ac.		to turn out of favour.		
8	disjoindre,	ac.		to disjoin.		
9	disparoître,		ge.	to vanish away.		
1	dispenser,	ac.	ge.	to excuse,	—	de.

1	disperser,	ac.		*to scatter.*	
1	disposer,	ac.	da.	*to set in order,*	— à.
1	disputer,			*to quarrel.*	
1	disséquer,	ac.		*to dissect.*	
1	dissimuler,	ac.		*to dissemble.*	
1	dissiper,	ac.		*to dissipate.*	
ir.	dissoudre,	ac.		*to dissolve.*	
1	dissuader,	ac.	ge.	*to dissuade,*	— de.
1	distiller,	ac.		*to distil.*	
1	distinguer,	ac.	ge.	*to discern.*	
ir.	distraire,	ac.	ge.	*to distract.*	
1	divaguer,			*to ramble.*	
2	divertir,	ac.		*to divert.*	— à.
1	diviser,	ac.	ge.	*to divide.*	
1	divulguer,	ac.		*to publish.*	
1	dogmatiser,			*to dogmatise.*	
1	dominer,	ac.		*to sway.*	
1	domter,	ac.		*to subdue.*	
1	donner,	ac.	da.	*to give,*	— à.
3	dormir,			*to sleep.*	
1	doter,	ac.		*to give a portion.*	
1	doubler,	ac.	ge.	*to line, to double.*	
1	douer,	ac.	ge.	*to endow.*	
1	douter,		ge.	*to question,*	— (subj.)
1	dresser,	ac.		*to make straight.*	— à.
2	durcir,	ac.		*to harden.*	
1	durer,			*to last.*	

E

2	Eblouir,	ac.		*to dazzle.*	
1	ébranler,	ac.		*to shake.*	
1	écarter,	ac.	ge.	*to drive away.*	
1	échanger,	ac.		*to exchange.*	
1	échapper,	ge. *or* da.		*to escape.*	
1	échauffer,	ac.		*to warm.*	
1	échouer,			*to run on shore.*	
1	éclabousser,	ac.		*to dash.*	
2	éclaircir,	ac.		*to clear.*	
1	éclairer,	ac.		*to light.*	
1	éclater,			*to burst.*	

1	s'éclipser,			*to disappear.*		
10	éconduire,	ac.		*to refuse.*		
1	écorcher,	ac.		*to skin.*		
1	s'écouler,			*to flow out.*		
1	écouter,	ac.		*to listen,*	—	o.
1	écraser,	ac.		*to bruise.*		
12	écrire,	ac.	da.	*to write,*	—	de.
1	écrouter,	ac.		*to chip bread.*		
1	écumer,		ge.	*to foam.*		
1	édifier,	ac.		*to edify.*		
1	effacer,	ac.	ge.	*to blot out.*		
1	effectuer,	ac.		*to put in execution.*		
1	effiler,	ac.		*to unravel.*		
1	effleurer,	ac.		*to touch slightly.*		
1	s'efforcer,			*to endeavour,*	—	de.
1	effrayer,	ac.		*to fright,*	—	de.
1	égaler,	ac.	da.	*to equal.*		
1	égorger,	ac.		*to cut the throat.*		
1	élaguer,	ac.		*to prune.*		
1	s'élancer sur,			*to leap upon.*		
2	élargir,	ac.		*to widen.*		
1	élever,	ac.	da.	*to raise, to educate.*		
ir.	élire,	ac.		*to elect.*		
1	éloigner,	ac.	ge.	*to remove,*	—	de.
1	embarquer,	ac.		*to embark.*		
1	embarrasser,	ac.	ge.	*to perplex,*	—	de.
1	embaumer,	ac.		*to embalm.*		
2	embellir,	ac.		*to embellish.*		
1	embraser,	ac.	ge.	*to set on fire.*		
1	embrasser,	ac.		*to embrace.*		
1	s'émerveiller,		ge.	*to wonder at,*	—	de.
1	emmenoter,	ac.		*to manacle.*		
1	émonder,	ac.		*to prune.*		
ir.	émoudre,	ac.		*to sharpen.*		
1	émousser,	ac.		*to blunt.*		
ir.	émouvoir,	ac.		*to move.*		
1	empailler,	ac.		*to cover with straw.*		
1	empaqueter,	ac.		*to pack up.*		
1	s'emparer,		ge.	*to seize upon.*		
1	empêcher,	ac.		*to hinder,*	—	(subj.) de.
1	empeser,	ac.		*to starch.*		

2	emplir,	ac.	ge.	*to fill up.*		
1	employer,	ac.	da.	*to employ,*	—	à.
1	empoisonner,	ac.		*to poison.*		
1	emporter,	ac.		*to carry away.*		
1	s'emporter,			*to fall into a passion.*		
1	s'empresser,			*to be eager,*	—	de.
1	emprisonner,	ac.		*to put in jail.*		
1	emprunter,	ac.	ge.	*to borrow.*		
1	encaver,	ac.		*to put in a cellar.*		
1	encenser,	ac.		*to offer incense.*		
1	enchaîner,	ac.		*to put in chains.*		
1	enchanter,	ac.		*to charm,*	—	de.
2	enchérir,			*to raise.*		
1	encourager,	ac.		*to encourage,*	—	à.
ir.	encourir,	ac.		*to incur.*		
1	s'endetter,			*to run into debt.*		
3	s'endormir,			*to fall asleep.*		
1	endurer,	ac.		*to suffer.*		
8	enfanter,	ac.		*to bring forth a child.*		
1	enfermer,	ac.		*to shut in.*		
1	enfiler,	ac.		*to thread.*		
1	enflammer,	ac.	ge.	*to set on fire.*		
1	enfler,	ac.	ge.	*to swell.*		
1	enfoncer,	ac.		*to break open.*		
8	enfreindre,	ac.		*to transgress.*		
1	enfumer,	ac.		*to smoke.*		
1	engager,	ac.	da.	*to persuade,*	--	à.
1	s'engager,		da.	*to take upon one's self,*		à.
1	engendrer,	ac.		*to beget.*		
2	engloutir,	ac.		*to swallow.*		
1	engraisser,	ac.		*to fatten.*		
2	s'enhardir,		da.	*to grow bold,*	—	à.
1	s'enivrer,		ge.	*to make on'es self drunk.*		
8	enjoindre,	ac.	da.	*to order,*	—	de.
1	enlever,	ac.	ge.	*to take away.*		
1	s'ennuyer,		ge.	*to be weary,*	—	de.
2	s'enorgueillir,		ge.	*to be proud,*	—	de.
ir.	s'enquérir,		ge.	*to inquire.*		
1	s'enraciner,			*to take root.*		
1	enrager,			*to enrage,*	—	de.
1	enregistrer,	ac.		*to register.*		

1	s'enrhumer,			*to catch cold.*		
2	s'enrichir,			*to grow rich.*	—	à.
1	enrôler,	ac.		*to enlist.*		
1	ensanglanter,	ac.		*to make bloody.*		
1	enseigner,	ac.	da.	*to teach,*	...	à.
1	ensemencer,	ac.		*to sow.*		
2	ensevelir,	ac.		*to bury.*		
1	entasser,	ac.		*to heap up.*		
11	entendre,	ac.		*to hear,*	-- ·	o.
1	enterrer,	ac.		*to bury.*		
1	s'entêter,		da.	*to be infatuated,*	—	à.
1	entraîner,	ac.	da.	*to drag away,*	—	à.
1	entraver,	ac.		*to fetter.*		
1	entrelacer,	ac.	ge.	*to intermingle.*		
1	entremêler,	ac.	ge.	*to intermix.*		
1	entrer *,		da.	*to get in.*		
ir.	s'entremettre,		ge.	*to interpose.*		
ir.	entreprendre,	ac.		*to undertake,*	—	de.
5	entretenir,	ac.	ge.	*to keep.*		
5	s'entretenir avec,			*to discourse with.*		
ir.	entrevoir,	ac.		*to have a glimpse.*		
4	entrouvrir,	ac.		*to open a little.*		
2	envahir,	ac.		*to invade.*		
1	envelopper,	ac.	ge.	*to fold up .*		
1	envenimer,	ac.		*to poison.*		
1	envier,	ac.	da.	*to envy.*		
1	environner,	ac.	ge.	*to encompass.*		
1	envisager,	ac.		*to look in the face.*		
1	s'envoler,			*to fly away.*		
ir.	envoyer,	ac.	da.	*to send,*	—	à.
2	épaissir,	ac.		*to thicken.*		
2	s'épanouir,			*to spring out.*		
1	épargner,	ac.	da.	*to spare,*	—	de.
1	épeler,	ac.		*to spell.*		
1	épicer,	ac.		*to spice.*		
1	épier,			*to ear, to spire.*		
1	épier,	ac.		*to spy.*		
1	épointer,	ac.		*to blunt.*		
1	époudrer,	ac.		*to wipe off the dust.*		
1	épouser,	ac.		*to marry.*		
1	épouvanter,	c.		*to terrify,*	—	de.

1	éprouver,	ac.		*to try.*		
1	épuiser,	ac.		*to empty.*		
1	épurer,	ac.	ge.	*to refine.*		
1	équiper,	ac.	ge.	*to equip.*		
ir.	équivaloir,		da.	*to be equal.*		
1	ériger,	ac.		*to erect.*		
1	errer,			*to ramble.*		
1	escalader,	ac.		*to scale.*		
1	escamoter,	ac.	da.	*to secure a dice.*		
1	escarmoucher,			*to skirmish.*		
1	escompter,	ac.		*to discount.*		
1	escrimer,			*to fence.*		
1	escroquer,	ac.	da.	*to sharp, to trick.*		
1	espérer,	ac.	ge.	*to hope.*	—	o.
1	espionner,	ac.		*to be a spy.*		
1	s'esquiver,		ge.	*to steal away.*		
1	essayer,	ac.	da.	*to try,*	—	de.
1	essuyer,	ac.		*to wipe off.*		
1	estimer,	ac.		*to value,*	—	o.
1	estropier,	ac.		*to lame.*		
2	établir,	ac.		*to establish.*		
1	étaler,	ac.	da.	*to display.*		
1	étancher,	ac.		*to quench.*		
8	éteindre,	ac.		*to extinguish.*		
11	étendre,	ac.		*to spread.*		
1	éternuer,			*to sneeze.*		
1	étiqueter,	ac.		*to title.*		
1	étonner,	ac.		*to surprise,*	—	de.
1	s'étonner,		ge.	*to wonder at,*	(subj.)	de.
1	etouffer,	ac.		*to stifle.*		
2	étourdir,	ac.		*to stun.*		
1	étrangler,	ac.		*to stifle to death.*		
ir.	être,			*to be,*	—	à.
2	étrécir,	ac.		*to make narrow.*		
1	s'étudier,			*to endeavour,*	—	à.
1	évacuer,	ac.		*to evacuate.*		
1	s'évader,		ge.	*to steal away.*		
1	évaluer,	ac.	da.	*to value.*		
2	s'évanouir,			*to faint away,*		
1	s'evaporer,			*to evaporate.*		
1	éveiller,	ac.		*to awake.*		

1	éviter.	ac.		*to shun,*	—	de.
1	exagérer,	ac.		*to exaggerate.*		
1	exalter,	ac.		*to exalt.*		
1	examiner,	ac.		*to inquire into,*	—	o.
1	exaucer,	ac.		*to grant.*		
1	excéder,	ac.	ge.	*to exceed.*		
1	exceller,			*to excel.*		
1	excepter,	ac.	ge.	*to except.*		
1	exciter	ac.	da.	*to incite,*	—	à.
ir.	exclure,	ac.	ge.	*to exclude.*		
1	excommunier,	ac.		*to excommunicate.*		
1	excuser,	ac.		*to excuse,*	—	de.
1	exempter,	da.	ge.	*to exempt.*	—	de.
1	exécuter,	ac.		*to execute.*		
1	exercer,	ac.	da.	*to exercise,*	—	à.
1	exhorter,	ac.	da.	*to exhort,*	—	à.
1	exiger,	ac.	ge.	*to require,*	(subj.)	de.
1	exiler,	ac.		*to banish.*		
1	exister,			*to exist.*		
1	s'expatrier,			*to quit one's own country.*		
1	expédier,	ac.	da.	*to dispatch.*		
1	expier,	ac.		*to atone.*		
1	expirer,	ac.		*to expire, to die.*		
1	expliquer,	ac.	da.	*to explain.*		
1	exposer,	ac.	da.	*to expose.*		
1	exprimer,	ac.	da.	*to express.*		
1	expulser,	ac.	ge.	*to turn out.*		
1	exterminer,	ac.		*to exterminate.*		
1	extirper,	ac.	ge.	*to root out.*		
ir.	extraire,	ac.	ge.	*to extract.*		

F

1	Fabriquer,	ac.		*to manufacture.*		
1	fâcher,	ac.		*to vex,*	—	de.
1	se fâcher,		ge.	*to be angry,*	(subj.)	de.
1	faciliter,	ac.	da.	*to facilitate.*		
1	façonner	ac.		*to fashion.*		
ir.	faire,	ac.	da.	*to make* or *to do,*	—	o.
imp.	falloir,			*to be necessary,*	(subj.)	de.
1	falsifier,	ac.		*to counterfeit.*		

1	se familiariser,			*to grow familiar.*		
2	farcir,	ac.	ge.	*to stuff.*		
1	se farder,			*to paint.*		
1	fatiguer,	ac.		*to tire,*	—	de.
1	favoriser,	ac.		*to favour.*		
8	feindre,	ac.		*to dissemble,*	—	de.
11	fendre,	ac.		*to split* or *cleave.*		
1	fermenter,			*to ferment.*		
1	fermer,	ac.		*to shut up.*		
1	ferrer un cheval,			*to shoe a horse.*		
1	se fier,		da.	*to trust to.*		
1	se figer,			*to congeal.*		
1	figurer,	ac.		*to represent.*		
1	se figurer,	ac.		*to fancy,*	—	o.
1	filer,	ac.		*to spin.*		
1	filtrer,	ac.		*to filtrate*		
2	finir	ac.		*to make an end,*	—	de.
1	flamber,			*to blaze.*		
1	se flater,		ge.	*to flatter one's self,*	—	de.
2	fléchir,	ac.		*to soften.*		
2	flétrir,	ac.		*to fade away.*		
2	fleurir,	ac.		*to bloom.*		
1	flotter,			*to float.*		
1	fomenter,	ac.		*to foment.*		
11	se fondre,	ac.		*to melt.*		
1	forcer,	ac.	da.	*to compel,*	—	à *or* de.
1	forger,	ac.		*to hammer.*		
1	se formaliser,	ac.	ge.	*to find fault,*	—	de.
1	former,	ac.		*to form.*		
1	fortifier,	ac.		*to strengthen.*		
1	foudroyer,	ac.		*to storm.*		
1	fouetter,	ac.		*to whip.*		
1	fouler aux pieds,	ac.		*to trample upon.*		
2	fournir,	ac.	da.	*to furnish.*		
1	frapper,	ac.	ge.	*to strike.*		
2	frémir,		ge.	*to tremble,*	—	de.
1	fréquenter,	ac.		*to haunt.*		
1	friser,	ac.		*to curl.*		
1	frissonner,		ge.	*to shiver,*	—	de.
2	froidir,			*to grow cold.*		
1	froisser,	ac.		*to bruise.*		

1	frotter,	ac.		*to rub.*	
1	frustrer,	ac.	ge.	*to disappoint.*	
ir.	fuir,	ac.	ge.	*to shun.*	
1	fumer,	ac.		*to smoke.*	

G

1	Gager,	ac.		*to lay wagers.*	
1	gagner,	ac.		*to win.*	
1	galoper,	ac.		*to gallop.*	
1	se gangréner,			*to gangrene.*	
2	garantir,	ac.	ge.	*to preserve.*	
1	garder,	ac.		*to keep.*	
1	se garder,		ge.	*to beware,*	— de.
2	garnir,	ac.	ge.	*to furnish.*	
1	garotter,	ac.		*to tie fast.*	
1	gâter,	ac.		*to spoil.*	
1	geler,			*to freeze.*	
2	gémir,			*to groan,*	— de.
1	gesticuler,			*to be full of action.*	
1	glacer,		ge.	*to freeze.*	
1	glaner,	ac.		*to glean*	
1	glisser,			*to slide.*	
1	se glisser,			*to creep in.*	
1	goûter,	ac.		*to taste.*	
1	gouverner,	ac.		*to rule.*	
2	grandir,			*to grow tall.*	
1	gratter,	ac.		*to scratch.*	
1	graver,	ac.		*to engrave.*	
1	grêler			*to hail.*	
1	griller,	ac.		*to broil.*	
1	griller,		ge.	*to burn with impatience,*	de.
1	grincer les dents,			*to gnash the teeth.*	
1	gronder,	ac,	ge.	*to scold at,*	— de.
2	grossir,			*to grow big.*	
2	guérir,	ac.	ge.	*to cure.*	
2	se guérir,			*to recover.*	
1	guider,	ac.	da.	*to guide.*	

H

1	Habiller,	ac.	ge.	*to clothe, to dress.*	

1	s'habiller,			*to dress one's self.*		
1	habiter,	ac.		*to live in.*		
1	s'habituer,	da.		*to get an habit,*	—	à.
ir.	haïr,	ac.		*to hate,*	—	de.
1	haranguer,	ac.		*to make a speech.*		
1	hasarder,	ac.		*to venture,*	—	de.
1	se hâter,			*to make haste,*	—	de.
1	hériter,		ge.	*to inherit.*		
1	hésiter,			*to hesitate,*	—	à.
1	honorer,	ac.	ge.	*to honour.*		
1	humilier,	ac.		*to humble.*		

I

1	Idolâtrer,	ac.		*to worship idols.*		
1	ignorer,	ac.		*to be ignorant.*		
1	illuminer,	ac.		*to illuminate.*		
1	s'imaginer,	ac.		*to fancy,*	—	o.
1	imbiber,	ac.		*to imbibe.*		
1	s'immiscer,	ac.		*to intermeddle.*		
1	immoler,	ac.	da.	*to sacrifice.*		
1	immortaliser,	ac.		*to immortalize.*		
1	impatienter,	ac.		*to tire one's patience.*		
1	implorer,	ac.		*to implore.*		
1	importuner,	ac.		*to be troublesome.*		
1	imposer,	ac.	da.	*to lay on.*		
1	imprimer,	ac.		*to print.*		
1	imputer,	ac.	da.	*to impute,*	—	de.
1	incliner,		da.	*to incline,*	—	à.
1	incommoder,	ac.		*to disturb.*		
1	incorporer,	ac.	da.	*to incorporate.*		
1	inculper,	ac.		*to accuse,*	—	de.
1	inculquer,	ac.	da.	*to inculcate.*		
1	indemniser,	ac.	ge.	*to indemnify.*		
1	indiquer,	ac.	da.	*to shew,*	—	de.
1	indisposer,	ac.		*to alienate.*		
1	infecter,	ac.	ge.	*to infect.*		
1	infester,	ac.		*to infest.*		
1	influencer,	ac.	ge.	*to influence.*		
1	informer,	ac.	ge.	*to inform.*		
1	infuser,	ac.		*to infuse.*		
1	s'ingérer,		ge.	*to intermeddle with,*		de.

1	inhumer,	ac.	*to bury.*		
1	injurier,	ac.	*to abuse.*		
1	innover,	ac.	*to innovate.*		
1	inonder,	ac. ge.	*to overflow.*		
1	inquiéter,	ac.	*to trouble.*		
12	inscrire,	ac.	*to inscribe.*		
1	s'insinuer,		*to steal in.*		
1	insinuer,	ac. da.	*to insinuate,*	—	de.
1	inspirer,	ac. da.	*to inspire with,*	—	de.
1	instituer,	ac.	*to appoint.*		
10	instruire,	ac. ge.	*to teach.*		
1	insulter,	ac. *or* da. ge.	*to insult.*		
1	intercéder,	ac.	*to intercede.*		
1	intercepter,	ac.	*to intercept.*		
ir.	interdire,	ac.	*to interdict.*		
1	s'interposer,	ac.	*to intermeddle.*		
1	interpréter,	ac. ge.	*to explain.*		
1	interroger,	ac.	*to ask questions.*		
ir.	interrompre,	ac.	*to interrupt.*		
5	intervenir,		*to intervene.*		
1	intimider,	ac.	*to fright.*		
1	intituler,	ac.	*to intitle.*		
1	intriguer,		*to cabal.*		
10	introduire,	ac.	*to introduce.*		
1	invectiver contre,		*to inveigh against.*		
1	inventer,	ac.	*to find out,*	—	de.
2	investir,	ac. ge.	*to invest.*		
1	inviter,	ac. da.	*to invite,*	—	à *or* de.
1	invoquer,	ac.	*to invoke.*		
1	irriter,	ac	*to exasperate.*		

J

1	Jardiner,		*to dress a garden.*		
1	jeter,	ac. da.	*to throw.*		
1	jeûner,	ac.	*to fast.*		
8	joindre,	ac. da.	*to join.*		
1	jouer,	ac. ge. da.	*to play.*		
2	jouir,	ge.	*to enjoy.*		
1	juger,	ac. ge.	*to judge.*	—	à.
1	jurer,	ac. da.	*to swear,*	—	de. *or* à.
1	justifier,	ac. ge.	*to justify,*	—	de.

L

1	Labourer,	ac.		*to plough.*		
1	lacer,	ac.		*to lace.*		
1	lâcher,	ac.		*to loosen.*		
1	laisser,	ac.	da.	*to leave,*	—	o.
1	lambrisser,	ac.		*to wainscot.*		
1	lamenter,	ac.		*to bemoan.*		
1	lancer,	ac.	da.	*to fling.*		
2	languir,		ge.	*to languish.*		
1	larder,	ac.	ge.	*to lard.*		
1	se lasser,			*to be weary,*	—	de *or* à
1	laver,	ac.	da.	*to wash.*		
1	légitimer	ac.		*to legitimate.*		
1	léguer,	ac.	da.	*to leave by will.*		
1	se lever,			*to rise.*		
1	lier,	ac.		*to tie.*		
1	se liguer contre,			*to enter into a league.*		
1	limer,	ac.		*to file off.*		
1	limiter,	ac.	da.	*to limit.*		
1	liquéfier,	ac.		*to liquefy.*		
ir.	lire,	ac.	da.	*to read.*		
1	livrer,	ac.	da.	*to deliver.*		
1	loger,	ac.		*to lodge, to dwell.*		
1	loucher,			*to squint.*		
1	louer,	ac.	ge.	*to praise,*	—	de.
ir.	luire,			*to shine.*		
1	lutter contre,			*to struggle with.*		
1	lutter,			*to wrestle.*		

M

1	Mâcher,	ac.		*to shew.*		
1	maçonner,	ac.		*to build.*		
2	maigrir,			*to grow lean.*		
5	maintenir,	ac.		*to maintain.*		
1	maîtriser,	ac.		*to subdue.*		
1	maltraiter,	ac.	ge.	*to use ill.*		
1	mander,	ac.	da.	*to send for,*	—	de.
1	manger,	ac.		*to eat.*		

1	manier,	ac.		*to handle.*	
1	manifester,	ac.		*to reveal.*	
1	manquer,	ac.		*to miss.*	
1	manquer,	ge.	da.	*to want, to fail,*	à *or* de.
1	marchander,	ac.		*to cheapen.*	
1	marcher,		da.	*to walk.*	
1	marier,	ac.	da.	*to marry.*	
1	se marier,	ac.	da.	*to marry.*	
1	mariner,	ac.		*to pickle.*	
1	marquer,	ac.	da.	*to mark.*	
1	massacrer,	ac.		*to massacre.*	
ir.	maudire,	ac.		*to curse.*	
9	se méconnoître,			*to forget one's self.*	
9	méconnoître,	ac.		*to take for another.*	
ir.	médire,		ge.	*to slander.*	
1	méditer,	ac.		*to meditate,*	— de.
1	se méfier,		ge.	*to distrust.*	
1	mélanger,	ac.		*to mix together.*	
1	mêler,	ac. ge.	da.	*to mix.*	
1	se mêler,		ge.	*to meddle with,*	— de.
1	menacer,	ac.	ge.	*to threaten,*	— de.
1	ménager,	ac.	da.	*to spare.*	
3	mentir,			*to tell lies.*	
ir.	se méprendre,			*to mistake.*	
1	mépriser,	ac.		*to despise.*	
1	mériter,	ac.		*to deserve,*	— de.
1	mesurer,	ac.	da.	*to measure.*	
1	métamorphoser,	ac.		*to metamorphose.*	
ir.	mettre,	ac.	da.	*to put.*	
1	meubler,	ac.	ge.	*to furnish.*	
2	meurtrir,	ac.	ge.	*to bruise.*	
1	miauler,			*to mew.*	
1	modérer,	ac.		*to moderate.*	
1	moissonner,	ac.		*to harvest.*	
1	molester,	ac.		*to grieve.*	
1	monter,	ac.	da.	*to get up, to take up.*	
1	montrer,	ac.	da.	*to shew,*	— à.
1	se moquer,		ge.	*to laugh at.*	
1	moraliser,			*to moralise.*	
11	mordre,	ac.		*to bite.*	
1	moucheter,	ac.		*to spot.*	

ir.	moudre,	ac.		*to grind.*		
ir.	mourir,*		ge.	*to die.*		
1	murer,	ac.	da.	*to wall up.*		
2	mûrir,			*to ripen.*		
1	murmurer,			*to mutter.*		

N

1	Nager,			*to swim.*		
ir.	naître,*			*to be born.*		
1	nécessiter,	ac.		*to compel,*	—	à.
1	négliger,	ac.		*to neglect,*	—	de.
1	négocier,	ac.		*to trade.*		
imp.	neiger,			*to snow.*		
1	nettoyer,	ac.		*to clean.*		
1	nier,	ac.		*to deny,*	—	(subj.) o.
2	noircir,	ac.		*to blacken.*		
1	nommer,	ac.	da.	*to name.*		
1	noter,	ac.		*to note.*		
1	notifier,	ac.	da.	*to let one know,*	—	de.
1	nouer,	ac.		*to tie.*		
2	nourrir,	ac.	ge.	*to feed.*	—	à
1	noyer,	ac.	ge.	*to drown.*		
1	se noyer,			*to be drowned.*		
1	nuancer,	ac.		*to shadow.*		
10	nuire,		da.	*to hurt.*		

O

2	Obéir,		da.	*to obey.*		
1	objecter,	ac.	da.	*to object.*		
1	obliger,	ac.	da.	*to oblige,*	—	de *or* à.
2	obscurcir,	ac.		*to darken.*		
1	obséder,	ac.		*to beset.*		
1	observer,	ac.	da.	*to observe,*	—	o.
1	s'obstiner,		da.	*to be obstinate,*	—	à.
5	obtenir,	ac.	ge.	*to obtain,*	—	de.
1	obvier,		da.	*to obviate.*		
1	occuper,	ac.	da.	*to employ.*	—	à.
1	offenser,	ac.		*to offend.*		
4	offrir,	ac.	da.	*to offer.*	—	de.

1	offusquer,	ac.		*to dim.*		
1	ombrager,	ac.		*to shadow.*		
ir.	omettre,	ac.		*to omit,*	—	de.
1	opiner,		da.	*to vote.*		
1	s'opiniatrer,		da.	*to be obstinate,*	—	à.
1	s'opposer,		da.	*to be against.*		
1	opprimer,	ac.		*to oppress.*		
1	opter,			*to chuse.*		
1	ordonner,	ac.	da.	*to order,*	— (subj.)	de.
1	orner,	ac.	ge.	*to adorn.*		
1	orthographier,	ac.		*to spell.*		
1	oser,	ac.		*to dare,*	—	o.
1	ôter,	ac. ge.	da.	*to take away.*		
1	oublier,	ac.		*to forget,*	—	de.
2	ourdir,	ac.		*to weave.*		
1	outrager,	ac.		*to affront.*		
4	ouvrir,	ac.	da.	*to open.*		

P

1	Pacifier,	ac.		*to pacify.*		
ir.	paître,	ac.		*to graze.*		
1	pallier,	ac.		*to palliate.*		
1	panser,	ac.		*to dress.*		
1	paraphraser,	ac.		*to comment upon.*		
ir.	parcourir,	ac.		*to run over.*		
1	pardonner,	ac.	da.	*to forgive,*	—	de.
1	parier,	ac.		*to bet,*	—	o.
1	parler,	ge.	da.	*to speak,*	—	de.
9	paroître,			*to appear,*	—	o.
1	parquer,	ac.		*to fold.*		
1	parsemer,	ac.	ge.	*to strew.*		
1	partager,	ac.	da.	*to share.*		
3	partir,*		ge.	*to set out.*		
5	parvenir,*		da.	*to arrive at.*		
1	passer,	ac.		*to pass.*		
1	patienter,			*to take patience.*		
1	patiner,			*to skait.*		
1	paver,	ac.		*to pave.*		
1	payer,	ac.	da.	*to pay.*		
1	pécher,			*to sin.*		

1	pêcher,	ac.		*to fish.*		
8	peindre,	ac.	da.	*to paint.*		
1	peler,	ac.		*to peel.*		
1	pencher sur,			*to lean upon.*		
11	pendre,	ac.	da.	*to hang.*		
1	pénétrer dans,			*to get into.*		
1	penser,	ge.	da.	*to think of,*	—	à.
1	percer,	ac.		*to pierce.*		
11	perdre,	ac.	da.	*to lose,*	—	à.
ir.	permettre,	ac.	da.	*to permit,*	—	(subj.) de.
1	persister,			*to persist,*	—	à.
1	persuader,	ac.	da.	*to persuade,*	—	de.
2	pervertir,	ac.		*to pervert.*		
1	peser,	ac.		*to weigh.*		
1	pétrifier,	ac.		*to petrify.*		
1	peupler,	ac.	ge.	*to people.*		
1	piler,	ac.		*to bruise.*		
1	piller,	ac.		*to plunder.*		
1	pincer,	ac.	da.	*to pinch.*		
1	piquer,	ac.	da.	*to prick.*		
.	se piquer,		ge.	*to pretend to,*	—	de.
1	placer,	ac.	da.	*to place.*		
8	plaindre,	ac.		*to pity,*	—	de.
8	se plaindre,	ge.	da.	*to complain,*		(subj.) de.
7	plaire,		da.	*to please,*	—	à.
1	planter,	ac.		*to plant.*		
1	plâtrer,	ac.		*to plaster.*		
1	pleurer,	ac.	ge.	*to bewail, to cry.*		
1	plier,	ac.		*to plait, to bend.*		
1	plisser,	ac.		*to plait.*		
1	plomber,	ac.		*to lead.*		
1	plonger,	ac.		*to plunge.*		
1	ployer,	ac.		*to fold up.*		
1	poignarder,	ac.		*to stab.*		
1	poivrer,	ac.		*to pepper.*		
1	polisser,	ac.		*to polish.*		
2	polir,	ac.		*to burnish.*		
1	pomper,	ac.		*to pump.*		
1	ponctuer,	ac.		*to point.*		
11	pondre,	ac.		*to lay eggs.*		
1	porter,	ac.	da.	*to carry,*	—	à.

1	poser,	ac.			*to lay.*		
1	posséder,	ac.			*to possess.*		
1	poudrer,	ac.			*to powder.*		
ir.	poursuivre,	ac.			*to pursue.*		
ir.	pourvoir,	ac.	ge.	da.	*to provide.*		
1	pousser,	ac.		da.	*to thrust, push,*	—	à.
ir.	pouvoir,	ac.		da.	*to be able,*	—	o.
1	pratiquer,	ac.			*to practise.*		
1	précéder,	ac.	ge.		*to precede.*		
1	prêcher,			da.	*to preach,*	—	de.
ir.	prédire,	ac.		da.	*to foretel,*	—	o.
1	prédominer,	ac.			*to predominate.*		
1	préferer,	ac.		da.	*to prefer,*	—	o.
1	préjudicier,			da.	*to prejudice.*		
1	prélever,	ac.			*to deduct.*		
1	préméditer,	ac.			*to premeditate,*	—	de.
ir.	prendre,	ac.	ge.	da.	*to take.*		
1	préparer,	ac.		da.	*to prepare,*	—	à.
1	préposer,	ac.		da.	*to set over.*		
1	présager,	ac.			*to portend,*	—	o.
12	prescrire,	ac.			*to prescribe,*	—	de.
1	présenter,	ac.		da.	*to offer,*	—	à.
1	préserver,	ac.			*to preserve.*		
1	présider,	ac.			*to preside.*		
1	présenter,	ac.			*to present,*	—	à.
3	pressentir,	ac.			*to foresee.*		
1	presser,	ac.			*to press,* or *squeeze,*		de.
1	présumer,	ac.	ge.		*to presume,*	—	de.
11	prétendre,	ac.		da.	*to pretend to, to design,*		o.
1	prêter,	ac.		da.	*to lend.*		
ir.	prévaloir,				*to prevail.*		
5	prévenir,	ac.	ge.		*to prevent.*		
ir.	prévoir	ac.			*to foresee,*	—	o.
1	prier,	ac.			*to pray,*	(subj.)	de.
1	priver,	ac.	ge.		*to deprive,*	—	de.
1	procéder,		ge.	da.	*to proceed.*		
1	proclamer,	ac.			*to proclaim.*		
1	procurer,	ac.		da.	*to procure,*	—	de.
1	prodiguer,	ac.			*to lavish.*		
10	produire,	ac.			*to produce.*		
1	profaner,	ac.			*to profane.*		

1	proférer,	ac.		*to utter.*		
1	professer,	ac.		*to profess.*		
1	profiter,		ge.	*to improve.*		
1	projeter,	ac.		*to intend,*	—	de.
1	prolonger,	ac.		*to prolong.*		
1	se promener,			*to walk.*		
ir.	promettre,	ac.	da.	*to promise,*	—	de.
1	prononcer,	ac.	da.	*to pronounce.*		
1	propager,	ac.		*to propagate.*		
1	prophétiser,	ac.		*to foretel.*		
1	proposer,	ac.	da.	*to propose,*	—	de.
12	proscrire,	ac.	ge.	*to proscribe.*		
1	prospérer,			*to prosper.*		
1	se prosterner,		da.	*to prostrate one's self.*		
1	protéger,	ac.		*to protect.*		
1	protester contre,			*to protest.*		
5	provenir,*		ge	*to proceed.*		
1	publier,	ac.		*to publish,*	—	o.
2	punir,	ac.	ge.	*to punish,*	—	de.
1	purger,	ac.		*to purge.*		
1	purifier,	ac.		*to purify.*		
1	se putréfier,			*to rot.*		

Q

1	Quadrupler,	ac.		*to quadruplate.*		
1	qualifier,	ac.		*to qualify.*		
1	quereller,	ac.		*to scold at.*		
1	questionner,	ac.		*to ask questions.*		
1	quêter,	ac.		*to beg.*		
1	quitter,	ac.		*to quit.*		

R

1	Rabaisser,	ac.		*to abate.*		
1	raccommoder,	ac.		*to mend.*		
1	racheter,	ac.	ge.	*to redeem.*		
1	racheter,	ac.		*to buy again.*		
1	raconter,	ac.	da.	*to relate.*		
2	se radoucir,			*to be appeased.*		
2	raffermir,	ac.		*to strengthen.*		

1	raffiner,	ac.	*to refine.*	
2	rafraîchir,	ac.	*to cool.*	
1	raisonner,	ac. ge.	*to reason.*	
2	ralentir,	ac.	*to relent.*	
1	rallier,	ac.	*to rally.*	
1	rallumer,	ac.	*to kindle again.*	
1	ramasser,	ac. ge.	*to pick up.*	
1	ramener,	ac. ge. da.	*to bring back.*	
2	ramollir,	ac.	*to soften.*	
1	ramper,	da.	*to crawl.*	
1	ranconner,	ac.	*to ransom.*	
1	ranger,	ac.	*to set in order.*	
1	ranimer,	ac.	*to revive,*	à.
1	râper,	ac.	*to grate.*	
1	rappeler,	ac. ge. da.	*to call again.*	
1	rapporter,	ac. ge. da.	*to bring back.*	
ir.	rapprendre,	ac.	*to learn again.*	
1	rapprocher,	ac. ge.	*to draw near again.*	
1	raréfier,	ac.	*to rarefy.*	
1	raser,	ac.	*to shave.*	
1	rassasier,	ac. ge.	*to satisfy,*	— de.
1	rassembler,	ac.	*to join together.*	
1	rassurer,	ac.	*to encourage.*	
1	ratifier,	ac.	*to ratify.*	
1	ratisser,	ac.	*to scrape.*	
1	rattacher,	ac. da.	*to tie again.*	
1	raturer,	ac.	*to scratch out.*	
1	ravager,	ac.	*to lay waste.*	
2	ravir,	ac. ge.	*to ravish,*	— de.
1	rayer,	ac. ge.	*to bar.*	
1	réaliser,	ac.	*to realize.*	
1	réassigner,	ac.	*to assign anew,*	— à.
2	rebâtir,	ac.	*to rebuild.*	
1	rebaptiser,	ac.	*to rebaptize.*	
2	reblanchir,	ac.	*to wash again.*	
2	rebondir,		*to rebound.*	
1	rebordér,	ac.	*to new border.*	
1	reboucher,	ac.	*to stop again.*	
1	rebrider,	ac.	*to bridle again.*	
1	rebuter,	ac.	*to reject.*	
1	recacheter,	ac.	*to seal up again.*	

1	recéler,	ac.		*to conceal.*		
6	recevoir,	ac.	ge.	*to receive.*		
1	rechanger,	ac.		*to change again.*		
1	recharger,	ac.	ge.	*to load again.*		
1	réchauffer,	ac.		*to warm again.*		
1	rechercher,	ac.		*to seek again.*		
1	réciter,	ac.		*to rehearse.*		
1	réclamer,	ac.	ge.	*to claim.*		
1	recoller,	ac.		*to glue again.*		
1	recommander,	ac.	da.	*to recommend,*	—	de.
1	récompenser,	ac.	ge.	*to reward,*	—	de.
1	recomposer,	ac.		*to compose again.*		
1	recompter,	ac.		*to reckon again.*		
1	réconcilier,	ac.		*to reconcile.*		
10	reconduire,	ac.	da.	*to wait upon one back.*		
9	reconnoître,	ac.		*to know again.*		
9	se reconnoître,			*to come to one's self.*		
ir.	reconquérir,	ac.		*to conquer.*		
1	reconter,	ac.	da.	*to tell over again.*		
1	recopier,	ac.		*to write fair again.*		
ir.	recoudre,	ac.		*to sew again.*		
ir.	recourir,		da.	*to have recourse .*		
	recouvrer,	ac.		*to recover.*		
4	recouvrir,		da.	*to new cover.*		
1	récréer,	ac.		*to recreate.*		
1	se récrier,			*to exclaim.*		
1	récriminer,			*to recriminate.*		
12	récrire,	ac.	da.	*to write over,*	—	de.
1	recruter,	ac.		*to recruit.*		
1	rectifier,	ac.		*to rectify.*		
ir.	recueillir,	ac.		*to gather.*		
1	reculer,	ac.		*to draw back.*		
1	récuser,	ac.		*to except against.*		
ir.	redéfaire,	ac.		*to undo again.*		
1	redemander,	ac.	da.	*to ask again,*	—	à.
11	redescendre,			*to come down again.*		
6	redevoir,	ac.	da.	*to owe still.*		
1	rédiger,	ac.		*to put in order.*		
ir.	redire,	ac.	da.	*to say again,*	—	de.
1	redonner,	ac.	da.	*to give again.*		
1	redorer,	ac.		*to new gild.*		

1	redoubler,	ac.		*to new line.*		
1	redoubler,		ge.	*to redouble.*		
1	redouter	ac.		*to dread,*	—	de.
1	redresser,	ac.		*to make straight.*		
10	réduire,	ac.	da.	*to reduce,*	—	à.
1	réédifier,	ac.		*to build up again.*		
ir.	refaire,	ac.		*to do over again.*		
1	référer,	ac.	da.	*to refer.*		
2	réfléchir sur,			*to reflect.*		
1	refluer,			*to run back.*		
11	refondre,	ac.		*to melt again.*		
1	réformer,	ac.		*to reform.*		
1	réfréner,	ac.		*to refrain.*		
2	refroidir,	ac.		*to cool.*		
1	se réfugier,			*to take sanctuary.*		
1	refuser,	ac.	da.	*to refuse,*	—	de.
1	réfuter,	ac.		*to refute.*		
1	regagner,	ac.		*to get again.*		
1	régaler,	ac.	ge.	*to entertain.*		
1	regarder,	ac.		*to look upon,*	-	o.
2	regarnir,	ac.	ge.	*to furnish again.*		
imp.	regeler,			*to freeze again.*		
1	régénérer,	ac.		*to regenerate.*		
2	régir,	ac.		*to govern.*		
1	régler,	ac.		*to rule.*		
1	régner,			*to reign.*		
1	regorger,		ge.	*to overflow.*		
1	regratter,	ac.		*to scratch again.*		
1	regretter,	ac.		*to lament,*	—	de.
1	réhabiliter,	ac.		*to rehabilitate.*		
1	rehausser,	ac.		*to raise.*		
1	rejaillir,			*to spurt up.*		
1	rejeter,	ac.	ge.	*to reject.*		
1	réintégrer,	ac.		*to restore.*		
8	rejoindre,	ac.		*to join again.*		
2	se réjouir,		ge.	*to rejoice,*	(subj.)	de.
1	réitérer,	ac.		*to repeat.*		
1	relâcher,	ac.		*to slacken.*		
2	rélargir,	ac.		*to make wider again.*		
1	relaver,	ac.		*to wash again.*		
1	reléguer,	ac.	da.	*to banish.*		

1	relever,	ac.	ge.	*to raise up again.*		
1	relier,	ac.		*to bind.*		
ir.	relire,	ac.		*to read over.*		
10	reluire,			*to glitter.*		
1	remander,	ac.	da.	*to send word again,*		de.
1	remarier,	ac.	da.	*to marry again,*		
1	remarquer,	ac.		*to observe.*		
1	remballer,	ac.		*to pack up again.*		
1	rembarquer,	ac.		*to embark again.*		
1	rembourser,	ac.		*to reimburse.*		
1	remêler,	ac.		*to shuffle again.*		
1	remener,	ac.	da.	*to carry back,*	—	à.
1	remercier,	ac.	ge.	*to thank,*	—	de.
1	remesurer,	ac.		*to measure again.*		
1	remédier,		da.	*to remedy.*		
ir.	remettre,	ac.	da.	*to put again.*		
1	remeubler,	ac.		*to furnish again.*		
1	remonter,	*	da.	*to get up again.*		
		ac.	da.	*to take up again.*		
1	remontrer,	ac.	da.	*to remonstrate.*		
ir.	remoudre,	ac.		*to grind again.*		
1	rempaqueter,	ac.		*to pack up again.*		
1	remplacer,	ac.		*to replace.*		
2	remplir,	ac.		*to fill up.*		
1	se remplumer,			*to new feather.*		
1	remporter,	ac.	da.	*to carry back.*		
1	remprunter,	ac.	ge.	*to borrow again.*		
1	remuer,	ac.		*to move.*		
ir.	renaître,		ge.	*to be born again.*		
1	renchaîner,	ac.		*to chain up again.*		
2	renchérir,	ac.		*to raise.*		
1	rencontrer,	ac.		*to meet with.*		
3	se rendormir,			*to fall asleep again.*		
11	rendre,	ac.	da.	*to return.*		
10	renduire,	ac.	ge.	*to new plaster.*		
1	renfermer,	ac.		*to shut up again.*		
1	renfler,	ac.		*to swell again.*		
1	renforcer,	ac.		*to fortify.*		
1	rengaîner,	ac.		*to sheath.*		
1	renier,	ac.		*to disown.*		
1	renoncer,	ac.	da.	*to renounce,*	—	à.
1	renouer,	ac.		*to tie again.*		

1	renouveler,	ac.		*to renew.*		
1	renter,	ac.		*to endow.*		
1	rentrer		da.	*to come again.*		
1	renverser,	ac.		*to throw down.*		
ir.	renvoyer,	ac.	da.	*to send back,*	—	o.
11	répandre,	ac.		*to spill, to spread.*		
1	réparer,	ac.		*to repair.*		
9	reparoître,			*to appear again.*		
2	répartir,		da.	*to reply.*		
3	repartir,*			*to go back again.*		
1	repasser,			*to cross again.*		
1	repasser,	ac.		*to iron.*		
1	repenser		da.	*to remind,*	—	à.
3	se repentir,		ge.	*to repent,*	—	de.
1	répéter,	ac.	da.	*to repeat.*		
1	repeupler,	ac.	ge.	*to repeople.*		
1	replacer,	ac.		*to place again.*		
1	replanter,	ac.		*to plant again.*		
1	replier,	ac.		*to fold again.*		
1	répliquer,	ac.	da.	*to reply.*		
1	replisser,	ac.		*to plait again.*		
1	replonger,	ac.		*to dip again.*		
2	repolir,	ac.		*to polish again.*		
11	répondre,	ac.	da.	*to answer.*		
1	reporter,	ac.	da.	*to carry back.*		
1	se reposer,			*to rest.*		
1	repousser,	ac.		*to drive back.*		
ir.	reprendre,	ac.	ge.	*to chide,*	—	de.
1	représenter,	ac.	da.	*to represent.*		
1	réprimander,	ac.	ge.	*to rebuke,*	—	de.
1	réprimer,	ac.		*to repress.*		
1	reprocher,	ac.	da.	*to reproach,*	—	de.
10	reproduire,	ac.	da.	*to reproduce.*		
1	répudier,	ac.		*to divorce.*		
1	répugner,		da.	*to repugn,*	—	de.
1	repurger,	ac.		*to purge again.*		
1	réputer,	ac.		*to repute.*	—	o.
ir.	requérir,	ac.	ge.	*to require.*	—	de.
1	réserver,	ac.	da.	*to reserve.*		
1	résider		da.	*to reside.*		
1	résigner,	ac.	da.	*to resign,*	—	à.
1	résilier	ac.	da.	*to cancel.*		

1	résister,		da.	*to resist.*		
ir.	résoudre	ac.		*to resolve,*	—	de. *or* à.
ir.	se résoudre,		da.	*to resolve upon,*	—	à.
1	respecter,	ac.		*to respect.*		
1	respirer,	ac.		*to breathe.*		
1	ressembler,		da.	*to resemble.*		
3	ressentir,	ac.		*to feel.*		
1	resserrer,	ac.		*to tie tighter.*		
5	se ressouvenir,		ge.	*to remember,*	—	de.
1	ressusciter,			*to raise from the dead.*		
1	restaurer,	ac.		*to restore.*		
1	rester,			*to stop,*		à.
1	restituer,	ac.	da.	*to return.*		
8	restreindre,	ac.		*to limit,*	—	à.
1	résulter,		ge.	*to result from.*		
1	résumer,	ac.		*to recapitulate.*		
2	rétablir,	ac.		*to re-establish.*		
1	retarder,	ac.		*to put off.*		
5	retenir,	ac.		*to detain,*	—	à.
1	retirer,	ac.	ge.	*to draw.*		
1	se retirer,		ge.	*to withdraw.*		
1	retomber,			*to fall again.*		
11	retordre,	ac.		*to twist again.*		
1	retoucher,	ac.		*to revise again.*		
1	retourner,	*	da.	*to return,*	—	o.
		ac.		*to turn again.*		
1	retracer,	ac.		*to draw again.*		
1	se retracter,		ge.	*to recant,*	—	de
1	retrancher, ac. ge.		da.	*to diminish.*		
1	se retrancher,			*to intrench.*		
2	rétrécir,	ac.		*to make narrow.*		
1	rétrograder,			*to retrograde.*		
1	retrouver,	ac.		*to find again.*		
1	réveiller,	ac.	ge.	*to awake.*		
1	révéler,	ac.	da.	*to reveal.*		
1	revendiquer,	ac.		*to claim.*		
11	revendre,	ac.	da.	*to sell again.*		
5	revenir,*	ge.	da.	*to come again,*	—	
1	rêver,			*to dream,*	—	o.
1	réverberer,	ac.		*to reflect.*		
1	révérer,	ac.		*to honour.*		
ir.	revêtir,	ac.	ge.	*to invest.*		

ir.	revivre,			*to revive.*		
2	réunir,	ac.	da.	*to re-unite.*		
ir.	revoir,	ac.		*to see again.*		
1	se révolter,			*to revolt.*		
1	révoquer,	ac.		*to repeal.*		
2	réussir,			*to succeed,*	—	à.
1	rider,			*to wrinkle.*		
1	ridiculiser,	ac.		*to laugh at.*		
1	rimer,	ac.		*to rhyme.*		
1	réimprimer,	ac.		*to reprint.*		
1	riposter,	ac.	da.	*to reply.*		
ir.	rire,		ge.	*to laugh,*	—	de.
1	risquer,	ac.		*to venture,*	—	à *or* de.
1	rissoler,	ac.		*to roast brown.*		
1	river,	ac.		*to rivet.*		
1	rogner,	ac.	da.	*to cut, to pare.*		
2	se roidir,			*to be stiff.*		
ir.	rompre,	ac.	da.	*to break.*		
1	ronfler,			*to snore.*		
1	ronger,	ac.		*to gnaw.*		
2	rôtir,	ac.		*to roast.*		
2	rougir,			*to blush, to redden,*		de.
1	rouler	ac.		*to roll.*		
2	roussir,			*to grow red.*		
4	rouvrir,	ac.		*to open again.*		
1	ruiner,	ac.		*to ruin.*		
1	se ruiner,		da.	*to ruin one's self,*	—	à.

S

1	Sabler,	ac.		*to gravel.*		
1	sabrer,	ac.		*to cut with a hanger.*		
1	saccager,	ac.		*to plunder.*		
1	sacrer,	ac.		*to consecrate.*		
1	sacrifier,	ac.	da.	*to sacrifice,*	—	à.
1	saigner,	ac.		*to let blood.*		
2	se saisir,		ge.	*to lay hold of.*		
2	salir,	ac.		*to foul.*		
1	saluer,	ac.		*to salute.*		
1	sanctifier,	ac.		*to sanctify.*		
1	saper,	ac.		*to sap.*		
1	sarcler,	ac.		*to weed.*		

1	satiriser,	ac.		*to satirize.*		
ir.	satisfaire,	ac.		*to satisfy,*	—	de.
ir.	savoir,	ac.		*to know,*	—	o.
1	sauter,	ac.		*to leap, to jump.*		
1	sauver,	ac.	ge.	*to save.*		
1	scandaliser,	ac.		*to scandalize,*	—	de.
1	scier,	ac.		*to saw.*		
1	sculpter,	ac.		*to engrave.*		
1	sécher,	ac.		*to dry.*		
1	seconder,	ac.		*to help.*		
1	secouer,	ac.		*to shake.*		
ir.	secourir,	ac.		*to relieve.*		
10	séduire,	ac.		*to seduce.*		
1	séjourner,		da.	*to stay in a place*		
1	sembler,		da.	*to seem,*	-	o.
1	semer,	ac.		*to sow.*		
3	sentir,	ac.		*to feel, to smell.*		
1	séquestrer,	ac.		*to sequestrate.*		
1	serrer,	ac.	da.	*to squeeze.*		
3	servir,	ac.	da.	*to serve,*	—	à.
1	sevrer,	ac.		*to wean.*		
1	siffler,			*to whistle.*		
1	signaler,	ac.		*to make famous.*		
1	signer,	ac.		*to subscribe.*		
1	signifier,	ac.	da.	*to notify,*	—	de.
1	solliciter,	ac.	da.	*to solicitate,*	—	à. *or* de.
1	sommeiller,			*to slumber.*		
1	sommer,	ac.		*to summon,*	—	de.
1	sonder,	ac.		*to sound.*		
1	songer,		da.	*to think,*	—	à.
1	sonner,	ac.		*to ring.*		
3	sortir,		ge.	*to go out,*	—	de.
1	se soucier,		ge.	*to care for,*	—	de.
1	souffler,	ac.	da.	*to blow.*		
4	souffrir,			*to suffer,*	(subj.)	o.
1	souhaiter,	ac.	da.	*to wish,*	(subj.)	o.
1	souiller,	ac.	ge.	*to dirty.*		
1	soulager	ac.	ge.	*to relieve.*		
1	se soûler,		ge.	*to cloy one's self.*		
1	soulever,	ac.	ge.	*to raise.*		
ir.	soumettre,	ac.	da.	*to submit,*	—	à.

1	soupçonner,	ac.	ge.		*to suspect*	—	de.
1	souper,				*to sup.*		
1	soupirer,				*to sigh.*		
ir.	sourire,			da.	*to smile.*		
12	souscrire,	ac.		da.	*to subscribe.*		
ir.	soustraire,	ac.	ge.	da.	*to subtract.*		
5	soutenir,	ac.		da.	*to maintain,*	—	o.
5	se souvenir,		ge.		*to remember,*	—	de.
1	spécifier,	ac.			*to specify.*		
1	statuer,				*to ordain,*	—	de.
1	stipuler,	ac.			*to stipulate.*		
1	stupéfier,	ac.			*to stupefy.*		
1	subdiviser,	ac.			*to subdivide.*		
2	subir,	ac.			*to undergo.*		
1	submerger,	ac.			*to sink.*		
1	subordonner,	ac.		da.	*to subordinate.*		
1	suborner,	ac.			*to corrupt.*		
1	subroger,	ac.			*to substitute.*		
1	subsister,				*to subsist.*		
1	substituer,	ac.		da.	*to substitute.*		
1	subtiliser,	ac.			*to subtilize.*		
5	subvenir,			da.	*to relieve.*		
	succéder,			da.	*to succeed.*		
1	sucrer,	ac.			*to sugar.*		
ir.	suffire,			da.	*to suffice,*	—	de.
1	suffoquer,	ac.			*to stifle.*		
1	suggérer,	ac.			*to suggest,*	—	de.
ir.	suivre,	ac.		da.	*to follow.*		
1	supplanter,	ac.			*to supplant.*		
1	suppléer,	ac.		da.	*to supply.*		
1	supplier,	ac.	ge.		*to intreat,*	(subj.)	de.
1	supporter,	ac.			*to suffer, to bear up.*		
1	supposer,	ac.		da.	*to suppose,*	(ind. subj.)	o.
1	supprimer,	ac.	ge.		*to suppress.*		
1	supputer,	ac.			*to compute.*		
1	surcharger,	ac.	ge.		*to overcharge.*		
ir.	surfaire,	ac.			*to exact.*		
1	surmonter,	ac.			*to excel.*		
1	surnager,				*to swim over.*		
1	surpasser,	ac.			*to excel.*		
ir.	surprendre,	ac.			*to surprize,*	—	de.

ir.	survivre,	da.	*to survive.*	
11	suspendre,	ac. da.	*to hang up.*	
1	sustenter,	ac.	*to maintain.*	
1	sympatiser,		*to sympathize.*	

T

1	Tacher,	ac.	*to stain.*	
1	tâcher		*to endeavour,*	— de.
			to aim at,	— à.
1	tacheter,	ac.	*to speckle.*	
1	tailler,	ac.	*to cut out.*	
7	taire,	ac.	*to conceal.*	
1	tamiser,	ac.	*to sift.*	
1	taner,	ac.	*to tan.*	
1	tapisser,	ac.	*to furnish with hangings.*	
1	tarder,		*to delay,*	— à.
1	tarir,	ac.	*to dry up.*	
1	tasser,	ac.	*to heap up.*	
1	tâter,	ac. da.	*to feel.*	
1	taxer,	ac. ge.	*to tax,*	— de.
7	teindre,	ac.	*to dye.*	
1	tempérer,	ac.	*to allay.*	
1	temporiser,		*to delay.*	
11	tendre,	ac. da.	*to tend,*	— à.
5	tenir,	ac. da.	*to hold.*	
1	tenter,	ac.	*to tempt,*	— de.
1	tergiverser,		*to shift.*	
1	terminer,	ac.	*to terminate.*	
1	terrasser,	ac.	*to throw down.*	
1	tirer,	ac. ge. da.	*to draw.*	
		da.	*to shoot.*	
1	toiser,	ac.	*to measure.*	
1	tolérer,	ac.	*to tolerate.*	
1	tomber,*		*to fall.*	
11	tondre,	ac.	*to shear.*	
imp.	tonner,		*to thunder.*	
1	toucher,	ac. da.	*to touch.*	
1	tourmenter,	ac.	*to plague.*	
1	tourner,	ac. da.	*to turn round.*	
1	tournoyer,		*to whirl about.*	

1	tousser,				*to cough.*		
1	tracer,	ac.		da.	*to draw.*		
10	traduire,	ac.	ge.		*to translate.*		
1	trafiquer,	ac.			*to trade.*		
2	trahir,	ac.			*to betray.*		
1	traîner,	ac.			*to drag along.*		
ir.	traire,	ac.			*to milk.*		
1	traiter,	ac.			*to treat.*		
1	tramer,	ac.			*to plot.*		
1	trancher,	ac.		da.	*to cut off.*		
1	tranquilliser,	ac.			*to quiet.*		
12	transcrire.	ac.			*to transcribe.*		
1	transférer,	ac.	ge.	da.	*to transfer.*		
1	transformer,	ac.			*to transform.*		
1	transgresser,	ac.			*to transgress.*		
1	transiger,				*to transact.*		
ir.	transmettre,	ac.		da.	*to transmit.*		
1	transpirer,				*to transpire.*		
1	transplanter,	ac.			*to transplant.*		
1	transporter,	ac.	ge.	da.	*to transfer.*		
1	transposer,	ac.			*to transpose.*		
1	transvaser,	ac.			*to decant.*		
1	travailler,	ac.		da.	*to work.*		
1	traverser,	ac.			*to cross.*		
2	se travestir,				*to disguise one's self.*		
1	trébucher,				*to stumble.*		
1	trembler,		ge.		*to shiver,*	—	d..
1	tremper,	ac.			*to dip.*		
1	trépaner,	ac.			*to trepan.*		
ir.	tressaillir,		ge.		*to start.*		
1	tricoter,	ac.			*to knit.*		
1	triompher,		ge.		*to triumph,*	—	de.
1	tripler,	ac.			*to treble.*		
1	tromper,	ac.			*to deceive.*		
1	tronquer,	ac.			*to mutilate.*		
1	troquer,	ac.			*lo barter.*		
1	trotter,				*to trot.*		
1	troubler,	ac.			*to trouble.*		
1	trouver,	ac.			*to find out,*	—	à
1	tyranniser,	ac.			*to oppress.*		

U

1	Ulcérer,	ac.		*to ulcerate.*		
2	unir,	ac.	da.	*to unite.*		
1	user,		ge.	*to use.*		
		ac.		*to wear off.*		

V

1	Vaciller,			*to stagger.*		
ir.	vaincre,	ac.		*to vanquish.*		
ir.	valoir,	ac	da.	*to be worth.*		
ir.	valoir mieux,			*to be better,*	—	o.
1	vanter,	ac.		*to commend.*		
1	se vanter,		ge.	*to boast,*	—	de.
1	végéter,			*to vegetate.*		
1	veiller,	ac.	da.	*to watch,*	—	à.
11	vendre,	ac.	da.	*to sell.*		
5	venir,*	ge.	da.	*to come to,*	—	o.
				to happen,	—	à.
				to have just,	—	de.
1	venter,			*to blow.*		
2	verdir,			*to become green.*		
1	vergetter,	ac.		*to brush.*		
1	vérifier,	ac.		*to verify.*		
2	vernir,	ac.		*to varnish.*		
1	vernisser,	ac.		*to varnish.*		
1	vexer,	ac.		*to vex.*		
1	vicier,	ac.		*to viciate.*		
1	vider,	ac.		*to empty.*		
2	vieillir,			*to grow old.*		
1	violer,	ac.		*to transgress, to violate.*		
1	viser,	ac.	da.	*to aim at,*	—	à.
1	vitrer,	ac.		*to glaze.*		
ir.	vivre,			*to live.*		
ir.	voir,	ac.		*to see,*	—	o.
1	voler,	ac.		*to rob.*		
			da.	*to fly,*	—	o.
1	vouer,	ac.	da.	*to devote.*		
ir.	vouloir,	ac.		*to be willing,*	(subj.)	o.

DIALOGUES.

DIALOGUE I. *Sur l'Histoire de France.*

D. Combien y a-t-il eu de Rois en France depuis Pharamond jusqu'à Louis Seize?

R. Soixante-neuf.

D. Nommez-les dans l'ordre qu'ils ont régné, mettez en titre le nom de chaque famille, et après chaque roi, l'année où il a commencé son règne?

R. Volontiers, mais à condition que vous les apprendrez par cœur.

ROIS DE FRANCE.

21 *Mérovingiens.*	
Pharamond	420
Clodion	427
Mérovée	448
Childéric I.	458
Clovis I.	481
Childebert I.	511
Clotaire I.	558
Charibert	561
Chilpéric I.	567
Clotaire II.	584
Dagobert I.	628
Clovis II.	638
Clotaire III.	656
Childéric II.	670
Thierry I.	673
Clovis III.	691
Childebert II.	695
Dagobert II.	711
Chilpéric II.	715
Thierry II.	720
Interregne	737
Childéric III.	742
12 *Carlovingiens.*	
Pépin	752
Charlemagne	768
Louis I.	814
Charles *le Chauve*	840
Louis II.	877
Louis III. et Carloman	879
Charles II.	884
Eudes*	887
Charles III.	898
Robert*	922
Raöul*	923
Louis IV.	936
Lothaire	954
Louis V.	986
38 *Capétiens.*	
Hugues Capet	987
Robert	996
Henri I.	1031
Philippe I.	1060
Louis VI.	1108
Louis VII.	1137
Philippe II.	1180
Louis VIII.	1223
Louis IX.	1226
Philippe III.	1270
Philippe *le Bel*	1285
Louis X.	1314
Jean I.	1316
Philippe V.	1316
Charles IV.	1322

* Eudes, Robert et Raöul ne sont point de la famille des Carlovingiens; Eudes et Robert étoient, l'un comte de Paris, et l'autre duc de France. Raöul étoit duc de Bourgogne.

Philippe *de Valois*	1328	Henri II.	1547
Jean II.	1350	François II.	1559
Charles V.	1364	Charles IX.	1560
Charles VI.	1380	Henri III.	1574
Charles VII.	1422	Henri IV.	1589
Louis XI.	1461	Louis XIII.	1610
Charles VIII.	1483	Louis XIV.	1643
Louis XII.	1498	Louis XV.	1715
François I.	1515	Louis XVI.	1774

D. Quels sons les Rois qui ont plus particulièrement protégé les sciences?

R. Charlemagne, Robert, Philippe le Bel, François Premier, et Louis Quatorze.

D. Combien de rois ont eu des morts tragiques?

R. Sept, savoir, Chilpéric Premier, Childéric Second, Charles le Chauve, Lothaire, Henri Trois, Henri Quatre, et Louis Seize. Chilpéric fut assassiné par un de ses nobles l'an 584. Childéric Second fut tué en revenant de la chasse l'an 673. Charles le Chauve fut empoisonné par son médecin l'an 877. Lothaire fut empoisonne par sa femme l'an 986. Henri Trois fut assassiné par Jacques Clément l'an 1589. Henri Quatre fut tué par Ravaillac en 1610. Louis Seize fut décapité par ordre de la Convention Nationale en 1793.

D. Y a-t-il eu des guerres civiles en France?

R. Oui, particulièrement quatre ; la première arriva à la mort de Louis Premier, qui avoit nommé Charles le Chauve son jeune fils pour son successeur, par préférence à Lothaire son fils aîné. Lothaire disputa la couronne, et la bataille la plus sanglante qui ait été livrée depuis le commencement de a monarchie Françoise se donna entre les fils de Louis, à Fontenay, l'an 842.

La seconde fut entre Henri Premier et sa mère Constance qui vouloit mettre sur le trône Robert son jeune frère.

La troisième fut excitée par les Calvinistes qui se liguèrent et attaquèrent Henri Trois en 1575; ils prirent plusieurs places fortes et livrèrent bien des combats avant qu'on pût les réduire.

La quatrième commenca l'an 1793, dans la Bretagne ; elle fut très-cruelle, et très-sanglante.

Le parti-royaliste a couté plus de cent mille hommes avant d'être détruit.

D. Nommez-moi quelques faits remarquables depuis Pharamond jusqu'au douzième siècle.

R. Clovis Premier se fit baptiser et établit le Christianisme l'an 496. En 583 une peste cruelle désola toute la France et surtout Paris. Childeric Trois et dernier de la famille des Mérovingiens fut déposé et enfermé dans un monastère, l'an 752. Pépin fut élu à sa place par le

états assemblés à Soissons. La célèbre Université de Paris commença sous Charlemagne en 796.

En 922 Charles Trois, dit le Simple, fut déposé par les seigneurs qui mirent Robert sur le trône : Charles fut arrêté peu de temps après et renfermé dans le château de Thiéri où il mourut.

Il y eut une famine si cruelle en 1033, qu'au rapport des historiens on déroboit les petits enfans pour les manger, et qu'on attendoit les voyageurs au coin des bois pour les dévorer. Les croisades pour la Terre Sainte commencèrent en 1096.

D. Rapportez-moi quelques faits remarquables depuis le douzième siècle jusqu'à Louis Seize.

R. La Pragmatique sanction est publiée en 1269, par laquelle les cathédrales et les abbayes obtiennent le privilége d'élire leurs prélats. Humbert attacha le Dauphiné à la Couronne de France en 1349, à condition que le fils aîné du Roi en porteroit le nom et les armes. En 1356, Jean et son fils furent faits prisonniers par le Prince Noir, fils d'Edouard Trois, Roi d'Angleterre qui prétendoit à la couronne de France au droit de sa mère, mais qui en étoit exclu par la loi salique. Henri Six, Roi d'Angleterre, fut couronné Roi de France l'an 1431, au droit de son pere, qui avoit été nommé héritier de la couronne; mais le Dauphin soutint ses droits, se fit reconnoître et chassa Henri Six de ses états. La France fut un théâtre de carnage en 1569. Charles Neuf fit égorger les Calvinistes à Paris en 1572. Les Calvinistes excitèrent une guerre civile en 1575.

Henri Quatre qui avoit été élevé dans la religion Protestante se convertit à la religion Catholique, en 1593, et par sa conversion appaisa les troubles et les guerres civiles qui désoloient la France.

Louis Quatorze, qui régna près de soixante-douze ans, détruisit les duels, protégea les sciences, et récompensa toujours le mérite ; il réussit à maintenir son petit-fils Philippe Cinq sur le trône d'Espagne, malgré plusieurs Rois ligués contre lui. Louis Seize assembla les états généraux en 1789, pour réparer l'état de ses finances ; cette assemblée a opéré la révolution Françoise dont l'histoire seule demande des volumes entiers.

DIALOGUE II. *Sur l'Histoire d'Angleterre.*

D. Combien y a-t il eu de Rois et de Reines en Angleterre depuis l'Eptarchie Saxonne?

R. Il y a eu quarante-neuf Rois, et quatre Reines.

D. Nommez-les dans l'ordre qu'ils ont régné, mettez en titre le nom de chaque famille, et après chaque Roi, l'époque où il a commencé à régner.

R. Volontiers, mais soyez attentif et tâchez de vous en ressouvenir.

ROIS D'ANGLETERRE.

15 *Saxons.*	
Egbert - -	819
Ethelwolf - -	837
Ethelbald - -	858
Ethelbert - -	860
Ethelred I. -	866
Alfred - -	871
Edward *le vieux* -	900
Athelstan - -	925
Edmond I. -	940
Edred - -	946
Edwin - -	955
Edgar - -	959
Edward *le jeune* -	975
Ethelred II. -	978
Edmond II. -	1016
3 *Danois.*	
Canut - -	1017
Harold I. -	1036
Hardi-Canut -	1040
Encore 2 *Saxons.*	
Edouard *le Confesseur*	1042
Harold II. -	1065
3 *Normans.*	
Guillaume I. *le Conq.*	1066
Guillaume II. *le Roux*	1087
Henri I. - -	1100
Maison de Blois.	
Etienne, - -	1135
8 *Plantagenets.*	
Henri II. - -	1154
Richard I. *Cœur de Lion*	1189
Jean *Sans terre.* -	1199
Henri III. -	1216
Edouard I. -	1272
Edouard II. -	1307
Edouard III. -	1327
Richard II. -	1377
3 *Lancastres.*	
Henri IV. -	1400
Henri V. -	1413
Henri VI. -	1422
3 *Yorks.*	
Edouard IV. -	1461
Edouard V. -	1485
Richard III. -	1483
5 *Tudors.*	
Henri VII. -	1485
Henri VIII. -	1509
Edouard VI. -	1547
Marie - -	1553
Elizabeth -	1556
6 *Stuarts.*	
Jacques I. -	1603
Charles I. -	1625
Charles II. -	1660
Jacques II. -	1685
Guillaume III. *et* Marie.	1689
Anne - -	1702
3 *Brunswicks.*	
George I. - -	1714
George II. -	1727
George III. -	1760

D. Quels droits avoient à la couronne les premiers Rois de chaque famille?

R. Egbert étoit un des Rois de l' Eptarchie Saxonne, il soumit les six autres et se fit couronner Roi de la Bretagne supérieure à laquelle il donna le nom d'Angleterre.

Canut, Prince Danois, avoit partagé l'Angleterre avec Edmond et fut reconnu Roi de tout le royaume à la mort du dernier, il n'y avoit d'autre droit que celui de conquête.

Guillaume Duc de Normandie, fit la conquête de l'Angleterre, et prit le titre de Conquérant.

Etienne de Blois s'empara du trône dans l'absence de Mathilde fille de Henri Premier, et héritière légitime.

Henri Second fils de Matilde, monta sur le trône à la mort d'Etienne, qui pour mettre fin à la guerre civile s'étoit engagé par un traité à lui laisser la couronne au préjudice de ses propres enfans.

Henri Quatre fut élevé sur le trône au préjudice d'Edmond Mortimer, ce qui occasionna de funestes divisions entre les maisons d'York et de Lancastre.

Edmond Quatre de la maison d'York, qui se croyoit héritier de la couronne, réussit à détroner Henri Six après une guerre civile.

Henri Sept de la famille des Tudors, avoit du côté de sa mère tous les droits de la famille de Lancastre à la couronne, et du côté de sa femme tous ceux de la maison d'York.

Jacques Premier, Roi d'Ecosse, étoit le plus proche parent d'Elizabeth, qui l'avoit nommé pour son successeur dans son testament.

George Premier étoit sorti de la maison des Stuarts par sa mère, petite fille de Jacques Premier; la Reine Anne l'avoit nommé son successeur.

D. Combien de Rois ont été tues en combattant?

R. Trois, Ethelred Premier fut tué dans une battaille contre les Danois qui venoient continuellement ravager son pays. Harold Deux fut tué dans une bataille contre Guillaume le Conquerant. Richard Trois fut tué dans une bataille contre Henri Sept.

D. Combien de Rois out eu une mort tragique.

R. Les neuf suivans, Edmond Premier, Edouard le Jeune, Edmond Second, Guillaume le Roux, Richard Premier, Edouard Second, Richard Second, Edouard Cinq, et Charles Premier.

1. Edmond Premier fut assassiné par un nommé Léof, scélérat renommé, que le Roi avoit envoyé en exil. 2. Edouard le Jeune fut assassiné par les ordres de sa belle-mère Elfride, qui vouloit faire régner son propre fils Ethelred Second. 3. Edmond Second fut cruellement assassiné par les domestiques de son beau-frère Edrick à qui Canut fit trancher la tête. 4. Guillaume le Roux, étant à la chasse, fut tué d'un coup de flèche tiré sans dessein par un de ses domestiques. 5. Richard Premier, surnommé Cœur de Lion, voulant obliger un Seigneur Limousin à lui rendre un trésor qu'il avoit trouvé, s'approcha du château de ce gentilhomme pour l'attaquer;

il reçut un coup de flèche dont il mourut. 6. Edouard Second fut deposé par le Parlement, et enfermé au château de Berkley où il fut cruellement assassiné. 7. Richard Second fut déposé par le Parlement, et enfermé dans le château de Pontefract, où il fut inhumainement assassiné par l'ordre de Henri Quatre, chef des mécontens, qui fut élu à sa place. 8. Edouard Cinq, et son frère, le Duc d'York, furent enfermés à la Tour, et ensuite étouffés dans leur lit par l'ordre du Duc de Glocester, qui prit le nom de Richard Trois quand il fut monté sur le trône. 9. Charles Premier fut décapité par l'ordre du Parlement, le 30 Janvier 1649; son fils, Charles Second, ne monta sur le trône qu'en 1660, onze ans après la mort de son père.

D. L'Angleterre a t-elle eu bien des guerres étrangères à soutenir?

R. Oui, du temps des Rois Saxons, les Danois y firent des descentes fréquentes pendant plus de deux cens ans. Il y a eu beaucoup de guerres entre l'Angleterre et la France depuis Guillaume le Conquérant, mais particulièrement depuis la Reine Anne; il y a eu aussi des guerres contre l'Espagne, contre la Hollande et contre l'Amérique.

D. Y a-t il eu plusieurs guerres civiles en Angleterre?

R. Oui, et nous pouvons compter entre autres les quatre suivantes comme les plus mémorables. La première commença en 1135, quand Etienne de Blois monta sur le trône au préjudice de Mathilde, fille unique et légitime héritière de Henri Premier. La seconde arriva sous le règne de Richard Second, et finit par le déposer. La troisième fut suscitée par la maison d'York, et finit par mettre Edouard Quatre sur le trône à la place de Henri Six, qui fut déposé. La quatrième fut celle du Parlement contre Charles Premier, ce Prince malheureux fut vaincu et décapité.

D. Depuis quand les Rois d'Angleterre prennent-ils le tire de Rois de France?

D. Depuis Edouard Trois, qui avoit épousé la sœur de Charles Quatre, qui mourut sans enfans: il étoit exclu de la couronne par la Loi Salique; cependant il prit le titre de Roi de France que ses successeurs ont conservé jusqu'en 1800.

D. Y a-t-il eu des Rois d'Angleterre qui aient été couronnés Rois de France?

R. Oui, Henri Six encore enfant fut couronné Roi de France dans l'église de Notre-Dame de Paris, l'an 1431.

D. Quels droits avoit-il à la couronne!

R. Son père avoit épousé Catherine, fille de Charles Six, Roi de France, qui l'avoit reconnu pour héritier de sa couronne, au préjudice du Dauphin.

D. Henri Six jouit-il long-temps de la couronne de France?

R. Non: le Dauphin connu sous le nom de Charles Sept se fit aussi couronner Roi de France, il soutint son droit, reprit toutes les villes que son père avoit perdues, et chassa Henri Six de son royaume. Jeanne d'Arc (surnommée la Pucelle d'Orléans) fit des choses extraordinaires dans cette guerre contre les Anglois.

D. Y a-t-il eu plusieurs pestes en Angleterre?

R. Oui, et de très-cruelles; il y eut une peste désastreuse en 1094, une seconde en 1349, une troisième en 1407, une quatrième en 1603, et la dernière en 1665.

D. Y a-t-il eu des incendies considérables à Londres?

R. Oui, particulièrement deux, le premier arriva en 1132, et brûla un très-grande partie de Londres; le second en 1666, il y eut quatre-vingt-neuf églises et plus de treize mille maisons de brûlées.

D. Nommez-moi deux ou trois époques considérables de l'Histoire d'Angleterre?

R. Les trois événemens les plus intéressans sont: 1. La conquête de l'Angleterre par Guillaume, Duc de Normandie, en 1066. 2. La réforme que Luther commença en 1517. La révolution que Cromwell et le Parlement opérèrent en Angleterre, et dans laquelle Charles Premier fut décapité.

D. En quoi consiste l'autorité des Rois d'Angleterre?

R. Ils ont le pouvoir de faire la paix et la guerre, ils disposent des armées de terre et de mer, ils peuvent seuls convoquer, proroger, ou casser le Parlement; les décrets passés dans les deux chambres, n'ont pas force de loi sans leur consentement formel: ils donnent les places de l'état, disposent des charges de la magistrature et nomment à tous les évêchés.

NEW WORKS

Printed for Longman, Hurst, Rees, Orme, and Brown, Paternoster-Row.

GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES upon the FRENCH LANGUAGE, compared with the English. By NICOLAS HAMEL. Tenth Edition, with great Improvements. Price 4*s.* bound.

CLEF, ou THEMES TRADUITS de la GRAMMAIRE de NICOLAS HAMEL, d'àpres l'Edition stéréotype, in 12mo. Price 3*s.* bound.

THE WORLD IN MINIATURE; containing a curious and faithful Account of the Situation, Extent, Productions, Government, Population, Dress, Manners, Curiosities, &c. &c. of the different Countries of the World, compiled from the best Authorities; with proper References to the most essential Rules of the French Language, prefixed to the Work, and the Translation of the difficult Words and idiomatical Expressions: a Book particularly useful to Students in Geography, History, or the French Language. By NICOLAS HAMEL. The Third Edition, in 1 vol. 12mo. Price 4*s.* bound.

INTRODUCTION AU LECTEUR FRANCOIS: ou, Recueil de Pieces choises; avec l'Explication des Idiotismes et des Phrases difficiles, qui s'y trouvent. Par LINDLEY MURRAY. In 12mo. Price 3*s.* 6*d.* boards.

LECTEUR FRANCOIS; ou, Recueil de Pieces, en Prose et en Verse, tirées des meilleurs Ecrivains, pour servir a perfectionner les jeunes Gens dans la Lecture; a étendre leur Connoissance de la Langue Francoise; et a leur inculquer des Principes de Vertu et de Pieté. Par LINDLEY MURRAY. Second Edition. Price 4*s.* 6*d.* bound.

" Especial care has been taken to render the study of eloquence subservient to virtue, and to introduce only such pieces as shall answer the double purpose of promoting good principles, and a correct and elegant taste. This will, no doubt, be found a very useful school book." — *M. Rev.* — " The student will find his advantage in making use of this work, as he will be sure to form his taste after the most correct models." — *Crit. Rev.*

A SEQUEL to the EXERCISES of Chambaud, Hamel, Perrin, Wanostrocht, and other Grammars, being a Practical Guide to translate from English into good French on a new Plan with Grammatical Notes. By G. H. POPPLETON, in 12mo. Price 3*s.* bound.

A KEY to POPPLETON'S FRENCH EXERCISES; being a Translation of the various Exercises contained in that Book. In 12mo. Price 2*s.* 6*d.* bound.

A KEY to CHAMBAUD'S EXERCISES: being a correct Translation of the v u ious Exercises contained in that book. By E. J. VOISIN. Third Edition. Price 4*s.* bound.

J. W. Stapleton 1826

New Works printed for Longman and Co

An EXPLANATORY PRONOUNCING DICTIONARY of the FRENCH LANGUAGE, in French and English; wherein the exact Sound and Articulation of every Syllable are distinctly marked (according to the Method adopted by Mr. Walker in his Pronouncing Dictionary); to which are prefixed the Principles of the French Pronunciation, prefatory Directions for using the Spelling representative of every Sound, and the Conjugation of the Verbs, regular, irregular, and defective, with their true Pronunciation. By L'ABBE TARDY, late Master of Arts in the University of Paris. A new Edition, revised, in 12mo. Price 7*s.* bound.

DELECTUS SENTENTIARUM GRÆCARUM ad USUM TIRONUM ACCOMMODATUS; cum Notulis et Lexico, on the Plan of Dr. Valpy's Latin Delectus. Fourth Edition, in 12mo. Price 3*s.* bound.

THE ART of EXTEMPORE PUBLIC SPEAKING, including a Course of Discipline for obtaining the Faculties of Discrimination, Arrangement, and Oral Discussion; designed for the Use of Schools, and Self-Instruction. By JOHN RIPPINGHAM. Second Edition. Price 6*s.* in boards.

RULES for ENGLISH COMPOSITION, and particularly for Themes. Designed for the Use of Schools, and in aid of Self-Instruction. By JOHN RIPPINGHAM, Private Tutor at Westminster School. In 1 vol. 12mo. Third Edition. Price 3*s.* 6*d.*

THE ETON LATIN PROSODY, illustrated with English Explanations of the Rules and Authorities from the Latin Poets. By J. CAREY, LL.D. 12mo. Price 1*s.* 6*d.* bound.

A METRICAL GUIDE to the right Intelligence of Virgil's Versification. By J. CAREY, LL.D. 12mo. Price 1*s.* 6*d.*

An ABRIDGMENT of the LATIN PROSODY MADE EASY, for the Use of Schools; containing as much of the Information given on each Subject in the larger Work, as appeared suited to the Use and Capacity of young Prosodians. By J. CAREY, LL.D. In 12mo. Price 3*s.* 6*d.* bound.

SCANNING EXERCISES for YOUNG PROSODIANS, containing the first two Epistles from the Electæ ex Ovidio, scanned and proved by the Rules of the Eton Grammar, and interspersed with occasional Remarks. By J. CAREY, LL.D. Price 4*s.* 6*d.* bound.

An ALPHABETICAL KEY to PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS, QUÆ GENUS, and AS IN PRÆSENTI, containing all the Examples declined and translated, with the Rules quoted under each, and Numerical References to the Context. A new Edition, with Additions. By J. CAREY, LL.D. Author of Latin Prosody made Easy, Scanning Exercises, &c. In 12mo. Price 3*s.* bound.

Printed by A. and R. Spottiswoode,
Printers-Street, London.